Thank you very much for choosing this vehicle.

In order to correctly operate and maintain your vehicle, please take the time to read this manual carefully.

After reading, please leave the manual in the vehicle for future reference. Please leave this manual in the vehicle at the same time of resale, as the new owner will also need to read the information in it.

All the information and specifications in this manual are current at the time of printing.

Remember that authorized service station knows your vehicle best and has factory-trained technicians and OEM parts to guarantee your safety. Do not use non-OEM parts or accessories to modify your vehicle. Modifying will affect the functionality, safety and durability of your vehicle.

According to the specification of equipment and features of your vehicle, some descriptions and illustrations may differ from that on your vehicle.

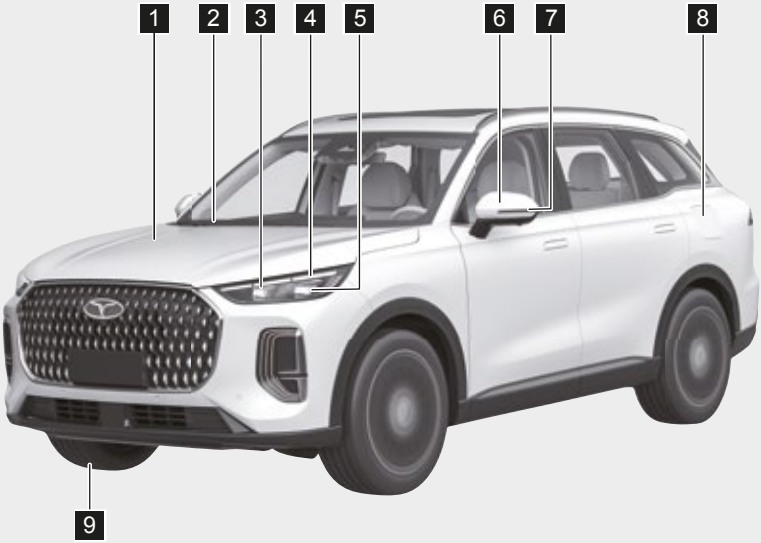
Any data, descriptions and illustrations provided in this manual cannot be used as the basis for any insurance claim.

We reserves the right to make changes in design and specifications at any time without notice.

All rights reserved. This document should not be reproduced or copied, in whole or in part, without the written permission.

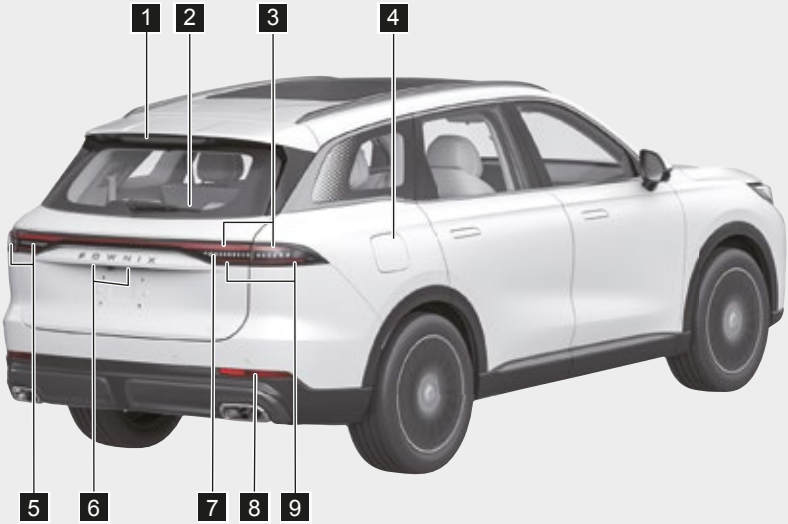
Happy driving!

Version No.: T28PHEVLHDOM25ENAH01
Issued July 2025



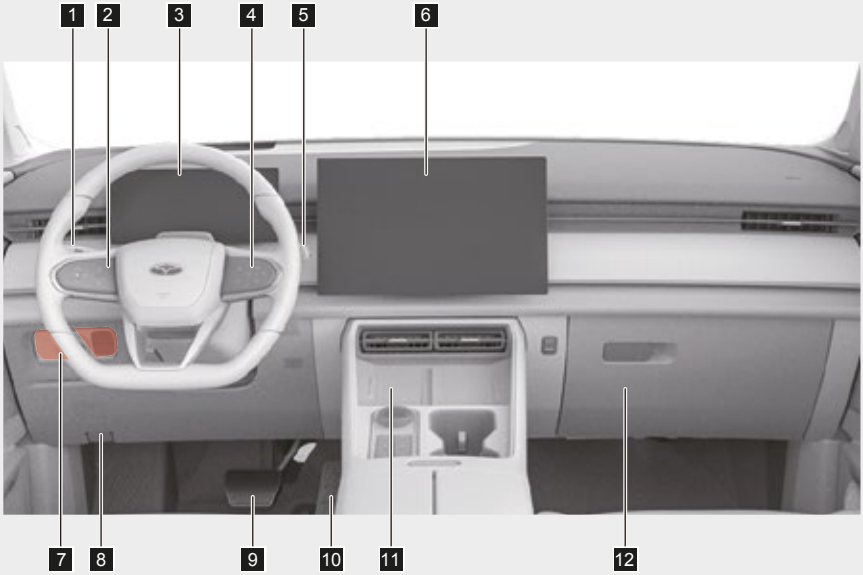
1 Front Compartment Cover P.157
2 Front Wiper Blade P.44
3 High Beam Light P.46
4 Position Light P.45
Turn Signal Light P.46
Daytime Running Light P.47
5 Low Beam Light P.45
6 Outside Rear View Mirror P.38
7 Side Turn Signal Light P.46
8 AC Charging Port Cover P.260
DC Charging Port Cover P.261
9 Tire P.306

Note: Please refer to the actual vehicle.



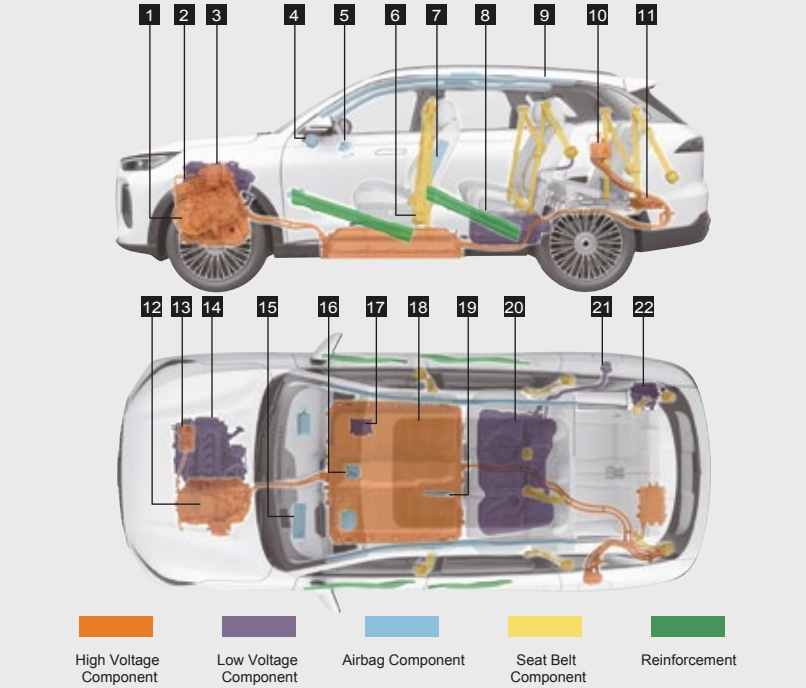
1 High Mounted Brake Light P.47
2 Rear Wiper Blade P.44
3 Position Light P.45
4 Fuel Tank Cap P.163
5 Turn Signal Light P.46
6 License Plate Light P.45
7 Back-up Light P.47
8 Rear Fog Light P.45
9 Brake Light P.47

Note: Please refer to the actual vehicle.



1 Wiper Switch P.42
2 Cruise Button P.194
3 Instrument Cluster P.27
4 Audio Button P.107
5 Column Shift Switch P.176
6 Audio System P.101
7 Headlight Switch P.45
Power Back Door Switch P.159
Fuel Tank Cap Release Switch P.163
8 Front Compartment Cover Release Lever P.157
9 Brake Pedal
10 Accelerator Pedal
11 Wireless Charging Area P.126
12 Glove Box P.153

Note: The interiors are different depending to the market requirement. Please refer to the actual vehicle.



1 Hybrid Transmission	2 Front Motor Controller	3 High Voltage Heater
4 Front Passenger Airbag	5 Driver Airbag	6 Seat Belt Pretensioner (If Equipped)
7 Side Airbag (If Equipped)	8 Anti-collision Panel	9 Side Curtain (If Equipped)
10 AC/DC Charging Port	11 On-board Charger Assembly	12 High Voltage Power Distribution Unit
13 Electric Compressor	14 Engine	15 Driver Knee Airbag (If Equipped)
16 Airbag Module	17 Vehicle Control Unit	18 Center Airbag (If Equipped)
19 Power Battery	20 High Pressure Fuel Tank	21 Fuel Filler
22 Battery (12 V)	23 Rear Drive Motor (If Equipped)	24 On-board Charger Assembly

1. INTRODUCTION

1-1. How to Read This Manual

How to Read This Manual....2
Table of Contents 2
Pictorial Index 2
Index 2

1-2. Symbols in the Manual

Symbols in the Manual 3

1-3. New Vehicle Inspection

User Registration Certificate.....4
Delivery Card.....5

1-4. "Face to face" Advisory Service Card

"Face to face" Advisory Service Card.....7

1-5. New Vehicle Inspection

New Vehicle Inspection 11
Delivery Inspection Certificate..... 11

1-6. New Vehicle Break-in

New Vehicle Break-in..... 12

1-7. How to Save Fuel and Extend Life of Vehicle

How to Save Fuel and Extend Life of Vehicle..... 13

1-8. Precautions Before Driving Vehicle

Safety Check 14
Before Starting Engine 14
After Starting Engine..... 15
When Driving 15
Parking Operations..... 15
Parking on Slope..... 16
Exhaust System Inspection 17

1-9. Off-road Driving Precautions

Off-road Driving..... 18

1-10. Precautions When Driving in Rainy Condition

When Driving on Slippery Road Surfaces..... 19
Driving Through Water 19

1-11. Winter Driving Precautions

Winter Driving Tips 20
Driving on Road Covered with Ice and Snow..... 21
Tire Chains..... 21

1-12. Cybersecurity Notice

Cybersecurity Support Service Update or Termination Notice..... 23
Cybersecurity Notice for Scrapping or Resale 23

2. PREPARATION FOR DRIVING

2-1. Instrument Cluster

Instrument Cluster Overview..... 27
Operation/Malfunction Indicator..... 28

2-2. Steering Wheel

Horn 36
Steering Wheel Heating (If Equipped)..... 36
Adjusting Steering Wheel..... 37

2-3. Rear View Mirror

Inside Rear View Mirror 38
Outside Rear View Mirror..... 38

Outside Rear View Mirror Memory Function (If Equipped) 40
Rear View Mirror Automatic Adjustment When Reversing (If Equipped) 41

2-4. Wiper System

Wiper Operation 42
Replacing Wiper Blade 44

2-5. Lighting System

Exterior Lighting 45
Interior Lighting 47
Headlight Leveling Adjusting 48
Follow Me Home Function 48
Smart Vehicle Locating Function 49
Intelligent High Beam Assist (IHC) (If Equipped) 50
Fogging Instructions for Light 50

2-6. Seat

Correct Sitting Posture 51
Head Restraint 52
Audio Headrest (If Equipped) 52
Front Seat 53
Second Row Manual Seat 55
Second Row Power Seat 57
Third Row Manual Seat 58
Third Row Power Seat (If Equipped) 58
Electric Expansion of Luggage Compartment Space (If Equipped) 59
Seat Massage Function (If Equipped) 59
Front Passenger Seat Recline Function (If Equipped) 61
Seat Heating Function (If Equipped) 61
Seat Ventilation Function (If Equipped) 62
Seat Memory Function (If Equipped) 62
Easy Seat Access/Exit Function (If Equipped) 63

2-7. Seat Belt

Seat Belt 63
Seat Belt Pretensioner (If Equipped) 68

2-8. Child Restraint System

Child Restraint System 69
Top Tether 71
Installing Child Restraint System 73
Enabling and Disabling Front Passenger Airbag (If Equipped) 78

3. INTERIOR FUNCTION

3-1. Key Information

Smart Key 81
Effective Range 83
Keyless Entry 85
Vehicle Arming 87
Immobilizer System 88
Smart Key Vehicle Locating 89
Remote Starting for Smart Key 89

3-2. Doors

Door Unlocking/Locking 90
Door Mechanical Switch 91
Child Lock 92

3-3. Windows

Power Windows 93

Window Remote Control Function..... 95
Window Jam Protection Function (If Equipped)..... 95

3-4. Panoramic Moon Roof

Panoramic Moon Roof (If Equipped)..... 97
Moon Roof Remote Control Function..... 99
Moon Roof Jam Protection Function..... 99

3-5. Audio System

Audio View 101
Shortcut Menu 102
Vehicle Center 102
Audio Button..... 107
Voice Recognition Function (If Equipped)..... 107
Phone-link..... 107

3-6. Air Conditioning System

Front A/C 110
Second Row Air Conditioning (If Equipped) 111
Third Row Air Conditioning (If Equipped) 112
A/C Setting..... 112
Air Conditioning Operation..... 113
Air Conditioning Heating..... 117
A/C Cooling 117
Intelligent Mode (If Equipped) 119
Constant Temperature Cabin Function (If Equipped) 119
Refrigeration/Warming Function of Armrest Box 120
Air Outlets Airflow Control..... 120

3-7. Fragrance System

Fragrance System (If Equipped) 121
Fragrance setting 122
Replacing fragrance..... 122

3-8. Driving Recorder

Driving Recorder (If Equipped) 123
Setting 126

3-9. Wireless Charging

Wireless Charging (CWC) (If Equipped) 126

3-10. FOTA Upgrade

FOTA Upgrade (If Equipped) 130
Method for Entering Vehicle Upgrade..... 131
Operation for Upgrade Now 132
Appointment Upgrade Operation..... 134
Upgrade Result Prompt..... 136
Countermeasures for Abnormal Problems during Upgrading..... 137
Network Security Notification 137

3-11. Remote Control System

Remote Control System (If Equipped)..... 138
Introduction of product functions 138

3-12. Storage Space

Storage Space 153

3-13. USB Port

Driving Recorder USB (If Equipped)..... 155
Front USB 156

Rear USB..... 156

3-14. Backup Power Supply (12 V)

Front Backup Power Supply 156

3-15. Sun Visors and Vanity Mirrors

Sun Visors and Vanity Mirrors 157

3-16. Front Compartment Cover

Opening/Closing Front Compartment Cover 157

3-17. Back Door

Manual Back Door 158
Power Back Door (If Equipped) 158
Back Door Emergency Opening..... 162

3-18. Fuel Tank Cap

Electric Fuel Tank Cap 163

4. DRIVING VEHICLE

4-1. Before Driving Vehicle

Inspection and Preparation Before Driving..... 166
Vehicle Power-on 166
Vehicle Power-off 167

4-2. Steering System

Electric Power Steering System (EPS)..... 168

4-3. Brake System

Electric Parking Brake System (EPB)..... 170
Auto Hold System (-AUTO HOLD) 172
Foot Brake 173

4-4. Transmission

Automatic Transmission 175
Column Shift Switch..... 176

4-5. Intelligent Timely All-wheel-drive System (AWD)

Intelligent Timely All-wheel-drive System (If Equipped) 177
Drive Mode..... 178

4-6. Airbag

Airbag..... 184

5. ASSIST DRIVING

5-1. Speed Limit Assist System (SLA)

Speed Limit Assist System (SLA) (If Equipped) 193

5-2. Speed Limit System

Cruise Control System (CCS)..... 194
Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) System (If Equipped) 195
Active Speed Limit (ASL) (If Equipped)..... 201

5-3. Lane Assist System

Lane Assist System (If Equipped) 202
Lane Departure Warning (LDW) System 202
Lane Departure Prevention (LDP) (If Equipped) 204
Emergency Lane Keeping (ELK) (If Equipped) 205

5-4. Blind Spot Detection Assist System

Blind Spot Detection Assist System (If Equipped) 207
Door Opening Warning (DOW) System (If Equipped) 209
Rear Collision Warning (RCW) System (If Equipped) 209
Rear Cross Traffic Alert (RCTA) System (If Equipped) 210

5-5. Driving Safety Assist System

Head Up Display (HUD) (If Equipped)..... 210
Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS)..... 211
Automatic Emergency Braking (AEB) System/ Front Collision Warning (FCW) System (If Equipped) 213

5-6. Intelligent Cruise Control System

Traffic Jam Assist (TJA) System /Integrated Cruise Assist (ICA) System (If Equipped) 216
Intelligent Avoidance System (IES) (If Equipped) 219

5-7. Driver Monitoring System

Driver Monitoring System(DMS) (If Equipped) 220

5-8. Parking Assist System

Panoramic View Monitor System (AVM)..... 221
Parking Radar System 225

5-9. Auto Parking Assist System

Auto Parking Assist System (If Equipped) 227
Auto Parking..... 233
Tracking Reverse 236

5-10. Braking Force Control System

Integrated Braking Force Control System 237
Electronic Stability Control System 238
Hill Descent Control (HDC) System 240
Anti-lock Brake System (ABS) 241
Extended Function 242

5-11. Plug-in Hybrid Electric Vehicle System (PHEV)

Power Battery 244
New Energy..... 247
Energy Recovery Intensity 248
Operating Mode 249
Charging Device 255
Charging Method..... 259
AC Charging Socket Electronic Lock 264
Emergency Unlocking of Electronic Lock (Only for AC Charging) 265
Charging Precautions 265
Safety Warning for Charging..... 267
External Discharging Device (If Equipped) 268
External Discharging Method 268

Discharging Precautions 271
Safety Warning for Discharging 271
Low-speed Pedestrian Warning Sound 272

6. IN CASE OF AN EMERGENCY

6-1. Emergency Call Function

ECALL (If Equipped)..... 274
Hazard Light..... 274
Reflective Vest..... 275
Warning Triangle..... 275
Spare Tools 275

6-2. Vehicle Emergency Handling

Flat Tire 276
Engine Coolant Temperature is Too High 278

6-3. Towing

Towing..... 279
Weight Limit 280
Towing Hook..... 281
Safety Chain..... 282
Towing Light 283
Tow truck Brake 283
Impact on Mileage 283
Towing Hint 283
Towing Vehicle..... 285
Emergency Towing Vehicle..... 286
Installing Towing Eyelet... 287

6-4. Fuse

Fuse Box 288
Checking Fuse..... 289
Replacing Fuse..... 289

6-5. If Battery is Depleted

Removing Battery..... 291
Jump-starting..... 292

7. MAINTENANCE

7-1. Repair and Maintenance

Repair and Maintenance..... 296
Authorized Service Station is at Your Service 296
Reading Vehicle Identification Code Information 297
Safety Check 297

7-2. Normal Maintenance

Normal Maintenance..... 298
Power Battery..... 299
Checking Oil Level..... 303
Checking Transmission Fluid Level..... 304
Checking Brake Fluid Level 304
Checking Coolant Level 305
Checking Radiator and Condenser 306
Checking Tires..... 306
Tire Rotation..... 308
Checking Battery..... 309
Checking Air Conditioning Filter 309
Checking Windshield Washer Fluid 310
Checking Wiper Blades ... 310

7-3. Regular Maintenance

First Maintenance Information 312
Maintenance Schedule.... 313
Technical Data 321

8. SPECIFICATION

8-1. Label Location

Vehicle Identification Number (VIN) 324
Vehicle Product Label 324
Engine Number..... 325
Rear Drive Motor number 325
Microwave Window..... 325

8-2. Vehicle Specifications

Vehicle Dimensions 326
Vehicle Type 327
Vehicle Weight..... 327
Vehicle Performance..... 328
Drive Motor 329
Engine Performance 329
Fuel System 330
Suspension System..... 331
Power Battery 331
Battery..... 331
Wheel Alignment..... 332
Wheels and Tires 332
Light Bulb Specification ... 333
Vehicle Components That Are Not Included in the Vehicle Size 334

ALPHABETICAL INDEX

INTRODUCTION

1-1. How to Read This Manual

How to Read This Manual 2

Table of Contents 2

Pictorial Index.....2

Index.....2

1-2. Symbols in the Manual

Symbols in the Manual.....3

1-3. New Vehicle Inspection

User Registration Certificate 4

Delivery Card 5

1-4. "Face to face" Advisory Service Card

"Face to face" Advisory Service Card 7

1-5. New Vehicle Inspection

New Vehicle Inspection 11

Delivery Inspection Certificate 11

1-6. New Vehicle Break-in

New Vehicle Break-in..... 12

1-7. How to Save Fuel and Extend Life of Vehicle

How to Save Fuel and Extend Life of Vehicle 13

1-8. Precautions Before Driving Vehicle

Safety Check..... 14

Before Starting Engine..... 14

After Starting Engine..... 15

When Driving..... 15

Parking Operations..... 15

Parking on Slope..... 16

Exhaust System Inspection 17

1-9. Off-road Driving Precautions

Off-road Driving 18

1-10. Precautions When Driving in Rainy Condition

When Driving on Slippery Road Surfaces..... 19

Driving Through Water 19

1-11. Winter Driving Precautions

Winter Driving Tips 20

Driving on Road Covered with Ice and Snow 21

Tire Chains.....21

1-12. Cybersecurity Notice

Cybersecurity Support Service Update or Termination Notice 23

Cybersecurity Notice for Scrapping or Resale 23

1-1. How to Read This Manual

How to Read This Manual

There are three ways for you to find the information you need in this manual. Here is a brief introduction of each one.

Table of Contents

The main Table of Contents will tell you which chapter of the Owner's Manual contains the information you need and what page to find it on.

Pictorial Index

The Pictorial Index is a helpful tool to find the required information quickly, especially if you are not familiar with the component name.

Index

This is the fastest method for you to find the information you need. The index contains a complete listing of all the important vehicle terminologies.

1-2. Symbols in the Manual

Symbols in the Manual

The following symbols are used in this manual to draw your attention to particularly important information. In order to minimize the risks as much as possible, please read the instructions on these symbols carefully before driving, and make sure to follow them.

WARNING
Indicates a potentially hazardous situation which, if not avoided, may result in damage to your vehicle, personal injury or even death.

CAUTION
Indicates a potentially hazardous situation which, if not avoided, may result in damage to your vehicle and its equipment, reducing the vehicle's life span.

ENVIRONMENTAL PROTECTION
Indicates that waste must be handled or disposed of according to local environmental regulations to avoid any contamination.

READ
Indicates that the relevant chapter in this manual must be read before any operation.

WARNING and CAUTION relating to personal safety and vehicle safety in this manual are very important. Make sure everyone in the vehicle follows these instructions carefully in order to both enjoy your driving experience and to keep your vehicle in optimum condition.

1-3. New Vehicle Inspection

Prior to your purchase, authorized service station has inspected your vehicle according to the regulations. The dealership will record the delivery date and affix its official seal to the User Registration Certificate. Before you sign the User Registration Certificate, the authorized dealer will provide you with instructions regarding your vehicle's overall performance and some basic knowledge about its features and regular operation according to the Vehicle Delivery Card.

User Registration Certificate

Model Code	
Vehicle Identification Number (VIN)	
Engine Number or Transmission Number	
Vehicle Registration Number	
Seal of Dealer:	
Signature of Dealer:	
Delivery Date	
User	
Address	
E-mail	
Telephone	
Have provided and explained the following items for me: • VEHICLE • OWNER'S MANUAL • PRE-DELIVERY INSPECTION	
Signature of User:	
Signature of Dealer:	

Delivery Card

Category	No.	Items	Whether Pass Inspection and Explain Clearly	
Vehicle Performan-ce	1	Engine	YES ☐	NO ☐
	2	Engine oil, brake fluid, power steering fluid (if equipped), coolant, windshield washer fluid	YES ☐	NO ☐
	3	VIN code, engine number and nameplate etc.	YES ☐	NO ☐
	4	Whole set of vehicle keys	YES ☐	NO ☐
	5	All lights of vehicle	YES ☐	NO ☐
	6	Windshield and painted surfaces	YES ☐	NO ☐
	7	Speedometer, tachometer and instrument cluster LCD display	YES ☐	NO ☐
	8	Tires, spare tires, spare tools and Owner's Manual	YES ☐	NO ☐
	9	Seats, seat belts, A/C switches and outlets, glove box and sun visors	YES ☐	NO ☐
	10	Windows, rear view mirrors, windshield wipers, windshield washers, battery, reversing radar system, horns, moon roof (if equipped), audio device and antenna	YES ☐	NO ☐

Category	No.	Items	Whether Pass Inspection and Explain Clearly	
Basic Knowledge About Operation	1*	Unleaded gasoline with an octane number of 91 or higher	YES ☐	NO ☐
		Unleaded gasoline with an octane number of 92 or higher	YES ☐	NO ☐
		Unleaded gasoline with an octane number of 95 or higher	YES ☐	NO ☐
		E22-E100	YES ☐	NO ☐
	2	Normal operation during the break-in period	YES ☐	NO ☐
	3	Operation of all the vehicle lights	YES ☐	NO ☐
	4	Understanding warning lights and indicator lights	YES ☐	NO ☐
	5	Correct time/mileage of the maintenance schedule	YES ☐	NO ☐
	6	Vehicle maintenance in winter/summer	YES ☐	NO ☐
	7	Thorough understanding of the cooling system and normal usage of the coolant	YES ☐	NO ☐
	8	Correct operation of air conditioning	YES ☐	NO ☐
	9	Precautions during starting the vehicle	YES ☐	NO ☐
	10	Correct operation of audio system	YES ☐	NO ☐
	11	Correct usage of moon roof (if equipped)	YES ☐	NO ☐
Signature of Sales Clerk: Date:				
Signature of User: Date:				

*: Please use the fuel recommended by authorized dealers.

1-4. "Face to face" Advisory Service Card

"Face to face" Advisory Service Card

authorized service station will provide a dedicated service advisor when you purchase your vehicle. If you have any questions concerning your vehicle, please consult the dealership.

Sheet one (for user)

Name of User:	Date of Purchase:
Sales & Servicing Department:	Model:
Vehicle Identification Number (VIN):	
The following items should be confirmed by the user:	
1. Vehicle Delivery and Inspection (Mark a " √ " for " Yes " and a " × " for Other Conditions):	
☐	Have introduced the basic operation of the vehicle to the user and performed the delivery inspection.
☐	Have explained the warranty policies to the user.
☐	Have explained the precautions of driving to the user.
☐	Have explained the importance of regular maintenance and the recommended interval time/mileage for regular maintenance to the user.
☐	Have explained the importance of having regular maintenance/vehicle repair performed at authorized service station to the user.
☐	Have delivered the Owner's Manual to the users and reminded them to read it.
☐	Have informed the service hotline function and how to use it.
2. "Face to face" Advisory Service Mode Introduction (Mark a " √ " for " Yes " and a " × " for Other Conditions):	
☐	If you have questions or concerns, please contact a service advisor.
☐	The service advisor is the only person authorized by the dealer to answer the user's questions.
☐	Have assigned a dedicated service advisor to each user for "Person to- Person" service.
☐	If the user is not fully satisfied with the service advisor, the user can select another service advisor.
The following items should be confirmed by the user:	
3. Main Work Introduction on Service advisor (Mark a " √ " for " Yes " and a " × " for Other Conditions):	

☐	Service reception during service and maintenance.
☐	Regular maintenance reminders.
☐	Answer the service/maintenance consultation.
☐	Service/maintenance booking.
☐	Annual inspection reminders/acceptance.
☐	Regular check up and service reminders and holiday greetings.
☐	Other concerns from the user.
4. "Face to face" Advisory Service Relationship Establishment:	
Service advisor business card	
Signature of User/Date:	
Signature of Service Advisor/Date:	

Sheet two (for sales & servicing department)

Name of User:	Date of Purchase:
Sales & Servicing Department:	Model:
Vehicle Identification Number (VIN):	
The following items should be confirmed by the user:	
1. Vehicle Delivery and Inspection (Mark a " √ " for " Yes " and a " × " for Other Conditions):	
☐	Have introduced the basic operation of the vehicle to the user and performed the delivery inspection.
☐	Have explained the warranty policies to the user.
☐	Have explained the precautions of driving to the user.
☐	Have explained the importance of regular maintenance and the recommended interval time/mileage for regular maintenance to the user.
☐	Have explained to the user the importance of having regular maintenance or vehicle repairs done at authorized service station.
☐	Have delivered the Owner's Manual to the users and reminded them to read it.
☐	Have informed the user about the service hotline function and how to use it.
2. "Face to face" Advisory Service Mode Introduction (Mark a " √ " for " Yes " and a " × " for Other Conditions):	
☐	If you have any questions or concerns, ask your service advisor.
☐	The service advisor is the only person authorized by the dealer to answer the user's questions.
☐	Have assigned a dedicated service advisor to each user for "face to face" service.
☐	If the user is not fully satisfied with the service advisor, the user can request another service advisor.
The following items should be confirmed by the user:	
3. Main Work Introduction on Service Advisor (Mark a " √ " for " Yes " and a " × " for Other Conditions):	
☐	Service reception during service and maintenance.
☐	Regular maintenance reminders.
☐	Answer the service/maintenance consultation.
☐	Service/maintenance appointment.

☐	Annual inspection reminders.
☐	Regular check up and service reminders and holiday greetings.
☐	Other concerns from the user.
4. "Face to face" Advisory Service Relationship Establishment:	
Service advisor business card	
Signature of User/Date:	
Signature of Service Advisor/Date:	

1-5. New Vehicle Inspection

New Vehicle Inspection

Before delivering the vehicle to you, the Sales & Servicing department of your dealership has inspected it according to regulations. The Sales & Servicing department of Auto should fill the delivery date in the inspection certificate and affix the official seal of dealer unit.

The dealership will familiarize you with your vehicle and verify it via the "-Delivery Card" which will be signed by both parties.

Delivery Inspection Certificate

In witness whereof, this vehicle has passed delivery inspection as regulated. and quality meets technical specification.

Vehicle Model	
Vehicle Identification Number (VIN)	
Engine Number or Transmission Number	
Vehicle Registration Number	
Official Seal of Sales & Servicing Department:	
Signature of Servicer:	
Delivery Date	
User	
Address	
E-mail	
Telephone	
Have provided and explained the following items for me: • VEHICLE • OWNER'S MANUAL • PRE-DELIVERY INSPECTION	
Signature of User:	
Signature of Servicer:	

1-6. New Vehicle Break-in

New Vehicle Break-in

Frictional resistance between the moving parts of a new vehicle is much more likely in the initial use of the vehicle than later on. Therefore, the initial use can have a greater impact on the vehicle's lifespan, operational reliability and economy. We advise that the use of a new vehicle must strictly follow the following guidelines and that the break-in period would be on average the first 3000 km driven.

■ Driving regulations of new vehicle break-in period

Within the first 1,000 km:

- Avoid driving at full speed;
- Driving speed should not exceed 100 km/h;
- Avoid driving at maximum speed in each gear.

Within the first 1,000 - 1,500 km:

- Driving speed can be gradually increased to the highest speed;
- Engine speed can be gradually increased to the maximum allowable speed.

■ Driving recommendations after break-in period

- When driving a vehicle, the maximum speed which engine allows to run in short time is 6,000 r/min. When shifting manually, shift to nearby high gear while the tachometer pointer reaches the red indicator zone.
- Engine speed should not be too low while driving, so it will be necessary to shift to the appropriate gear. Do not run the engine at maximum speed in neutral or other gears if the engine is cold.

■ Tire and wheel break-in recommendations:

When starting to use new tires, the best adhesion is not available. Therefore, new tires also need break-in, so the vehicle should be driven slowly and especially carefully within the first 100 km of driving.

■ Braking system break-in recommendations:

New brake lining also needs break-in. Because the brakes cannot provide the ideal brake friction during the first 200 km. If the braking efficiency is slightly worse at this stage, increase depression force on the pedal appropriately. This condition also applies to the each replacement of braking lining later.

ENVIRONMENTAL PROTECTION
Avoid running engine at unnecessary high speed. Switching to a high gear in time is helpful to save fuel, reduce operation noise and reduce environmental pollution.

1-7. How to Save Fuel and Extend Life of Vehicle

How to Save Fuel and Extend Life of Vehicle

Saving fuel is largely determined by vehicle conditions and driving habit. Do not overuse the vehicle, which also helps to extend vehicle's life.

The followings are specific tips for fuel saving:

1. Make sure to maintain proper tire inflation pressure. Insufficient tire inflation pressure will lead to tire wear and fuel wastage.
2. The vehicle should not be loaded with unnecessary weight. Heavy loads increase the engine load, resulting in high fuel consumption.
3. Avoid warm-up idling for a long time. The vehicle can be driven once the engine runs smoothly. The warm-up time in cold weather will be longer than other seasons.
4. Accelerate slowly and smoothly. Avoid sudden starting.
5. Avoid engine idling for a long time. If you need to park vehicle and wait for a long time, you should turn off the engine and turn it on again later.
6. Avoid out-of-gear or overspeed of engine. Select proper gears according to driving road conditions.
7. Avoid continuous acceleration and deceleration. Stop-and-go driving will waste the fuel.
8. Avoid unnecessary stopping and braking. You should keep a stable speed. Obey the traffic light's instructions while driving and minimize the number of stops, or take full advantage of road without traffic lights to drive vehicle. Maintain a proper driving distance with other vehicles to avoid sudden braking, this will also reduce brake wear.
9. Avoid areas with heavy traffic or traffic jams as much as possible.
10. Do not hold your foot on clutch or brake pedals for a long time. This will cause premature wear, overheating and high fuel consumption.
11. Keep a proper vehicle speed on the motorway. The faster the vehicle's speed, the more fuel consumption. Decreasing vehicle speed will save fuel.
12. Keep proper front wheel alignment. Avoid collision with road curbs and reduce your vehicle speed when driving on rough road surfaces. Improper front wheel alignment will not only quicken tire wear, but also increase engine load.
13. Avoid contacting vehicle chassis with mud, etc.
14. Maintain vehicle in optimal working condition. Dirty air filter, improper valve clearance, dirty spark plugs, dirty oil and grease, brakes without proper adjustment, etc. can reduce engine performance and waste fuel. Regular maintenance will extend your vehicle's life and reduce your driving costs. Your vehicle needs to be serviced more frequently if you regularly drive in severe conditions.

⚠ CAUTION

Never turn off engine when driving downhill. The power steering system and brake system will not operate normally when engine is not running.

1-8. Precautions Before Driving Vehicle

Safety Check

It is better to do a safety check before driving vehicle. A few minutes of checking can help ensure safe and pleasant driving.

⚠ WARNING

If you perform this check in an enclosed garage, make sure there is adequate ventilation.

Before Starting Engine

■ Outside vehicle

1. Tires (including spare tire): Check tire pressure with a tire pressure gauge and carefully check tires for cuts, damage or excessive wear.
2. Wheel bolts: Make sure no wheel bolts are missing or loose.
3. Fluid leaks: After the vehicle has been parked for a while, check underneath for leaking fuel, oil, coolant or other fluids (Water dripping from air conditioning after use is normal).
4. Lights: Make sure the headlights, daytime running lights, brake lights, fog lights, turn signal lights and other lights are working properly.
5. Intake grilles: Remove snow, leaves or other obstructions from the intake grilles in front of windshield.

■ Inside vehicle

1. Spare tools: Make sure you have spare tools, such as jack, wheel bolt wrench and spare tire.
2. Seat belts: Check if the buckles can be fastened securely. Make sure belts are not worn or frayed.
3. Instrument cluster and controls: Make especially sure the malfunction indicator lights, indicator lights, and controls are working properly.
4. Brakes: Make sure the pedal has enough clearance.

■ Engine compartment and engine

1. Spare fuses: Make sure spare fuses are available. All the fuses with amperage ratings designated on the fuse box cover should be provided.
2. Coolant level: Make sure coolant level is proper.

3. Battery and cables: Check for corroded or loose terminals and a cracked case. Check the cables for good condition and connections.
4. Wiring: Check for damaged, loose or broken wires.
5. Fuel lines: Check the lines for leaks or loose connections.

■ Hood

Make sure the hood is locked completely before driving. Otherwise, the hood may tilt up and block front view when vehicle is moving, which could lead to an accident.

After Starting Engine

1. Exhaust system: Listen for any leakage. Repair any leaks immediately if such condition occurs.
2. Engine oil level: Stop vehicle on level ground, turn off engine and wait for 5 minutes, pull out the dipstick to check if the engine oil level is proper.

When Driving

1. Gauges and meters: Make sure the gauges and meters are working properly.
2. Brakes: At a safe place, check that the vehicle does not pull to one side when the brakes are applied.
3. Other abnormal conditions: Check for loose parts and leaks. Listen for abnormal noises.

Parking Operations

Proper parking is an important part of safe driving. Vehicle should be parked in a place with wide road, good view and no impact on traffic. Parking operation steps are as follows:

1. Depress brake pedal until the vehicle is completely stopped.
2. Confirm that the electronic parking is enabled.
3. Move shift lever to "P" position.
4. Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF mode.

⚠ CAUTION
When you leave vehicle, make sure to lock your vehicle and carry the keys with you.

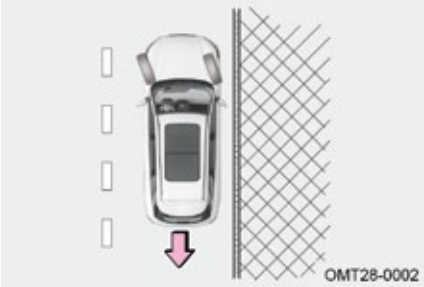
Parking on Slope

Parking vehicle on a slope is mainly enabled by the force of the parking brake. Failing to apply park brake or any brake malfunction may cause the vehicle to slide down a slope and personal injury or damage to vehicle. When parking on a slope, it is better to face the tires towards one side of vehicle, to prevent vehicle from moving accidentally.

Parking on downhill with curb

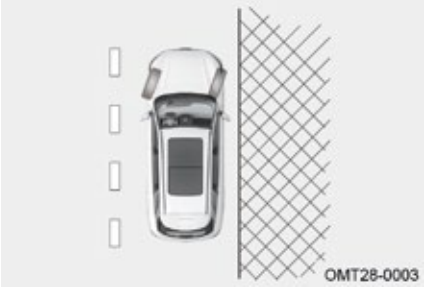
If there is a curb on the roadside, turn the steering wheel to the right to ensure that the front part of the front right wheel is close to or against the curb, to prevent the vehicle from sliding forward down the slope, then apply the parking brake.

Parking on uphill with curb



If there is a curb on the roadside, turn the steering wheel to the left to ensure that the rear part of the front right wheel is close to or against the curb, to prevent the vehicle from sliding back down the slope, then apply the parking brake.

Parking on uphill or downhill (without curb)



If there is no curb on the roadside, turn the steering wheel hard right to prevent the vehicle driving into the center of the road or sliding down the slope. Turn the steering wheel to the side of the road, so the vehicle is facing away from the center of the road when moving, then apply the parking brake.

■ Carrying passengers

Before driving, make sure all passengers sit in their seats with their seat belts properly fastened. Do not let the passengers sit in the places where there are no seats and seat belts, as they are likely to be seriously injured during a collision.

■ Locking the vehicle

- When leaving the vehicle unattended, carry smart key with you and lock all the doors, even if parking the vehicle in the garage or on the road outside your house.
- Park the vehicle in bright and spacious places as much as possible, and do not expose valuable items.

■ Exhaust gas

- Avoid inhaling the engine exhaust gas. It contains carbon monoxide (CO), which is a harmful, colorless and odorless gas. It can cause unconsciousness or even death after inhaling.
- Make sure the exhaust system has no leakage holes or loose connections. The exhaust system should be checked regularly. If a change in exhaust gas sound is heard, please have the system checked immediately.
- Do not run the engine in a garage or an enclosed area, unless moving the vehicle in or out. The exhaust gas cannot escape, which may cause serious injury.
- Do not stay in a parked vehicle for a long time with the engine running. If it is unavoidable, vehicle should be parked in a spacious area and adjust heating and cooling system to forcibly introduce outside air into vehicle.
- Keep the back door closed while driving. An open or unclosed back door may cause exhaust gas to enter the vehicle.
- To achieve proper operation of vehicle ventilation system, keep intake grilles free of snow, leaves, or other obstructions.
- If you smell exhaust fumes in vehicle, open windows to allow fresh air to enter and check vehicle condition.

Exhaust System Inspection

The exhaust system should be checked in the following situations:

1. When you smell exhaust fumes;
2. When you notice a changed noise coming from the exhaust system;
3. When exhaust system is damaged due to vehicle collision;
4. When the vehicle is lifted for inspection and repair.

1-9. Off-road Driving Precautions

Off-road Driving

Always observe the following precautions to minimize the risk of serious personal injury or damage to your vehicle:

- Be careful when driving off road. Do not drive in dangerous areas.
- Place both hands on the outer ring of the steering wheel when driving off road.
- Always check your brakes for effectiveness immediately after driving on roads covered with sand, mud, shallow water or snow.
- The driver and all passengers should fasten their seat belts whenever vehicle is moving.

⚠ WARNING

- After driving on road surfaces covered with tall grass, mud, gravel, sand, rivers, etc., check if there is grass, bush, paper, rags, stone, sand, etc. adhering to or trapped on underbody. Clear off any above materials from the underbody. If driving vehicle with those matters trapped on or adhering to the underbody, a breakdown or fire could occur.
- When driving off road or on rugged terrain, high speed driving, jumping, sharp turning and striking objects, etc. are forbidden. These activities may cause loss of control or vehicle rollover, resulting in death or severe personal injury. You are also risking expensive damage to your vehicle's suspension and chassis.

1-10. Precautions When Driving in Rainy Condition

When Driving on Slippery Road Surfaces

Drive carefully when it is raining, because visibility will be reduced, windows may become fogged-up and roads will be slippery.

- Do not drive at high speed when driving on a motorway in rain, because there may be a layer of water between tires and road surface, preventing steering system and brakes from operating properly.

⚠ CAUTION

- Sudden braking, acceleration and steering on slippery road surfaces may cause tire slippage and reduce your ability to control vehicle, resulting in an accident.
- Sudden changes in engine speed, such as sudden braking may cause vehicle to skid, resulting in an accident.
- After driving through a puddle, lightly depress brake pedal to make sure brakes are functioning properly. Wet brake lining may prevent brakes from functioning properly. If brake lining on one side is wet and not functioning properly, steering control may be affected, resulting in an accident.

Driving Through Water

The vehicle could be seriously damaged when driving on a road that has flooded after heavy rain. If driving through water is unavoidable, check the depth of the water and drive slowly and carefully.

1. When you are driving through water, make sure that the engine runs properly and that the steering and braking system works normally. When driving smoothly through water, you should switch to low gear and avoid a sudden depression of the accelerator pedal in order to prevent water from splashing into the engine.
2. Depress and hold accelerator pedal while driving, make sure vehicle has adequate and stable power. You should drive through without half-way stopping, gear shifting or sharp turning.
3. If vehicle stalls in water, never restart it immediately to prevent further damage to engine. The vehicle should be towed to a safe place where the water is shallow to find out the cause.

⚠ CAUTION

- Never drive through water that is deeper than wheel rim.
- Water intrusion into engine can cause it to stall, or cause serious internal damage.
- Water can wash the grease from the wheel bearing, causing rusting and premature abrasion.
- Driving through water may cause damage to your vehicle drive train components. Always visually inspect your vehicle's fluids (e.g. engine oil, transmission fluid, etc.) for signs of leakage after driving through water. Do not continue to operate vehicle if any fluid leaks, as this may result in further damage.
- Vehicle traction and braking performance will decrease while driving through water. The braking distance will increase. Sand and mud that have accumulated around the brake discs may affect the braking efficiency and may damage the brake system components. After driving through water, slightly depress the brake pedal several times to dry the brakes off.

1-11. Winter Driving Precautions

Winter Driving Tips

- Coolant: Make sure that coolant has anti-freezing function. Only use recommended coolant. More details about coolant type selection.
- Battery and cables: Low temperature will decrease power of battery. Sufficient power should be stored in battery for starting in winter.
- Oil: In winter, it is recommended to choose appropriate engine oil according to the local temperature condition. The lower viscosity at low temperature, the better fluidity at low temperature, indicating that the lower the ambient temperature at which the oil can be used. More details about oil type selection.
- Door locks: Avoid door locks being frozen. Deicing agent or glycerin should be sprayed into door lock holes.
- Washer fluid: Use washer fluid containing antifreeze. This product is available at authorized service station and most vehicle component distributors.
- Mudguards: Avoid ice and snow accumulation under mudguards. Failure to do so may cause difficult steering. When driving in cold weather, you should often stop vehicle to check for ice and snow accumulation under mudguards. It is recommended that you should take some necessary emergency items with you depending on different driving destinations. Items that need to be put in vehicle: Tire chains, window snow scraper, sand or salt bag, signal flasher, shovel, jumper cables, etc.

⚠ CAUTION

- Do not use water as a substitute for coolant.
- Do not use engine coolant or other alternative washer fluid, otherwise vehicle paint will be damaged.

Driving on Road Covered with Ice and Snow

Rapid acceleration on slippery road surfaces, such as snow or ice covered roads, may cause the rear wheels slipping to right or left. Therefore, please drive at low speed and operate carefully.

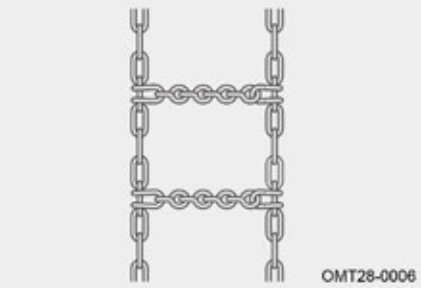
It is possible to build up a layer of water film between the tire and road surface when driving on wet or slushy roads. This may prevent the steering and braking from operating properly. It is recommended that you enable ESP function on this occasion.

■ Driving out silt and ice and snow road

If drive wheel is stuck in silt or ice and snow, please attempt to shake vehicle at low speed and drive forward and backward repeatedly. Shift the shift lever between forward position and reverse position several times and depress accelerator pedal slightly. Avoid shifting the shift lever between forward position and reverse position for a long period of time, as this may cause excessive transmission wear.

Tire Chains

Purchase a set of tire chains that match size of the vehicle tires. Pay attention to the following precautions when installing and removing chains:



1. Follow local regulations when using chains;
2. Install and remove tire chains in a safe location;
3. Install tire chains by following the instructions provided;
4. Follow local regulations when using chains;

5. It is recommended to use the beef tendon chains or rubber chains with a thickness not exceeding 12 mm, otherwise, tires, rims, drive system, brake system and wheel guard plates may be damaged. Vehicle damages resulting from improper use of chains are not covered by warranty;
6. Please consult authorized service station for details about wheels, tire size.

⚠ CAUTION

Observe the following precautions to reduce the risk of accidents. Failure to do so may result in the vehicle unable to be driven safely, and may cause death or serious injury.

- Regulations regarding the use of tire chains vary depending on location and type of road. Always check local regulations before installing tire chains;
- Be sure to use chains that are suitable for your vehicle. Installing chain will affect vehicle handling, please drive carefully. Using improper chains or improper installing of chains may cause an accident and lead to injuries;
- Please follow the instructions provided by the manufacturer of the chains to install and remove chains, park the vehicle in a safe place before installation and removal. Be sure to turn off the engine before installing chains (automatic transmission is in P position), place the traffic warning signs if necessary;
- Do not drive vehicle at more than 30 km/h when chains are installed on vehicle, or refer to the vehicle speed limit specified by the manufacturer of chains, whichever is lower. It should avoid dangerous road conditions such as bumps, potholes, sharp turns etc. when installing chains, do not turn steering wheel sharply, lock brake urgently, accelerate or decelerate suddenly etc.

1-12. Cybersecurity Notice

Cybersecurity Support Service Update or Termination Notice

The company has provided cybersecuritysupport services in the corresponding software and equipment of the Internet of Vehicles service, and regularly or irregularly updates or terminates this service.

The scrapped vehicle will stop providing Network Security Services; Network Security Services will maintain essential service after the vehicle is discontinued for 10 years.

We can notify customers through website announcements, emails, in-vehicle systems, mobile phone text messages, voice calls, etc. according to the specific content of the notification.

Email, SMS, and voice calls will be sent to the email address and mobile phone listed in the customer's account registration information.

Cybersecurity Notice for Scrapping or Resale

Before you resell or scrap the vehicle, that is, when you no longer hold the vehicle, you should clear the personal information in the vehicle terminal by yourself.

The company does not assume any responsibility if the personal information of the vehicle terminal is leaked to a third party due to improper operation.

Our franchised dealers are familiar with the relevant regulations and can provide you with consulting services.

2-1. Instrument Cluster

Instrument Cluster Overview 27

Operation/Malfunction Indicator 28

2-2. Steering Wheel

Horn..... 36

Steering Wheel Heating (If Equipped)..... 36

Adjusting Steering Wheel 37

2-3. Rear View Mirror

Inside Rear View Mirror..... 38

Outside Rear View Mirror 38

Outside Rear View Mirror Memory Function (If Equipped) 40

Rear View Mirror Automatic Adjustment When Reversing (If Equipped) 41

2-4. Wiper System

Wiper Operation..... 42

Replacing Wiper Blade..... 44

2-5. Lighting System

Exterior Lighting..... 45

Interior Lighting..... 47

Headlight Leveling Adjusting..... 48

Follow Me Home Function 48

Smart Vehicle Locating Function 49

Intelligent High Beam Assist (IHC) (If Equipped).... 50

Fogging Instructions for Light..... 50

2-6. Seat

Correct Sitting Posture..... 51

Head Restraint..... 52

Audio Headrest (If Equipped) 52

Front Seat..... 53

Second Row Manual Seat ... 55

Second Row Power Seat..... 57

Third Row Manual Seat..... 58

Third Row Power Seat (If Equipped) 58

Electric Expansion of Luggage Compartment Space (If Equipped)..... 59

Seat Massage Function (If Equipped)..... 59

Front Passenger Seat Recline Function (If Equipped) 61

Seat Heating Function (If Equipped) 61

Seat Ventilation Function (If Equipped)..... 62

Seat Memory Function (If Equipped) 62

Easy Seat Access/Exit Function (If Equipped)..... 63

2-7. Seat Belt

Seat Belt..... 63

Seat Belt Pretensioner (If Equipped) 68

2-8. Child Restraint System

Child Restraint System..... 69

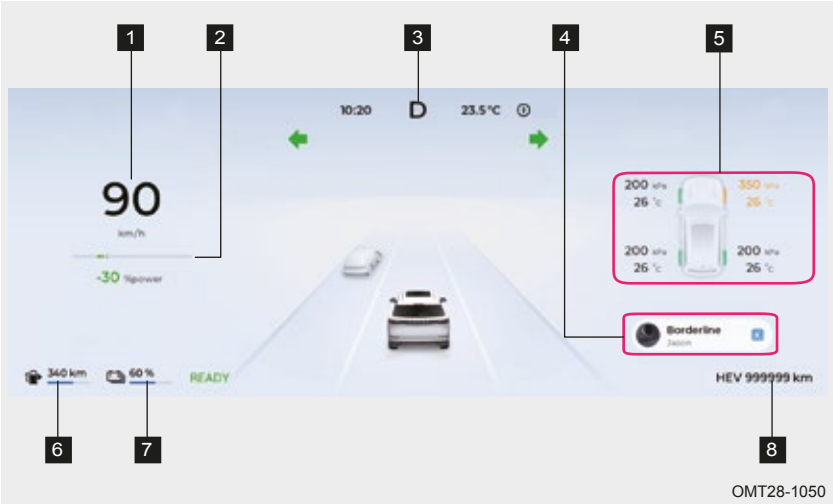
Top Tether..... 71

Installing Child Restraint System 73

Enabling and Disabling Front Passenger Airbag (If Equipped) 78

2-1. Instrument Cluster

Instrument Cluster Overview



1 Vehicle speed display: Driving speed (unit: km/h).

2 Instantaneous power consumption: The ratio of the current output electric drive power to the maximum electric drive power (unit: %).

3 Gear position information: The selected gear position information (the current gear position or manual mode gear position (If Equipped)).

In manual mode (If Equipped), on-board computer displays arrow and target gear position according to current conditions to prompt you to perform a shift operation:

" ↑ " prompts you to perform an upshift operation.

" ↓ " prompts you to perform a downshift operation.

4 Multimedia information: Media music and radio information

5 Information display area: Short press "⊟" button on steering wheel to circularly switch among recent 50 km - since reset - tire pressure display - navigation - electric drive power.

Since reset: Long press " ○ " button on steering wheel to reset the average speed, trip mileage.

Navigation: Long press " ○ " button on steering wheel to enter full-screen map.

6 Fuel level display: Current remaining fuel in fuel tank and driving mileage.

7 Power display: The current remaining SOC of power battery.

8 Mileage display: Driving mileage of the vehicle (common unit: km).

READ

- For battery level display, it can be set in Audio System - Vehicle Center - New Energy - Setting Pure Electric Mileage Display (Battery Level/ Standard Mileage/Dynamic Mileage).
- For mileage display, it can be set in Audio System - Vehicle Center - New Energy - Setting Driving Distance Display (ODO Total Distance/HEV Distance/EV Distance).
- When the vehicle is accelerating, braking urgently, turning sharply or driving on a slope, the fuel gauge reading might be inaccurate.
- Speedometer is affected by tire size used in vehicle. Only tires of original size can be used, otherwise it will not indicate the correct speed.

Operation/Malfunction Indicator

With vehicle powered on, some malfunction indicators will come on for a short time, indicating that system is performing self-check. If one system malfunction indicator remains on or flashes after starting the vehicle, please contact authorized service station for inspection and repair immediately.

The operation indicator remains on, used to alert driver the operating condition of a certain vehicle's system.

Malfunction indicator remains on or flashes, used to alert driver that a certain system of the vehicle is malfunctioning.

Name	Indicator	Description
Daytime running light indicator		The indicator remains on to indicate that daytime running light is turned on.
Position light indicator		The indicator remains on to indicate that position light is turned on.
Turn signal indicator		When the left or right turn signal lights are turned on, the turn signal light on corresponding side flashes. When hazard light is turned on, both left and right turn signal lights will flash simultaneously.
High beam light indicator		The indicator remains on to indicate that high beam light is turned on.
Rear fog light indicator		The indicator remains on to indicate that rear fog light s turned on.

Driving ready indicator	READY	Remaining on indicates that vehicle is in READY state and vehicle can start off.
Intelligent high beam assist indicator		The indicator remains on to indicate that intelligent high beam assist is in operating condition.
		The indicator remains on to indicate that intelligent high beam assist is malfunctioning. Please go to authorized service station for inspection and repair as soon as possible.
Front seat belt indicator		The indicator remains on to indicate that front seat belt is not buckled or fastened firmly. Wear seat belt and drive safely.
Rear seat belt indicator		This indicator is used to alert the driver that the rear seat belt is not buckled or not fastened firmly. Wear seat belt and drive safely. Note: The red indicator light turns on when the corresponding seat belt is not fastened, and turns off when the corresponding seat belt is fastened.
Electric parking brake system indicator		The indicator remains on to indicate that electric parking brake system is in operating condition currently. The indicator flashes during sudden braking, it is normal and no need to deal with. If it flashes in other cases, it indicates that the system is malfunctioning. Please go to authorized service station for inspection and repair as soon as possible.
		The indicator remains on to indicate that electric parking brake system is malfunctioning. Please go to authorized service station for inspection and repair as soon as possible.
Auto hold system indicator		The indicator remains on to indicate that auto hold system is turned on.
		The indicator remains on to indicate that auto hold system is activated.

Electronic stability program system indicator		The indicator flashes to indicate that electronic stability program system is in operating condition.
		The indicator remains on to indicate that electronic stability program system is malfunctioning. Please go to authorized service station for inspection and repair as soon as possible.
Electronic stability program system OFF indicator	OFF	The indicator remains on to indicate that electronic stability program system is turned off.
Hill descent control system indicator		The indicator remains on to indicate that hill descent control system is in operating condition.
		The indicator remains on to indicate that hill descent control system is malfunctioning. Please go to authorized service station for inspection and repair as soon as possible.
Anti-lock brake system indicator	ABS	The indicator remains on to indicate that anti-lock brake system is malfunctioning. Please go to authorized service station for inspection and repair as soon as possible.
Brake system indicator	!	The indicator remains on to indicate that brake fluid level is low or brake system is malfunctioning. Please contact authorized service station for inspection and repair immediately.
Blind spot detection system indicator		The indicator remains on to indicate that blind spot detection system enters level 1 alarm state.
		The indicator flashes to indicate that blind spot detection system enters level 2 alarm state.
		The indicator remains on to indicate that blind spot detection system is malfunctioning. Please go to authorized service station for inspection and repair as soon as possible.
Active speed limit indicator	LIMIT --- km/h	The indicator remains on to indicate that active speed limit enters pre-speed limit state.
	LIMIT ON 30 km/h	The indicator remains on to indicate that active speed limit enters speed limit state.

Cruise control system indicator	CRUISE km/h	The indicator flashes to indicate that cruise control system enters the pre-cruising state.
	CRUISE ON 45 km/h	The indicator remains on to indicate that cruise control system enters cruising state.
Adaptive cruise control system indicator		The indicator remains on to indicate that adaptive cruise control system enters the pre-cruising state.
		The indicator remains on to indicate that adaptive cruise control system enters cruising state.
		The indicator remains on to indicate that adaptive cruise control system is malfunctioning. Please go to authorized service station for inspection and repair as soon as possible.
Lane departure assist (lane departure warning/ lane departure prevention) indicator		The indicator remains on to indicate that lane departure assist is in ON/limit condition.
		The indicator remains on to indicate that lane departure assist is in standby condition currently. The indicator flashes to indicate that lane departure assist is activated.
		The indicator remains on to indicate that lane departure assist is malfunctioning. Please go to authorized service station for inspection and repair as soon as possible.
Emergency lane keeping indicator		The indicator remains on to indicate that emergency lane keeping is in ON/limit condition currently.
		The indicator remains on to indicate that emergency lane keeping is in standby condition currently.
		The indicator flashes to indicate that emergency lane keeping is activated.
		The indicator remains on to indicate that the emergency lane keeping is malfunctioning. Please go to authorized service station for inspection and repair as soon as possible.

Automatic emergency braking system indicator		The indicator remains on to indicate that automatic emergency braking system is in operating condition currently.
		The indicator remains on to indicate that the automatic emergency braking system is malfunctioning. Please go to authorized service station for inspection and repair as soon as possible.
Traffic jam assist system/ integrated cruise assist system indicator		The indicator remains on to indicate that traffic jam assist system/integrated cruise assist system is pre-activated.
		The indicator remains on to indicate that traffic jam assist system/integrated cruise assist system is activated.
		The indicator remains on to indicate that traffic jam assist system/integrated cruise assist system is malfunctioning. Please go to authorized service station for inspection and repair as soon as possible.
Gasoline particulate filter indicator		The indicator remains on to indicate that gasoline particulate filter is full, please increase the speed and clean it.
		The indicator remains on to indicate that gasoline particulate filter is malfunctioning. Please go to authorized service station for inspection and repair as soon as possible.
Electric power steering system indicator		The indicator remains on to indicate that electric power steering system is not initialized or calibrated. Please contact authorized service station for inspection and repair immediately.
		The indicator remains on to indicate that electric power steering system is malfunctioning. Please contact authorized service station for inspection and repair immediately.
Steering wheel handsoff warning (-type A)		When the driver releases the steering wheel during driving, a steering wheel hands-off warning will appear on the instrument cluster, accompanied by an alarm sound, reminding the driver to hold the steering wheel.

Steering wheel handsoff warning (-type B)		When the driver releases the steering wheel during driving, a steering wheel hands-off warning will appear on the instrument cluster, accompanied by an alarm sound, reminding the driver to hold the steering wheel.
Charging and discharging indicator		The indicator remains on to indicate that the operating condition of charging and discharging system. If this indicator does not remain on when the vehicle is powered on, or it remains on after vehicle starting, please go to authorized service station for inspection and repair as soon as possible.
Power battery indicator		Remaining on indicates that power battery is low. Please charge as soon as possible.
		Remaining on indicates that power battery is seriously discharged. Please charge as soon as possible.
High voltage insulation indicator		The indicator remains on to indicate that the insulating property of high voltage system decreases. Please contact authorized service station for inspection and repair immediately.
		The indicator remains on to indicate that the insulating property of high voltage system seriously decreases. Please contact authorized service station for inspection and repair immediately.
Electric mode indicator	EV	Remaining on indicates that vehicle enters EV mode.
	EV+	Remaining on indicates that vehicle enters EV+ mode.
HEV mode indicator	HEV	Remaining on indicates that vehicle enters HEV mode.
Charging gun connection indicator		Remaining on indicates that charging connection device is connected.
Discharging gun connection indicator		Remaining on indicates that discharging connection device is connected.

Power limit indicator		The indicator remains on to indicate that power battery is low or the power decreases due to system overheating. Slow down and drive vehicle to a safe area and stop for charging and cooling down. If the indicator is still on, please contact authorized service station for inspection and repair immediately.
Power battery system indicator		The indicator remains on to indicate that power battery system is malfunctioning. Please contact authorized service station for inspection and repair immediately.
Vehicle high voltage system indicator		The indicator remains on to indicate that power battery, electric drive and charging system is malfunctioning. Please contact authorized service station for inspection and repair immediately.
Transmissi-on indicator		The indicator remains on to indicate that transmission system is malfunctioning. Please contact authorized service station for inspection and repair immediately.
		The indicator remains on to indicate that transmission system is malfunctioning. Please contact authorized service station for inspection and repair immediately.
Airbag indicator		The indicator remains on to indicate that airbag is malfunctioning. Please go to authorized service station for inspection and repair as soon as possible.
Tire pressure monitoring system indicator		The indicator remains on to indicate that tire pressure is incorrect. Please check if tire pressure is too low or if temperature is too high. If tire pressure is normal, please contact authorized service station for inspection and repair as soon as possible.
High coolant temperatur-e warning indicator		The indicator remains on to indicate that engine coolant temperature is high. Drive vehicle to a safe area and stop, power off the vehicle after idling for several minutes. Please contact authorized service station for inspection and repair immediately.

EPC malfunction indicator	EPC	The indicator remains on to indicate that engine system is malfunctioning. Please contact authorized service station for inspection and repair immediately.
MIL malfunction indicator		The indicator remains on to indicate that the part connected to OBD and related to emission or OBD system itself is malfunctioning. Please contact authorized service station for inspection and repair immediately.
Maintenan-ce indicator		The indicator remains on to indicate that the vehicle needs maintenance. Please go to authorized service station for inspection and repair as soon as possible.
Warning indicator		The indicator remains on to indicate that vehicle is malfunctioning or has abnormal information. You can inquiry the relevant alarm information in the fault inquiry screen. If it cannot be solved, please contact authorized service station immediately.
Fatigue driving indicator		The indicator remains on to indicate to take a rest when driving time exceeds the set time.
Overspeed alarm indicator		The indicator comes on to indicate to pay attention to the vehicle speed when vehicle speed exceeds the set speed limit.
Low engine oil pressure warning indicator		The indicator remains on to indicate that engine oil pressure is low. Drive vehicle to a safe area and stop. Please contact authorized service station for inspection and repair immediately.
Low fuel level warning indicator		The indicator remains on to indicate that vehicle is running out of fuel. Please add fuel as soon as possible.
4WD system malfunction indicator	AWD	This indicator is used to alert the driver that 4WD is malfunctioning. Please go to authorized service station for inspection and repair as soon as possible.

Low washer fluid level indicator		This indicator is used to alert the driver that washer fluid is insufficient and needs to be added.
Door open reminder indicator		This indicator is used to alert the driver of the opening and closing status of driver door. When vehicle speed is ⩽ 3 km/h with a door open, there is no alarm sound, and the corresponding door open indicator remains on in red; When the vehicle speed is ⩾ 3 km/h, the corresponding door open indicator flashes, and the door opening sound alarm is triggered at the same time.

2-2. Steering Wheel

Horn

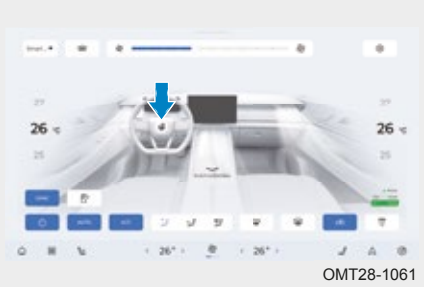
OMT28-1060

To sound the horn, press area near horn mark on the steering wheel.

READ

Obey local regulations regarding usage of vehicle horns.

Steering Wheel Heating (If Equipped)


OMT28-1061

With vehicle in READY state, press " " on the air conditioning system screen to turn on steering wheel heating function. After pressing the button again, steering wheel heating function is turned off.

⚠ CAUTION

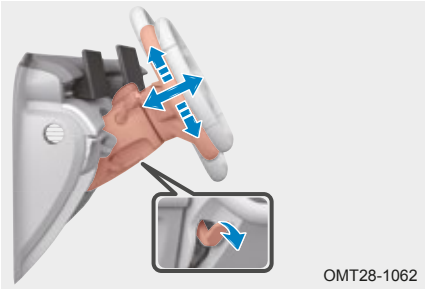
When the following conditions are met, the steering wheel heating function will be turned on:

- Engine is operating.
- Voltage of battery is in normal range.
- Steering heated switch is pressed.

When any of the following conditions are met, the function will stop or pause after it works for a period of time:

- Engine stops.
- Steering heated switch is pressed again.

Adjusting Steering Wheel



Stop vehicle at a safe place away from major traffic:

Step 1: Push down adjustment lever and release it;

Step 2: Adjust steering wheel upward and downward/forward and backward to a comfortable angle;

Step 3: Hold steering wheel steady and push adjustment lever to original position;

Step 4: Check if the steering wheel is shaking. Repeat operations of step 3 if shaking.

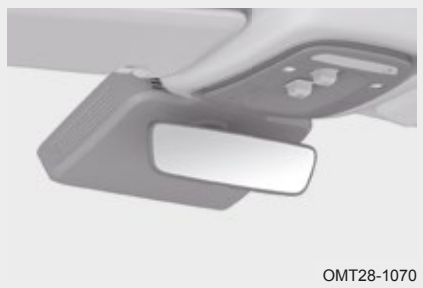
⚠ WARNING

- Do not adjust steering wheel while driving, otherwise it may cause accidents and personal injury.
- Make sure the steering wheel is securely locked before driving, otherwise it may cause accidents and personal injury.

2-3. Rear View Mirror

Inside Rear View Mirror

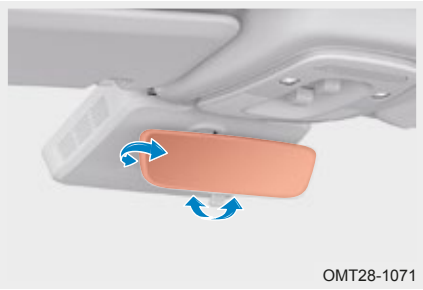
Automatic anti-glare



OMT28-1070

When driving at night, the light sensor installed in front/rear of the inside rear view mirror automatically detects the reflected light from the headlights of vehicles behind and automatically adjusts the lens angle to reduce the reflected light from the headlights of vehicles behind.

Inside rear view mirror adjustment



OMT28-1071

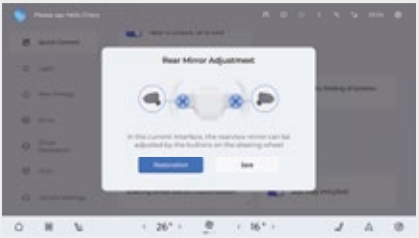
Adjust inside rear view mirror to a proper position before driving, to make sure that driver can achieve an optimum view.

Outside Rear View Mirror

Outside rear view mirror adjustment

OMT28-1072

With vehicle in READY state, click " " button on the shortcut menu to enter the Rear Mirror Adjustment screen. Rear view mirror can be adjusted by steering wheel button on current page.



OMT28-1073

With vehicle in READY state, rear view mirror can be adjusted by steering wheel button on current page through Audio System - Vehicle Center - Quick Control - Rear View Mirror Adjustment.

⚠ WARNING

- Do not adjust outside rear view mirror while driving, otherwise it may cause accidents and personal injury.
- Image displayed on outside rear view mirror may differ from the actual, so always drive carefully.

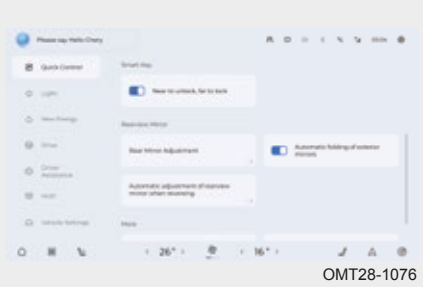
Folding/extending of outside rear view mirror

OMT28-1074

With vehicle in READY state, click " " button on the shortcut menu to fold/extend outside rear view mirror.

OMT28-1075

With vehicle in READY state, click " " button through Audio System - Vehicle Center - Quick Control to fold/extend outside rear view mirror.


OMT28-1076

With vehicle in READY state, turn on Automatic folding of exterior mirrors through Audio System - Vehicle Center - Quick Control. In disarming/arming, outside rear view mirror will fold/extend automatically.

READ

According to visual field requirements, folding angles of the left and right outside rear view mirrors are different. Therefore, when power outside rear view mirrors automatically fold, the left and right outside rear view mirrors are not synchronized, which is normal.

CAUTION

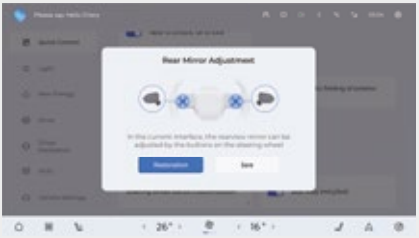
- Do not fold/extend the power outside rear view mirror manually, otherwise it may cause the folding function to fail.
- When folding/extending the outside rear view mirror, do not touch its surface to prevent damage to it with excessive force.
- In cold winter, it is recommended to turn off the outside rear view mirror automatic folding function. This will prevent the outside rear view mirror from being frozen in folding position due to accumulated snow or rain.

Outside Rear View Mirror Memory Function (If Equipped)

OMT28-1077

With vehicle in READY state, after adjusting the seat position, the audio system will pop up the seat memory screen to restore/save and update the memory position according to your needs.

Note: Seat and outside rear view mirror memory are saved and recalled at the same time.

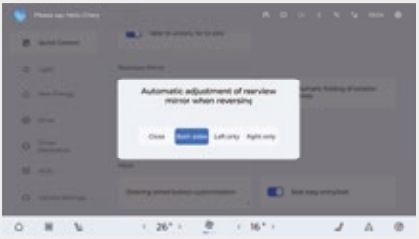


OMT28-1078

With vehicle in READY state, it can restore/save and update the memory position of outside rear view mirror according to your needs through Audio System - Vehicle Center - Quick Control - Rear Mirror Adjustment.

Rear View Mirror Automatic Adjustment When Reversing (If Equipped)

When vehicle is reversing (shift to R), outside rear view mirror will flip down automatically, so that you can see the curb below; If your visual field cannot be satisfied, you can adjust position of outside rear view mirror lens. When shifting out of R position, the position will be saved automatically (outside rear view mirror automatic flipping down position).



OMT28-1079

With vehicle in READY state, set Automatic adjustment of rearview mirror when reversing (OFF/both sides/only the left /only the right) through Audio System - Vehicle Center - Quick Control.

■ Return to position before flipping down under following conditions:

1. When shifting out of R position.
2. Vehicle speed is higher than 10 km/h.
3. Vehicle is powered off.

2-4. Wiper System

Wiper Operation

Front wiper operation

OMT28-1080

Vehicle is in READY status:

High speed mode: Push roller to "HI" position to operate quickly and continuously.

Low speed mode: Push roller to "LO" position to operate slowly and continuously.

OFF: Push roller to "OFF" position, wipers will operate automatically at low speed until wipers return to stop position.

Auto mode: Push roller to "AUTO" position, automatically control the wiping speed of the wiper according to amount of rainfall outside.

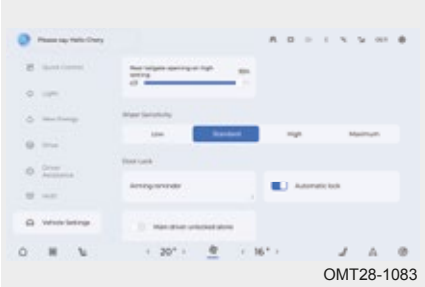
OMT28-1081

Spray mode: Shortly press the left button of wiper switch and hold, the front washer sprays water, and front wiper operates simultaneously. Front washer will stop operating when the switch is released, the wiper will wipe 3 cycles at low speed, and operate one cycle then stop after a few seconds.

Auto wiper sensitivity

OMT28-1082

With vehicle in READY state, click " " button on the shortcut menu to set wiper sensitivity cycle.


OMT28-1083

With vehicle in READY state, set wiper sensitivity (Low/Standard/High/Maximum) through Audio System - Vehicle Center - Vehicle Settings.

Rear wiper operation

OMT28-1084

Vehicle is in READY status:

Push wiper roller to "ON" position, rear wiper operates; Push wiper roller to "OFF" position, rear wiper is turned off.

Push roller to " " position from "ON"/"OFF" position and hold, rear washer sprays and rear wiper operates simultaneously.

⚠ CAUTION

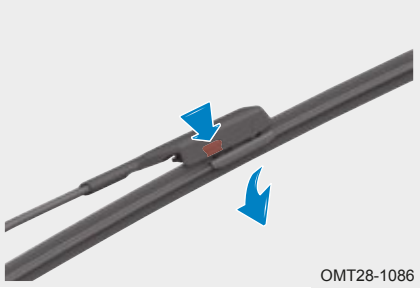
- Take care to prevent the wrong addition of antifreeze during adding washer fluid.
- When operating wiper switch to spray water, do not exceed 10 seconds at a time.
- Do not operate wiper switch to spray water when there is no washer fluid in reservoir.
- Do not try to clear a nozzle with a pin or other objects when it becomes blocked, or it will be damaged.
- Do not operate wiper switch when the windshield is dry, as this may damage wiper blade and scratch the windshield.
- Do not operate wiper switch if there are obstacles on windshield, as this may scratch the windshield and damage wiper motor.
- Do not mix water with the washer fluid. Otherwise, it may cause the washer fluid to freeze and damage the washing tank and other parts of the washer system.
- In cold winter, always check if wiper blade is frozen onto windshield before operating wiper switch. If so, defrost it before using, otherwise it may damage wiper blade and wiper motor.

Replacing Wiper Blade

Replacing front wiper blade

OMT28-1085

Step 1: With vehicle in READY state, click " OFF " button on quick menu, switch vehicle to power off state within several seconds, shortly press the left button of wiper switch, it will enter maintenance mode;


OMT28-1086

Step 2: Lift the front wiper arm and hold;

Step 3: Rotate wiper blades down while pressing the buttons on both sides, so as to remove the blades;

Step 4: Install the new wiper blades in reverse order, and make sure that the fixing clamp is locked firmly;

Step 5: Check that front wipers operate properly.

Replacing rear wiper blade

OMT28-1087

Step 1: Lift the rear wiper arm and hold;

Step 2: Pull up wiper blades while pressing the buttons on both sides, so as to remove the blades;

Step 3: Install the new wiper blades in reverse order, and be sure to install them in place;

Step 4: Check that rear wipers operate properly.

READ

It is recommended that you have wiper blades replaced by someone at authorized service station to ensure correct fitting.

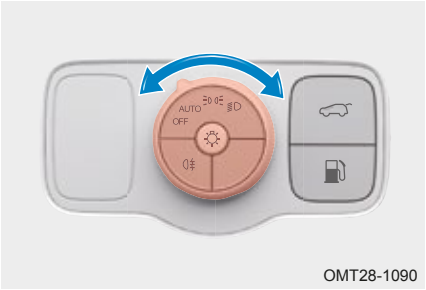
CAUTION

Make sure that the wiper arm returns to its original position before driving. otherwise it may damage the vehicle and cause an accident.

2-5. Lighting System

Exterior Lighting

Headlight switch



OMT28-1090

Vehicle is in READY status:

Auto sensing mode: When headlight is turned off, the switch returns to "-AUTO" position automatically and auto sensing mode is turned on by rotating to "OFF" position. Sense the intensity of external light, turn position lights, low beam lights, license plate light on/off automatically.

OFF: When headlight is turned on, headlight function is turned off and the switch returns to "AUTO" position automatically by rotating to "OFF" position.

Position lights: Rotate to "" position to turn on position lights, license plate lights, ambient light and backlights.

Low beam lights: Rotate to " " position to turn on low beam lights and keep position lights coming on.

Rear fog lights: When low beam light is turned on, press " " button to turn on rear fog lights.

READ

- When turning off low beam lights, rear fog lights is turned off at the same time.
- When parking vehicle for a long time or before leaving vehicle, make sure that headlight is turned off to prevent the battery (12 V) from being depleted. Failure to do so may cause that the vehicle cannot be started.

High beam light

■ High beam lights ON/OFF

OMT28-1091

With vehicle in READY state, when turning on low beam lights, pull wiper switch away from steering wheel side and release, high beam lights come on; Pull towards steering wheel side and release to turn off high beam lights.

■ High beam lights flash

OMT28-1092

With vehicle in READY state, pull wiper switch towards the steering wheel side and release it to flash the high beam lights once. At the same time, high beam indicator in instrument cluster flashes once.

READ
High beam lights can flash when the low beam lights are off.

Turn signal light

OMT28-1093

With vehicle in READY state, dial wiper switch upward, right turn signal light is turned on; Dial it downward, left turn signal light is turned on.

When turn signal lights are turned on, the indicator in the instrument cluster will flash. As vehicle is turning back after turning, wiper switch automatically returns to center position.

Note: During a slight steering wheel turn, wiper switch may not automatically return to original position.

■ Lane change assist function

With vehicle in READY state, pull turn signal light switch once but not too far over. This will make the turn signal light flash 3 times.

Daytime running light

With vehicle in READY state, daytime running lights come on.

Brake light

Depress the brake pedal, brake light and high mounted stop light turn on.

Back-up light

With vehicle in READY state, shift to R, back-up light turns on.

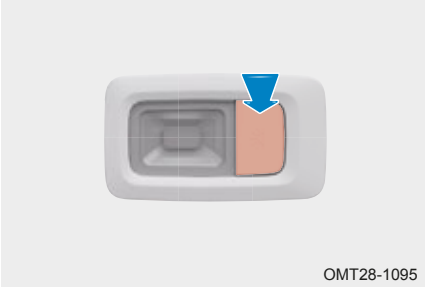
Interior Lighting

Front dome light

OMT28-1094

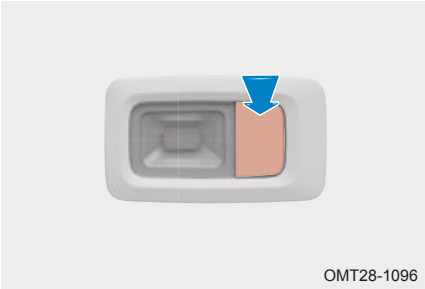
Touch the front left/right dome light, the front dome light on corresponding side comes on.

Second row dome light


OMT28-1095

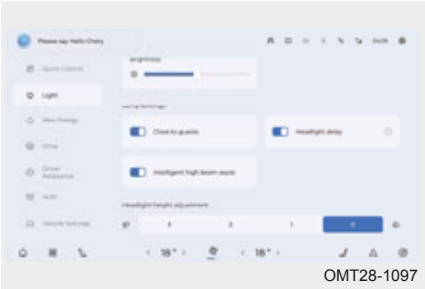
Press " ⁜ " switch, the second row dome light comes on/goes off.

Third row dome light (If Equipped)


OMT28-1096

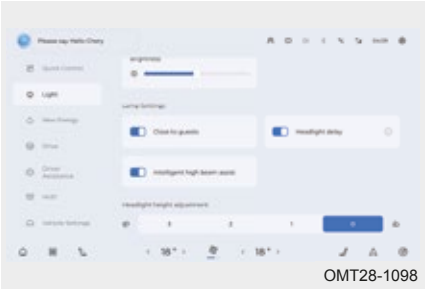
Press " " switch, the third row dome light comes on/goes off.

Headlight Leveling Adjusting

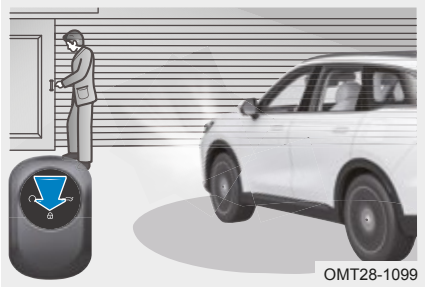

OMT28-1097

With vehicle in READY state, set Headlight height adjustment (level 0/ level 1/level 2/level 3) through Audio System - Vehicle Center - Light.

Follow Me Home Function


OMT28-1098

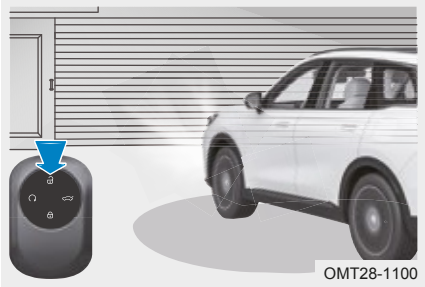
With vehicle in READY state, turn on Headlight delay through Audio System - Vehicle Center - Lighting.


OMT28-1099

ON: With vehicle powered off, turn on headlight automatic mode before stopping. When the vehicle is in a dim environment, press lock button on smart key, and the vehicle is armed successfully. Low beam lights automatically come on for tens of seconds. Press lock button on smart key to activate it again.

OFF: With vehicle powered on, turn off headlight (OFF) or reaches the set operating time, follow me home function will turn off automatically. Low beam lights will go off immediately.

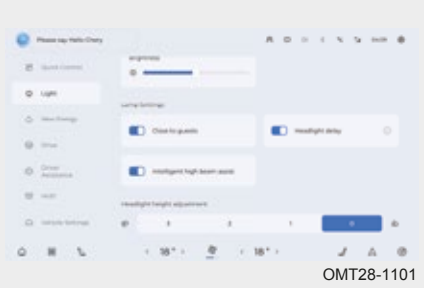
Smart Vehicle Locating Function


OMT28-1100

ON: With vehicle powered off, turn on headlight automatic mode before stopping. When the vehicle is in a dim environment, press unlock button on smart key, low beam lights will come on for tens of seconds. Press unlock button to activate it again.

OFF: With vehicle powered on, turn off headlight (OFF) or reaches the set operating time, the smart vehicle locating function will be turned off automatically, low beam lights will turn off immediately.

Intelligent High Beam Assist (IHC) (If Equipped)


OMT28-1101

With vehicle in READY state, turn on Intelligent high beam assist through Audio System - Vehicle Center - Lighting.

With vehicle in READY state, turn on headlight automatic mode. When the low beam lights automatically come on, push wiper switch away from steering wheel side and release, "" white indicator on instrument cluster remains on, and intelligent high beam assist is activated; When intelligent high beam assist is activated and vehicle speed is higher than 40 km/h, intelligent high beam assist automatically turns headlight high beam on/off according to road conditions such as meeting, following, and overtaking.

When the intelligent high beam assist is activated, the headlight high beam turns on or flashes, the white indicator "" on instrument cluster goes off. Pull wiper switch away from steering wheel side and release, intelligent high beam assist is reactivated.

READ

- When the ambient brightness is too high, the intelligent high beam assist turns off the headlight high beam automatically.
- When the vehicle speed is lower than 30 km/h, intelligent high beam assist turns off the headlight high beam automatically.
- When the left/right turn signal light is activated, intelligent high beam assist can not turn the headlight high beam on/off automatically.

Fogging Instructions for Light

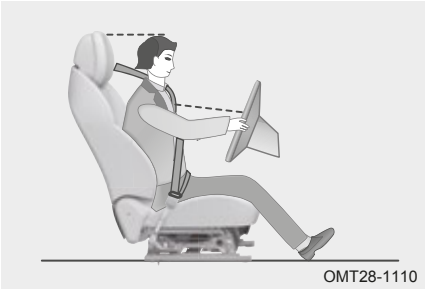
When the weather is cold or humid, the inner side of lights will fog up due to the difference in temperature between the inside and outside. This fog has no effect on service life of lighting system. The vehicle lights generate fog, which gradually begins to disappear in the inner surface of lens for headlight within 30 minutes after the low and high beam lights are turned on. After a period of lighting, the fog disappears naturally. This is normal.

⚠ WARNING

- Following guidelines for driving through water (for example: water depth, speed, etc.) to avoid any water entering the lights.
- After opening light dust cover, reinstall it in place at the end of operation, otherwise water may enter the lights.
- When replacing a bulb, strictly check installation of various light components to make sure that they are installed correctly and sealed properly. When installing rear cover, check its seal ring and keep it clean! Otherwise, it will lead to water and dust entering lights!
- It is strictly forbidden to flush the engine compartment with a high pressure water gun, in particular, the lights cannot be flushed. Due to high pressure of high pressure water gun, accessories on lights may lose or fall off, vent hole and wire harness connector may damp, resulting in water infiltration or moisture not dispersing for a long time, and even severe condensation.

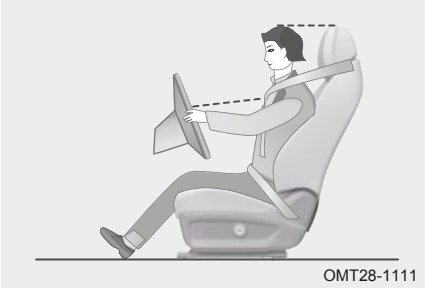
2-6. Seat

Correct Sitting Posture


OMT28-1110

When sitting, sit slightly inclined backwards (25° backward is ideal) and well back on seatback.

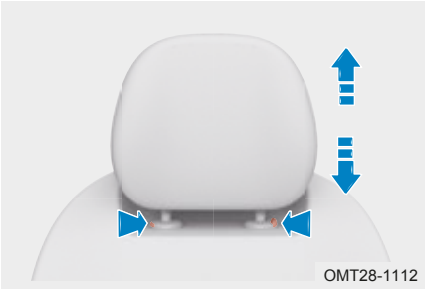
The front seats must not be too close to the instrument panel. The driver should hold the steering wheel with slightly bent arms during driving. His/her feet should also be bent slightly so that he/she can fully depress the pedal. Adjust head restraints properly so that the top of the head restraint is closest to the top of your head.


OMT28-1111

The shoulder belt should be over the center of the shoulder and close to the chest, kept away from the neck, the lap belt should lie over the hips but not stomach.

Head Restraint

Adjusting head restraint


OMT28-1112

Adjust upward: Pull it up directly to a proper height.

Adjust downward: Press the outside unlock button on head restraint, then adjust the head restraint downward.

Remove head restraints: Press and hold 2 unlock buttons at the same time until head restraint is pulled out completely.

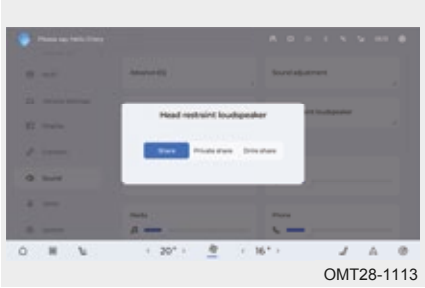
Install head restraints: Align the head restraint with the installation holes and push it down to lock position.

⚠ WARNING

- Do not adjust head restraint while driving, otherwise it may cause accidents and personal injury.
- Make sure that the head restraint is securely locked before driving, otherwise it may cause accidents and personal injury.

Audio Headrest (If Equipped)

Driver audio headrest enhances listening effect and privacy of driver, as well as the driving experience when occupants are at rest.



OMT28-1113

With vehicle in READY state, set Head restraint loudspeaker through Vehicle Center - Sound.

Share mode: Turn off the headrest audio function.

Private share mode: Phone/ Navigation/TTS/Multimedia/Button tone are played by headrest audio.

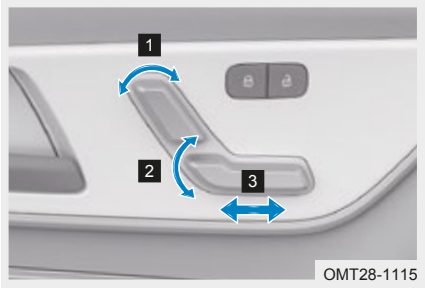
Driving comfort mode: Navigation broadcast/phone are played by headrest audio, and music is played by the vehicle audio.

⚠ CAUTION

The audio head restraint only supports height adjustment and cannot be removed, otherwise it may cause damage to the audio head restraint.

Front Seat

Driver power seat



OMT28-1115

1 Adjusting seatback

Move upper end of button forward and backward to adjust seatback angle.

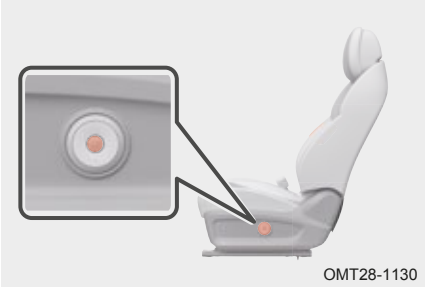
2 Adjusting seat height

Move rear end of button up and down to adjust seat height.

3 Adjusting seat forward and backward

Push the button forward and backward to adjust the seat forward and backward.

Adjusting driver waist (If Equipped)

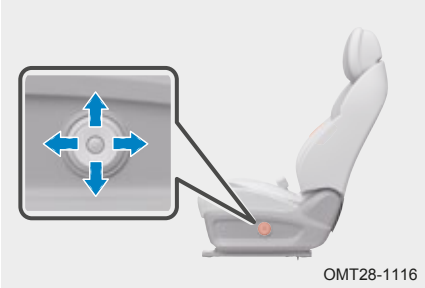

OMT28-1130

For models equipped with driver seat massage function: With vehicle in READY state, press the function switch, and switch between waist adjustment and massage function.

For models not equipped with driver seat massage function: Refer to the following operations.

READ

Adjusting driver waist and massage function cannot be turned on simultaneously.


OMT28-1116

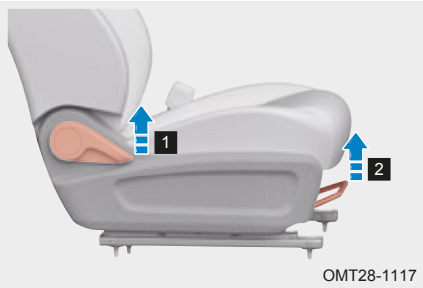
Long press " ↑ " to support upper part of waist and reduce support to lower part of waist.

Long press " ↓ " to support lower part of waist and reduce support to upper part of waist.

Long press " ← " to increase support to overall forward side of waist.

Long press " → " to reduce support to overall forward side of waist.

Front passenger manual seat (If Equipped)



OMT28-1117

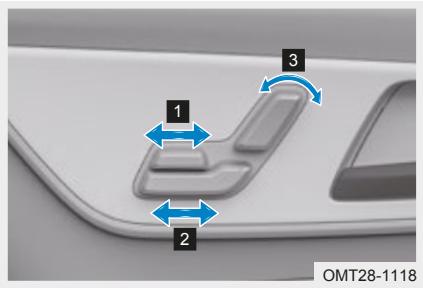
1 Adjusting seatback

Lean your body against seatback, and then pull seatback adjustment lever upward. Adjust seatback to desired angle by changing tilt angle of your body and release the lever. After that, apply force backward against the seatback to make sure that the seatback is locked properly.

2 Adjusting seat forward and backward

Pull grip up and move the seat back and forth to adjust the seat position forward and backward. After adjusting seat to a desired position, release the grip. Then, shake the seat forward and backward to make sure that the seat is locked properly.

Front passenger power seat (If Equipped)



OMT28-1118

1 Adjusting leg support angle(If Equipped)

Push the button forward and backward to adjust leg support angle.

2 Adjusting seat forward and backward

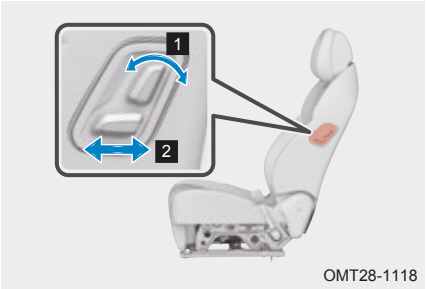
Push the button forward and backward to adjust the seat forward and backward.

3 Adjusting seatback

Move upper end of button forward and backward to adjust seatback angle.

The total adjustable front and rear stroke is 240 mm (it can be adjusted 180 mm forward, 60 mm backward); Seatback angle can be adjusted 30 degrees forward, 50 degrees backward; Height can be adjusted 40 mm upward, 20 mm downward.

Front passenger captain button (If Equipped)



1 Adjusting seatback

Move upper end of button forward and backward to adjust seatback angle.

2 Adjusting seat forward and backward

Push the button forward and backward to adjust the seat forward and backward.

READ

The seat types of driver and front passenger are different depending on the configuration of the vehicle. Please refer to the actual vehicle configuration.

CAUTION

- Do not place any items under the seat while adjusting the seat, otherwise, it will damage the seat.
- There is a limit position for lumbar support adjustment. When reaching the limit position, release the adjusting button in time. Otherwise, it will damage the seat.

WARNING

- Do not adjust seat while driving, otherwise it may cause accidents and personal injury.
- Avoid reclining seatback any more than needed, the seat belts provide maximum protection in a frontal or rear collision when the driver and the front passenger sit inclined slightly backwards and well back in their seats.

Second Row Manual Seat

Adjusting seat forward and backward

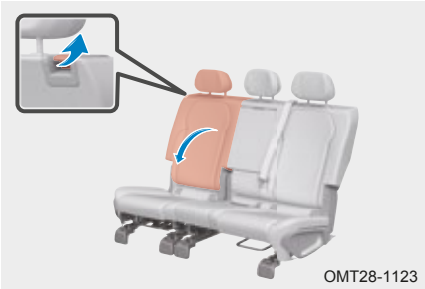
Pull up the seat adjusting grip, move the seat back and forth to desired position, and release grip to adjust the seat position.

Adjusting seatback

Pull the seatback adjustment lever upwards, adjust the seatback to desired angle, and release the lever to adjust the seatback angle.

Pull seatback adjustment lever upward, and slowly lower the seatback with your hand, then seatback can be folded.

Seat easy entry



Pull up EASY ENTRY operation handle at upper part of seatback, fold the second row seatback and slide the second row seat to foremost position to easy access to third row seat.

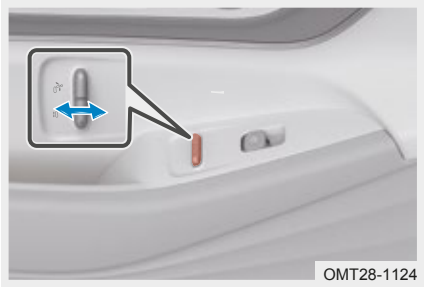
After entering and leaving the third row seat, slide the second row seat to rearmost position and pull the seatback backward until it is locked, accompanied by a click sound.

READ
When folding seatback, make sure that outer seat belt passes around the seatback to avoid damaging the belt.

WARNING
Do not adjust seat while driving, otherwise it may cause accidents and personal injury.

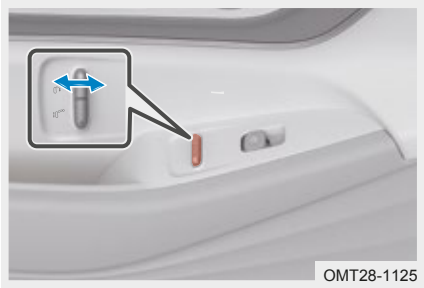
Second Row Power Seat

Adjusting seat forward and backward


OMT28-1124

Move " " button forward to adjust the seat forward; Move it to backward to adjust the seat backward.

Adjusting seatback


OMT28-1125

Move " " button forward to adjust the angle or fold seatback forward; Move backward to adjust the angle of seatback backward.

Seat easy entry

OMT28-1126

Press " " button, seatback will be tumbled forward and position will be adjusted forward to easy access to third row seat.

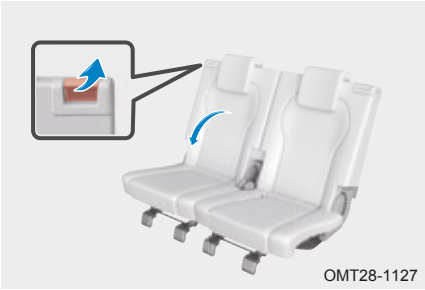
After access to the third row seat, press " " button, the seatback will be tumbled backward and the position will be adjusted backward.

READ
When folding seatback, make sure that outer seat belt passes around the seatback to avoid damaging the belt.

WARNING
Do not adjust seat while driving, otherwise it may cause accidents and personal injury.

The total adjustable front and rear stroke is 120 mm (it can be adjusted 120 mm forward, 40 mm backward); Seatback angle can be adjusted 26 degrees forward, 8 degrees backward; The height can not be adjusted.

Third Row Manual Seat


OMT28-1127

Pull seatback adjustment lever upward, and slowly lower the seatback with your hand, then seatback can be folded.

READ

When folding seatback, make sure that outer seat belt passes around the seatback to avoid damaging the belt.

WARNING

Do not adjust seat while driving, otherwise it may cause accidents and personal injury.

Third Row Power Seat (If Equipped)

OMT28-1128

Press " " button to adjust the angle or fold seatback forward.

Press " " button to adjust the seatback angle backward; Long press the " " button to adjust the seatback backward to the maximum position.

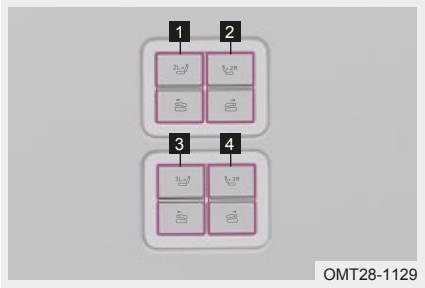
READ

When folding seatback, make sure that outer seat belt passes around the seatback to avoid damaging the belt.

WARNING

Do not adjust seat while driving, otherwise it may cause accidents and personal injury.

Electric Expansion of Luggage Compartment Space (If Equipped)



1 Press " 2L " button to adjust the angle of second row left seatback backward; Press the " " button to adjust the angle or fold second row left seatback forward.

2 Press " 2R " button to adjust the angle of second row right seatback backward; Press the " " button to adjust the angle or fold second row right seatback forward.

3 Press " 3L " button to adjust the angle of third row left seatback backward; Press the " " button to adjust the angle or fold third row left seatback forward.

4 Press " 3R " button to adjust the angle of third row right seatback backward; Press the " " button to adjust the angle or fold third row right seatback forward.

READ

When folding seatback, make sure that outer seat belt passes around the seatback to avoid damaging the belt.

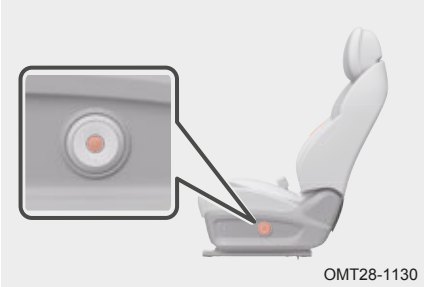
WARNING

Do not adjust seat while driving, otherwise it may cause accidents and personal injury.

The seat can not be adjusted forward and backward; Seatback angle can be adjusted 10 degrees forward, 4 degrees backward; The height can not be adjusted.

Seat Massage Function (If Equipped)

Driver and front passenger seat has a massage function with 3 massage intensities (low/medium/high) and 5 massage modes (wave/catwalk/cross/ease/jump), which can effectively relieve the back fatigue of long distance driving.

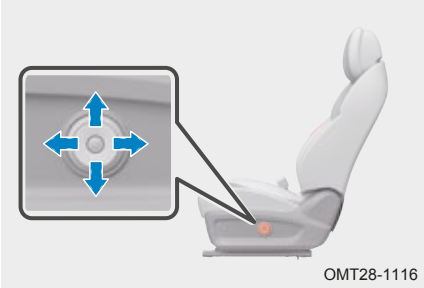

OMT28-1130

With vehicle in READY state, press the function switch of driver seat to switch between waist adjustment and massage function; Press the function switch of front passenger seat to turn on the seat massage function.

The massage function will automatically shut off after operating for about 15 minutes.

READ

Adjusting driver waist and massage function cannot be turned on simultaneously.


OMT28-1116

Short press " ⬆ " once to adjust one massage mode forwards at a time.

Short press " ⬇ " once to adjust one massage mode backwards at a time.

Short press " ⬅ " once to increase one massage intensity at a time.

Short press " ➡ " once to reduce one massage intensities at a time.

OMT28-1131

With vehicle in READY state, click the " ⌇⌇⌇ " button through Audio System - Seat Control Screen - Seat Massage to adjust the massage intensity and manually select the massage mode.

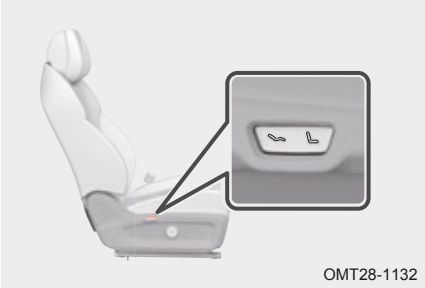
READ

The driver massage seat or front passenger massage seat is not standard. Please refer to the actual vehicle.

⚠ CAUTION

When the vehicle is driving, it is forbidden to lie on the seat, otherwise the seat belt and airbag cannot play a protective role.

Front Passenger Seat Recline Function (If Equipped)


OMT28-1132

Press " " button, to turn on the seat recline function, the seatback will be tumbled backward and the foot support lifts upwards; Press " " button again to exit the seat recline function.

After the seat recline function is activated, adjust the power seatback or foot rest angle of front passenger, and the audio system will pop up the seat memory screen to save and update the memory position according to your needs.

CAUTION

When the vehicle is driving, it is prohibited to use the front passenger seat recline function, otherwise the seat belt and airbag cannot play a protective role.

Seat Heating Function (If Equipped)

OMT28-1133

With vehicle in READY state, click " " button through Audio System - Seat Control Screen - Seat Heating to turn on the seat heating function and switch among level 3/level 2/ level 1/OFF circularly.

READ

Seat heating and seat ventilation cannot be turned on simultaneously.

Seat Ventilation Function (If Equipped)

OMT28-1134

With vehicle in READY state, click " " button through Audio System - Seat Control Screen - Seat Ventilation to turn on the seat ventilation function and switch among level 3/level 2/level 1/OFF circularly.

READ

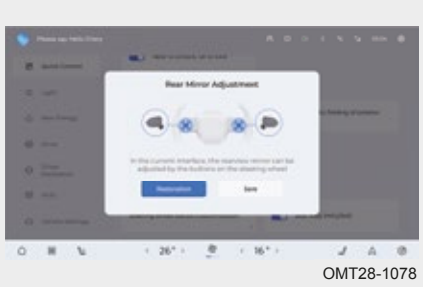
Seat heating and seat ventilation cannot be turned on simultaneously.

Seat Memory Function (If Equipped)

OMT28-1135

With vehicle in READY state, after adjusting the seat position, the audio system will pop up the seat memory screen to restore/save and update the memory position according to your needs.

Note: Seat and outside rear view mirror memory are saved and recalled at the same time.



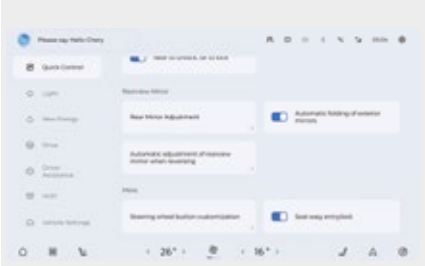
OMT28-1078

With vehicle in READY state, it can restore/save and update the memory position of seat according to your needs through Audio System - Vehicle Center - Quick Control - Rear Mirror Adjustment.

WARNING

When seat memory function turns on, please ensure that nobody is caught. If so, move the seat adjustment button to stop operation of seats. Do not leave children alone in vehicle. Otherwise, they may be caught due to seat memory function.

Easy Seat Access/Exit Function (If Equipped)



OMT28-1136

With vehicle in READY state, turn on Seat easy entry/exit through Audio System - Vehicle Center - Quick Control.

Switch vehicle from READY to OFF and open driver door, driver seat automatically moves backward a certain distance so that driver can get off conveniently.

Switch vehicle power from OFF to ON, the driver seat moves forwards a certain distance automatically for easy starting off.

⚠ WARNING

When easy seat access/exit function turns on, please ensure that nobody is caught. If so, move the seat adjustment button to stop operation of seats. Do not leave children alone in vehicle. Otherwise, they may be caught due to easy seat access function.

2-7. Seat Belt

Seat Belt

OMT28-1140

We strongly recommend the driver and passengers wear their seat belts correctly at all times. Failure to do so could increase possibility and severity of injury in an accident. Check the seat belt regularly. If any seat belt function failure is found, please contact authorized service station for inspection and repair immediately.

Seat belt indicator

Front seat belt is not buckled or not fastened firmly: When vehicle speed is less than 25 km/h, red indicator " " in instrument cluster flashes; When vehicle speed is not less than 25 km/h, red indicator " " in instrument cluster flashes, accompanied by sound alarm.

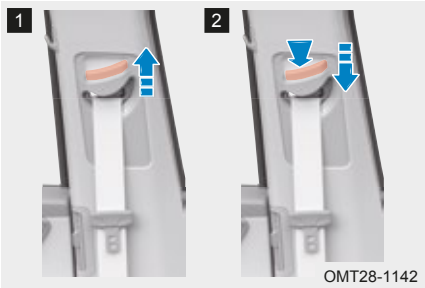
Second row seat belt is not buckled or fastened firmly: When vehicle speed is no less than 25 km/h, red indicator " " in instrument cluster remains on for 30 seconds and then goes off, accompanied by sound alarm.

READ

The front passenger, second row seat belt alarm function is not standard. Please refer to the actual vehicle.

Using seat belt correctly

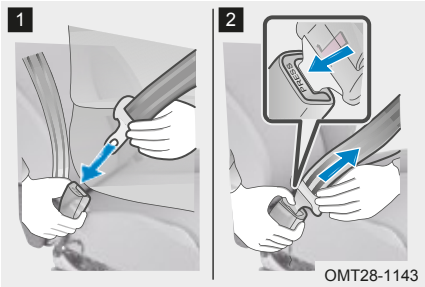
Step 1: Adjust the height of front seat belts;



1 Adjust upward: Directly push the seat belt adjustment button upwards.

2 Adjust downward: Push seat belt adjuster downward while pressing adjusting button.

Step 2: Fasten/release seat belt;



1 Fasten seat belt: Push the tab into the buckle until a "click" sound is heard.

2 Release seat belt: Press the release button to retract seat belt. If the belt cannot retract smoothly, pull it out and check for kinks or twists. Make sure that seat belt can retract smoothly.

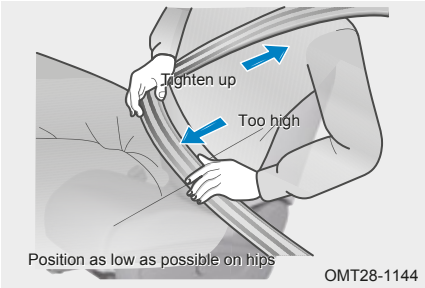
READ

- The seat belt will lock when the vehicle is on a slope.
- The seat belt will lock when it is pulled out quickly, but IT will not lock when pulling it out slowly.
- Each seat belt shall be used by one person only. Do not use a seat belt for more than one person at one time, including children.
- Only front seat belt can perform height adjustment. The usage method of the second row seat belts is same as the front seat belt. For the specific buckle position, please refer to your own vehicle.

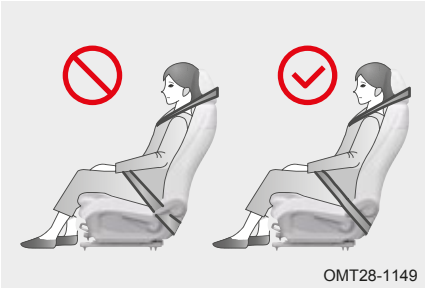
CAUTION

- Make sure that seat belt buckle position is correct and is locked safely, otherwise it may cause personal injuries.
- Do not use any seat belt with a loose buckle, otherwise, the seat belt will not protect the passengers in the event of sudden braking or a collision.

Step 3: Adjust the position of seat belts.



To adjust the seatback angle, sit up straightly and well back in the seat. Position the lap belt as low as possible on your hips — not on your waist, then pull the shoulder belt upward so that it comes fully over the shoulder, but does not come into contact with the neck or slide off the shoulder.



Wear the seat belt after the manual seat is adjusted to the appropriate position; Take out the seat belt in time if the seat belt accidentally enters the inside of seat adjustment lever, otherwise the seat belt will be worn or damaged.

⚠ CAUTION

- Avoid loose fitting clothes when driving. These can prevent the seatbelt fitting correctly and can affect the protection offered.
- Both high-positioned lap belts and loose-fitting belts could cause death or serious injuries during a collision or other unintended events.
- Do not recline seat more than necessary to achieve a comfortable ride. Seat belts are most effective when the back of the passenger and the seat keep a complete fit.
- Make sure the shoulder belt is positioned across your shoulder. Do not place the shoulder belt under your arm. The belt should be kept away from your neck, but not falling off your shoulder. Failure to do so could reduce the protection effect of seat belt in an accident.
- We recommend that children be seated in the second row seat. Use child restraint system with ISOFIX function according to the child's height. Always use standard fixing device for child restraint system on second row seat.

Maintaining seat belt

Check seat belts regularly for cuts, fraying, loose and stretched belt (-such as after a traffic accident). If the belt is damaged, please contact authorized service station for inspection and repair immediately.

⚠ CAUTION

- Do not allow water to penetrate belt retractor or buckle mechanism.
- Do not use chemical detergent, boiling water, bleach or dye to wash the seat belt.
- The seat belt should be washed with mild cleanser or warm water and dry naturally. Never clean it with artificial heat.
- Do not try to repair or lubricate retractor or buckle mechanism of seat belt, or repair seat belt in any way, it may damage the vehicle and cause personal injury.

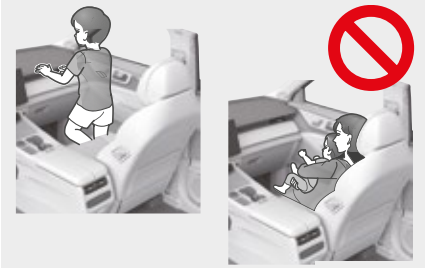
⚠ WARNING

- If your vehicle has been involved in a serious accident and even if seat belt is not obviously damaged, please contact authorized service station for inspection and replace.
- Ensure that the belt can function properly and the belt is not twisted. If the seat belt does not function properly, please contact authorized service station for inspection and repair immediately.
- Do not attempt to install, remove, modify, disassemble or dispose of the seat belts. If there is any need above, have any necessary service carried out by authorized service station.

Seat belt precautions

■ Precautions for using seat belt by a child

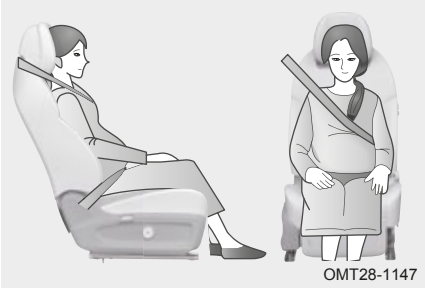
The seat belts of your vehicle are principally designed for persons of adult size. Use a child restraint system appropriate for the child, until the child becomes large enough to properly wear the vehicle seat belt. When the child becomes large enough to properly wear the vehicle seat belt, follow the instructions regarding seat belt usage. If a child is too large to use a child restraint system, the child should sit in the second row seat and must be restrained using the vehicle seat belt.


OMT28-1146

Make sure the shoulder belt is positioned across the center of child's shoulder. The belt should be kept away from child's neck, but not falling off child's shoulder. Otherwise, the child may be seriously injured or even death during a collision or other unintended events.

Failure to use a child restraint system (for example: Let a child stand or kneel on seats; Let a child sit on an adult's laps; Holding a child in arms). This may cause death or serious injuries during a collision or other unintended events.

■ Precautions for using seat belt by a pregnant woman

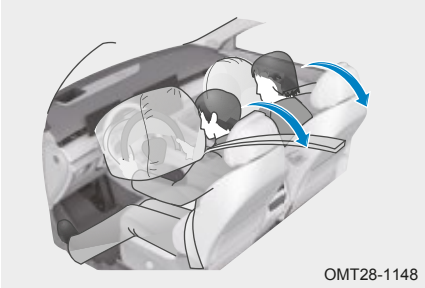

OMT28-1147

Obtain medical advice and wear the seat belt properly. Women who are pregnant should position the lap belt as low as possible over the hips in the same manner as other occupants. Extend the shoulder belt completely over the shoulder and across the chest, avoid belt contact with the rounding of the abdominal area. If the seat belt is not worn properly, it may cause serious injuries or death during a collision or other unintended events.

⚠ WARNING

- Do not insert coins, clips, etc. into the buckle to prevent from properly latching tab and buckle.
- After inserting the tab, make sure that the tab and buckle are locked and that the lap belt and shoulder belt are not twisted.
- It is not allowed to insert the non-genuine seat belt tab into buckle. Long-term use will easily lead to damage of the seat belt buckle and make it unusable.
- If the seat belt does not function normally, please contact authorized service station immediately. During this period, please do not use the corresponding seat belt.

Seat Belt Pretensioner (If Equipped)



1. Seat belt pretensioner is designed to assist front airbag in the event of a severe impact.
2. In the event of a minor impact or side impact, pretensioner may not activate.
3. During a severe impact, seat belt pretensioner may be activated even if there is no occupant in front seat.
4. When seat belt pretensioner is activated, retractor quickly tightens seat belt to tightly restrain occupant.
5. When seat belt pretensioner is activated, it may make a working sound and release a small amount of non-toxic gas. The produced gas does not cause a fire and is generally harmless.

⚠ WARNING

- When seat belt pretensioner is activated, the airbag malfunction indicator remains on, and seat belts cannot be retracted/pulled out. Please contact authorized service station for inspection and repair immediately.
- Do not modify, remove, hit or open the seat belt pretensioner assembly, airbag sensor and assembly wire. Otherwise, it may cause death or serious injuries during a collision or other unintended events.

Function limit

■ In the following cases, the seat belt pretensioner may not work properly:

1. Modify suspension system.
2. Modify front body section.
3. Repair the seat belt pretensioner or any assembly nearby.
4. Seat belt pretensioner assembly or its surrounding area is damaged.
5. Install grill guard or any other device to front body.

2-8. Child Restraint System

Child Restraint System

According to accident statistics, a child is safer sitting in the second row seat and properly restrained than child in front seat. Choose a child restraint system suitable for the vehicle, age and size of the child. (Vehicle seat belt meet international standards is designed according to body size of child over 1.5 m. If any under 1.5 m uses seat belt, the belt could hurt his/her neck seriously in case of an accident).

This instruction only provides installation instructions for child restraint systems (ISOFIX). For installation details, strictly follow the instructions provided by the child restraint system manufacturer.

⚠ WARNING

- Never fix child restraint system with seat belt only. Always use standard fixing device for child restraint system on the second row seat.
- Child restraint system should comply with the safety standards set by local regulations and laws. We will take no responsibility for an accident caused by using a child restraint system.
- For effective protection in accidents and sudden stops, a child must be properly restrained using a seat belt or a appropriate child restraint system installed on the second row seat depending on age and size of the child. Holding a child in the arms is not a substitute for a child restraint system.

Group for child restraint systems

Child restraint systems should comply with local motor vehicle standards for child restraint systems and child safety prevention system (ECE R44/R129), generally, the verified child restraint system is applied a local certification label and also has an orange label after testing by ECE R44/R129 standard. There is information, such as weight group, ISOFIX level and license for child restraint system, on this label.

■ Child restraint systems are divided into the following weight groups:

Weight Groups	Child Weight
Group 0	0 to 10 kg
Group 0+	0 to 13 kg
Group I	9 to 18 kg
Group II	15 to 25 kg
Group III	22 to 36 kg

1. Weight group 0/0+: It is suitable to use group 0/0+ or group 0/I for rearward-facing infant seat.
2. Weight group I: It is suitable to use group I or group I/II for child restraint systems with built-in seat belt system.
3. Weight group II/III: It is suitable to use group II for child restraint systems with back and group III for child restraint systems without back.

■ Table for locations of child seats using the vehicle seat belt

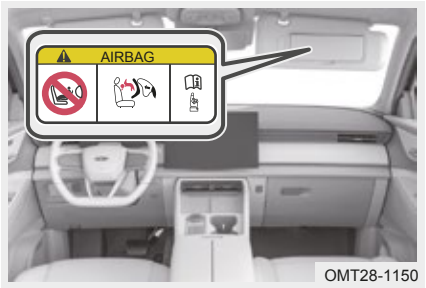
Weight Groups	Front Passenger Seat (-Airbag Switch ON)	Front Passenger Seat (-Airbag Switch OFF)	Second Row Outside Seat	Second Row Center Seat	Third Row Seat (If Equipped)
Group 0 (0 to 10 kg)	X	U/L	U/L	U	U
Group 0+ (0 to 13 kg)	X	U/L	U/L	U	U
Group I (9 to 18 kg）	X	U/L	U/L	U	U
Group II (15 to 25 kg)	X	U/L	UF/L	UF	UF
Group III (22 to 36 kg)	UF	U/L	UF/L	UF	UF

- X: It is not suitable for installing any child restraint system in this weight group.
- U: It is suitable for child restraint systems of "universal" class obtained the relevant certification in this weight group.
- UF: It is suitable for forward-facing child restraint systems of "universal" class obtained the relevant certification in this weight group.
- L: It is suitable for child restraint systems of "semi-universal" class obtained the relevant certification if the vehicle is listed on the applicable model list of child restraint system manufacturer.

Note: Child restraint systems of "universal" class: It is installed with seat belt for adult; Child restraint systems of "semi-universal" class: It is installed by with ISOFIX anchor point and top tether strap anchorage.

Note: When installing CRS on the front passenger seat, ensure the seat is fully rearward.

Child restraint system precautions



OMT28-1150

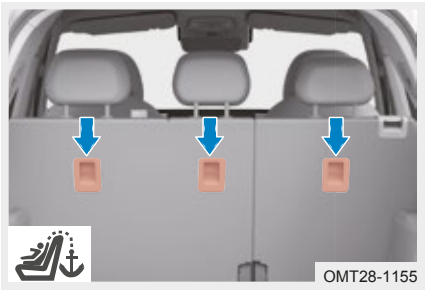
This sticker is attached to front passenger sun visor and used to remind you that the vehicle is equipped with front airbag (SRS). Observe the following precautions:

- When using a rearward facing child restraint system in the front passenger seat, the passenger airbag must be OFF, Refer to "-Enabling and Disabling Front Passenger Airbag".

- Never change the design of child restraint system fixing device or seat belt on the vehicle under any circumstances.
- Never fix child restraint system with seat belt only. Always use standard fixing device for child restraint system on the second row seat.

It is the driver's responsibility to comply to the instructions provided, and to the instructions provided by the CRS manufacturer.

Top Tether


OMT28-1155

This model is equipped with top tether strap anchorages on the back of the rear seats.

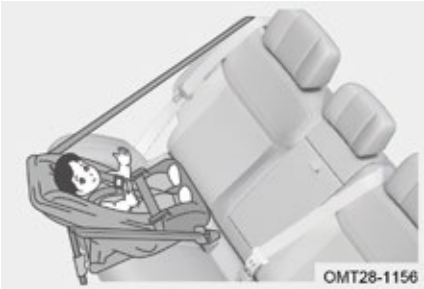
Before using a top tether strap, remove the seating position head restraint and luggage compartment cover. With the child restraint on the seat, attach the top tether strap to the anchorage, and tighten to remove all slack. Refer to instructions provided by the CRS manufacturer.

READ

- Ensure all removed head restraints are stowed safely.
- After correct installation of the child restraint and top tether, the luggage compartment cover can be re-installed.

⚠ WARNING
Ensure the top tether strap anchor is attached correctly. Incorrect installation may cause serious injury to the child.

■ Rearward-facing child restraint system



A rearward facing child restraint is installed to face to the rear of the vehicle. Only install a rearward facing child restraint on the front passenger seat if the airbag is OFF. It is recommended children use a rearward facing child restraint system up to 4 yers old.

■ Forward-facing child restraint system

A forward facing child restraint is installed to face to the front of the vehicle. It is recommended children use a forward facing child restraint system when older than 4 yers old.

■ Booster seat child restraint system

For larger children that cannot fit in a child restraint system with a high back, they may occupy a second row outboard seat using a booster seat, either attached to the lower anchorage points or belted, as described in the instructions provided by the child restraint system manufacturer.

Installing Child Restraint System

Child restraint system

The rear outside seats are equipped with ISOFIX / i-Size anchorages. The anchorage locations are identified by a marking (see illustration) located on the seat back, directly above the associated anchorages. Lift or remove the ISOFIX cover to access the anchorages.

■ Size class for child restraint systems (ISOFIX):

We recommends that children should use an appropriate child restraint system, and it is recommended that they are seated on a rear outboard seat.

Size Class	Fixing Device	Description
A	ISO/F3	Full-height, forward-facing child restraint systems
B	ISO/F2	Reduced-height forward-facing child restraint systems
B1	ISO/F2X	Reduced-height forward-facing child restraint systems
C	ISO/R3	Full-size, rearward-facing child restraint systems
D	ISO/R2	Reduced-size rearward-facing child restraint systems
E	ISO/R1	Rearward-facing infant seat
F	ISO/L1	Left lateral-facing (carrycot) infant seat
G	ISO/L2	Right lateral-facing (carrycot) infant seat

■ Table for locations of ISOFIX child seats:

Weight Groups	Size Class	Fixing Device	Front Passenger Seat	Second Row Outside Seat	Second Row Center Seat
Carrycot	F	ISO/L1	X	X	X
	G	ISO/L2	X	X	X
		(1)			
Group 0 (Up to 10 kg)	F	ISO/L1	X	X	X
	G	ISO/L2	X	X	X
	E	ISO/R1	X	IL	X
		(1)			
Group 0+ (Up to 13 kg)	E	ISO/R1	X	IL	X
	D	ISO/R2	X	IL	X
	C	ISO/R3	X	IL	X
		(1)			
Group I (9 to 18 kg)	D	ISO/R2	X	IL	X
	C	ISO/R3	X	IL	X
	B	ISO/F2	X	IL, IUF	X
	B1	ISO/F2X	X	IL, IUF	X
	A	ISO/F3	X	IL, IUF	X
		(1)			
Group II (15 to 25 kg)		(1)			
Group III (22 to 36 kg)		(1)			

- X: ISOFIX position is not suitable for the ISOFIX child restraint system of this weight group or this size classification.
- IL: It is suitable for the ISOFIX child restraint system of special class in the list. These restraint systems may be special vehicle class, restricted class or semi-universal class.
- IUF: It is suitable for the ISOFIX child restraint system of forward-facing universal class approved by this weight group.
- (1): Child restraint system without ISO/XX size identification (A to G). Please refer to the table of Recommended Child Restraint Systems.

■ Table for locations of i-Size child seats:

Child Restraint System Types	Front Passenger Seat	Second Row Outside Seat	Second Row Center Seat
Child restraint systems (i-Size)	X	i-U	X

i-U: It is suitable for "universal" forward-facing and rearward-facing child restraint systems (i-Size).

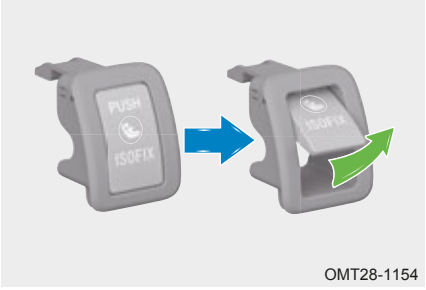
X: It is not suitable for "universal" child restraint systems.

Installing child restraint system

OMT28-1152

Step 1: If forward and backward positions of the second row seats are adjustable, slide the seat to the rearmost position and lock firmly;

Step 2: Open the ISOFIX interface flip cover to expose ISOFIX interface for child restraint system to be fixed;



OMT28-1154

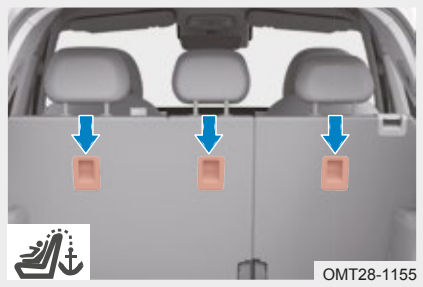
⚠ CAUTION

The correct opening direction of the ISOFIX interface flip cover is shown in the figure. Do not forcefully and reversely push it forward. Otherwise, it may cause damage.

OMT28-1153

Step 3: Put the child restraint system on second row seat;

Step 4: Push and install the child restraint system in the direction shown in the figure;



Step 5: Pull out the webbing of the child restraint system and fix it with the upper fixing point (TOP TETHER) for forward-facing child restraint system (as shown in the illustration).

Note: According to the child restraint system type you purchased, check if it needs to be fixed with the upper fixing point (TOP TETHER).

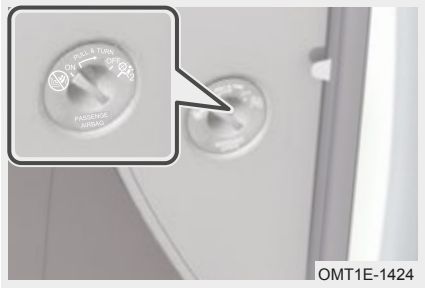
READ

- Before use, please remove the head restraint where the child restraint system to be installed, and then hang the hook of child restraint system to the fixing point to avoid the strap of the hook directly over the top of the head restraint, and the head restraint and the strap should not interfere.
- After the upper strap hook is hung into the fixing point, be sure to tighten the strap and not loosen; For detailed methods of fixing and tightening the upper strap of child restraint system, please strictly follow the instruction manual provided by the child restraint system manufacturer.

⚠ WARNING

- After installing child restraint system, never adjust the seat.
- Child restraint system must be installed in second row seat.
- Never fix two child restraint systems on a set of retaining rings.
- Do not allow the upper strap to cross the head restraint, and be sure to tighten the strap after installation. Incorrect installation may cause serious injury to children.
- If retaining ring device is damaged or overloaded during an accident, please contact authorized service station for inspection and repair immediately.
- If the driver's seat interferes with the correct installation of the child restraint system, install the child restraint system on the second row right side seat.
- Do not use child restraint system anchor bracket to secure items other than child restraint system. Otherwise, it may damage the vehicle and cause personal injury.
- If the child restraint system is not correctly fixed in place, the child or passengers may face serious injury or even death during a collision.
- Make sure the top strap is securely latched, and check if the child restraint system is secured by pushing and pulling it in different directions. Follow the installation instructions provided by the child restraint system manufacturer. If the child restraint system is not correctly installed, the child is at risk of serious injury or even death during a collision.
- If the child restraint system interferes with locking device of front seat, do not install child restraint system in second row seat. The child and front passenger may be seriously injured or even death during a collision or other unintended events.
- Do not allow child to play with the child restraint system lock function belt. Avoid belt twists around a child's neck, if so, it may not be released, leading to chocking, other serious injuries or even death. If this occurs and the buckle cannot be released, scissors should be used to cut the belt.
- When the child restraint system is not in use, it should also be fixed properly on the seat. Do not place unfixed child restraint system in the passenger cabin.
- After child restraint system is removed, please take it out from the vehicle in time. Otherwise, it may cause serious injuries during a collision or other events.

Enabling and Disabling Front Passenger Airbag (If Equipped)



OMT1E-1424

The airbag enabling/disabling switch is located on the passenger side instrument panel and is visible when front passenger door is opened.

■ Disabling front passenger airbag

Turn the switch to OFF position while pulling the switch outward, the front passenger airbag is disabled and the disabling status indicator will come on.

■ Enabling front passenger airbag

Turn the switch from OFF to ON, re-enable the front passenger airbag and the enabling status indicator will come on. It is now safe to sit in the front passenger seat.

Airbag status indicator

OMT28-1160

1 Disabling status indication

2 Enabling status indication

⚠ WARNING

- Remember to subsequently enable the front passenger airbag when an adult occupant is seated in the front passenger seat. It is the driver's responsibility to confirm the passenger airbag status is correct for the occupant in the front passenger seat.
- In the event a rearward facing child restraint system needs to be installed on the front passenger seat, the front passenger airbag must be disabled. Otherwise, it may cause serious injury or even death to young children in the event of an accident.

3-1. Key Information

Smart Key 81

Effective Range 83

Keyless Entry 85

Vehicle Arming..... 87

Immobilizer System 88

Smart Key Vehicle Locating..... 89

Remote Starting for Smart Key 89

3-2. Doors

Door Unlocking/Locking 90

Door Mechanical Switch..... 91

Child Lock 92

3-3. Windows

Power Windows 93

Window Remote Control Function 95

Window Jam Protection Function (If Equipped)..... 95

3-4. Panoramic Moon Roof

Panoramic Moon Roof (If Equipped) 97

Moon Roof Remote Control Function 99

Moon Roof Jam Protection Function 99

3-5. Audio System

Audio View..... 101

Shortcut Menu 102

Vehicle Center 102

Audio Button..... 107

Voice Recognition Function (If Equipped) 107

Phone-link..... 107

3-6. Air Conditioning System

Front A/C 110

Second Row Air Conditioning (If Equipped) 111

Third Row Air Conditioning (If Equipped) 112

A/C Setting..... 112

Air Conditioning Operation..... 113

Air Conditioning Heating.... 117

A/C Cooling..... 117

Intelligent Mode (If Equipped) 119

Constant Temperature Cabin Function (If Equipped) 119

Refrigeration/Warming Function of Armrest Box.... 120

Air Outlets Airflow Control 120

3-7. Fragrance System

Fragrance System (If Equipped) 121

Fragrance setting 122

Replacing fragrance 122

3-8. Driving Recorder

Driving Recorder (If Equipped) 123

Setting..... 126

3-9. Wireless Charging

Wireless Charging (CWC) (If Equipped) 126

3-10. FOTA Upgrade

FOTA Upgrade (If Equipped) 130

Method for Entering Vehicle Upgrade 131

Operation for Upgrade Now 132

Appointment Upgrade Operation..... 134

Upgrade Result Prompt..... 136

Countermeasures for Abnormal Problems during Upgrading 137

Network Security Notification 137

3-11. Remote Control System

Remote Control System (If Equipped)..... 138

Introduction of product functions 138

3-12. Storage Space

Storage Space..... 153

3-13. USB Port

Driving Recorder USB (If Equipped) 155

Front USB 156

Rear USB 156

3-14. Backup Power Supply (12 V)

Front Backup Power Supply 156

3-15. Sun Visors and Vanity Mirrors

Sun Visors and Vanity Mirrors..... 157

3-16. Front Compartment Cover

Opening/Closing Front Compartment Cover 157

3-17. Back Door

Manual Back Door..... 158

Power Back Door (If Equipped) 158

Back Door Emergency Opening..... 162

3-18. Fuel Tank Cap

Electric Fuel Tank Cap 163

3-1. Key Information

Smart Key

Smart key is used to remotely lock/unlock doors and open back door within about 20 m (no blind spot and magnetic interference) of the vehicle (varies depending on the configuration of vehicle models).

" ": Unlock button.

" ": Lock button.

": Back door opener button.

" ": Remote starting button.

Function limit

If any of the following conditions occurs, the smart key battery may be low or depleted:

1. The remote control distance gradually decreases.
2. Remote control function does not work even there is no interference.
3. Instrument cluster prompts "Smart key battery is low".

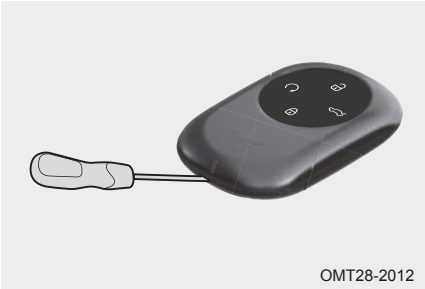
■ In the following conditions, the smart key may not work properly:

1. There are more than one smart keys being used nearby.
2. The distance between vehicle and smart key is over 20 m.
3. The smart key is in contact with, or is covered by a metallic object.
4. The smart key is placed near an electrical appliance (such as mobile phone or personal computer).
5. The key is near wireless communication devices that have the similar frequency with the remote control key (such as portable radio).
6. The key is near facilities that generate strong radio waves (such as TV tower, radio station, power station, airport, train station).

CAUTION

- This product is a low frequency radio device and can be interfered by various radio services or radiation from industrial, scientific and medical equipment.
- Do not change the transmitting frequency, increase the transmitter power (-including installation of the wireless RF power amplifier), or install an external or other transmitting antenna without permission.
- When using the product, do not interfere with legal wireless communications; In case of interference, immediately stop using and take measures to eliminate the interference before continuing to use it.

Replacing smart key battery



Step 1: Pry off smart key cover using a flathead screwdriver with the tip taped to take out smart key battery, and install new battery;

Step 2: Install smart key in place in the reverse order of removal;

Step 3: After replacing the battery, check if the smart key operates properly. If the smart key still does not function correctly, please contact authorized service station for inspection and repair.

ENVIRONMENTAL PROTECTION

Used lithium battery cannot be handled as general household rubbish, please handle used battery according to the local regulations and provisions regarding environmental protection.

READ

- Make sure that positive and negative terminals of battery are placed correctly.
- Smart key battery model: 3V-CR2032 lithium battery.

CAUTION

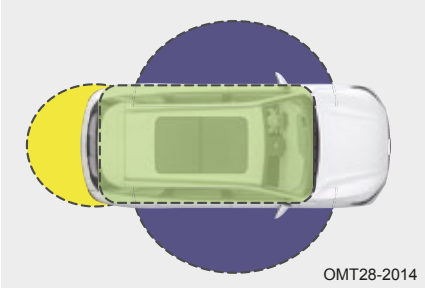
- Only use the battery model recommended.
- Do not bend electrode and terminal when installing battery.
- Make sure your hands are dry and keep away from water when replacing the battery.
- Do not touch new battery with oily hand. Failure to do so may cause battery corrosion.
- Do not touch or move any components inside the smart key, or its functions may not work properly.
- There are some difficulties in replacement of battery, damage may be caused when replacing it by yourself. It is recommended to replace at authorized service station.

WARNING

Take special care to prevent children from swallowing the removed battery or other components, failure to do so may cause death or serious injury to the child.

Effective Range

Detectable area



Starting or switching power area

Start or switch power mode when smart key is inside the vehicle.

Unlocking/locking area

Unlock/lock the doors when smart key is within effective range of high performance low-frequency antenna of door.

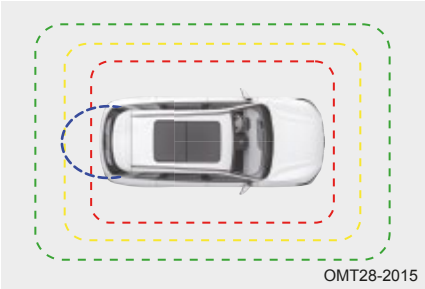
Opening back door area

Open the back door when smart key is within effective range of luggage compartment outside low-frequency antenna.

READ

Low-frequency antenna can detect areas within 1.5 m away from smart key. Therefore, when using keyless entry or one-button start function, ensure that distance between smart key and low-frequency antenna meets the requirement.

Automatic sensing area



Smart welcome lights ON area

Approach the vehicle while carrying smart key on your person, the welcome lights will turn on.

Away from locking area

Leave the vehicle while carrying smart key on your person, the doors will lock automatically.

Approaching to unlocking area

Approach the vehicle while carrying smart key on your person, the doors will unlock automatically.

Smart opening back door area

Approach the vehicle while carrying smart key on your person, the doors cannot unlock/lock automatically (refer to "Back Door" for details).

READ

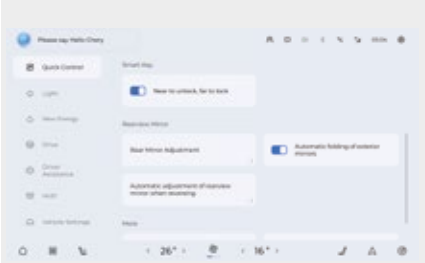
- Please leave the vehicle after the four doors, front compartment cover and back door are closed, otherwise, the automatic sensing lock function may not work properly.
- Functions such as keyless entry, welcome function, approach unlocking, away locking etc. may be affected due to the interference of surrounding environment while carrying smart key on your person. When the functions are abnormal, please change to other methods (such as manual unlocking, remote unlocking) to unlock/lock or start the vehicle.

Function limit

■ Smart key may not be detected in the following conditions:

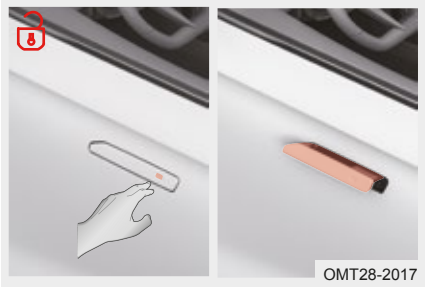
1. Smart key is in luggage compartment.
2. When locking doors, smart key is too close to the window or roof.
3. Check if the smart key is placed together with strong electromagnetic interference sources (such as portable power source, interphone or other phones).

Keyless Entry


OMT28-2016

With vehicle in READY state, turn on Approach Unlocking and Away Locking through Audio System - Vehicle Center - Quick Control.

Unlocking doors


OMT28-2017

Method 1: Touch the hidden door handle sensing area while carrying smart key on your person, system automatically recognizes the validity of smart key and doors unlock automatically (hidden door handle extends automatically).

Method 2: Approach the vehicle while carrying smart key on your person, welcome lights turn on, system automatically recognizes the validity of smart key and doors unlock automatically (hidden door handle extends automatically).

Locking doors

OMT28-2018

Method 1: Touch the hidden door handle sensing area while carrying smart key on your person, system automatically recognizes the validity of smart key and doors lock automatically (hidden door handle retracts automatically).

Method 2: Leave vehicle while carrying smart key on your person, system automatically recognizes the validity of smart key and doors lock automatically (hidden door handle retracts automatically).

READ

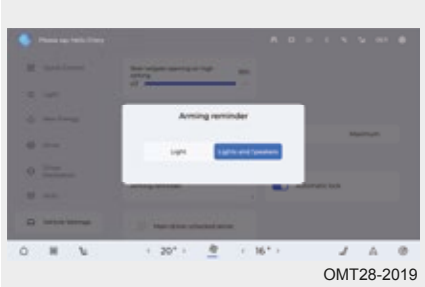
- Approach unlocking/away locking function will be turned off after 3 days since vehicle is locked. Restarting the vehicle will resume the approach unlocking/away locking function.
- When using the vehicle in winter, if the door handle is frozen and cannot be extended, use a card to remove the ice layer between the handle and the sheet metal gap, at the same time, you can use the bottom of your fist to tap the door handle slightly, and increase the hitting strength as needed until the ice is completely removed. Once the door handle can be extended, open and close the door several times. Make sure that the door handle returns to its original position before entering the vehicle. Never hit the vehicle with excessive force to avoid dents, and hit the handle gently.

CAUTION

- Do not put smart key next to computer, cordless mouse, phone, etc., otherwise, failing to sense lock/unlock may be caused.
- The sensing lock function can be operated only when vehicle is powered off, four doors, front compartment cover and back door are closed and no smart key is placed inside the vehicle.
- After leaving the vehicle and closing four doors, front compartment cover and back door, if smart key is left in vehicle or there is no smart key around vehicle within approximately 2.5 m, smart key sensing active lock function will not be activated.
- If smart key is brought outside the range of approximately 2.5 m of the vehicle and turn signal lights do not flash and horn does not sound (-successful arming prompt), inspect if the vehicle is locked to avoid locking failure caused by misoperation or unsatisfied condition.
- After sensing unlocking/locking function is activated, if smart key keeps near the vehicle for more than 3 minutes, the vehicle will be locked automatically. If the key still does not leave after another 3 minutes, for the purpose of power saving, smart key sensing function will be temporarily turned off and can be activated only after opening any door, front compartment cover or back door and then closing four doors, front compartment cover and back door.

Vehicle Arming

Arming operation



OMT28-2019

With vehicle in READY state, set Arming Prompt (Light/Light and Horn) through Audio System - Vehicle Center - Vehicle Settings.

OMT28-2020

■ Arming mode

With vehicle powered off and four doors, front compartment cover and back door closed, perform vehicle locking operation to enter arming mode.

Successful arming prompt: Turn signal lights flash once and anti-theft horn sounds once.

Arming failure prompt: Turn signal lights flash twice and anti-theft horn does not sound.

■ Secondary arming mode

After disarming, if four doors, front compartment cover and back door are not operated, the vehicle will be locked automatically after 30 seconds and enter arming mode; If any of the four doors, front compartment cover and back door is opened, the vehicle will exit secondary arming mode.

READ

- If four doors are closed and front comparment cover and back door are not completely closed, the central lock locks once and vehicle anti-theft system is not armed successfully.
- If front compartment cover and back door are closed and any door is not closed, the central lock will lock and then unlock, and vehicle anti-theft system is not armed successfully.

Disarming operation

With vehicle in arming mode, perform vehicle unlocking operation and vehicle exits arming mode.

Successful disarming prompt: Turn signal lights flash twice.

Immobilizer System

Electronic immobilizer system

Smart key has a built-in transponder chip. If the smart key is not pre-matched into electronic immobilizer module, the built-in chip will prevent vehicle from starting.

■ In the following conditions, electronic immobilizer system may not work properly:

1. Smart key is in contact with a metallic object.
2. Modify or remove electronic immobilizer system.
3. Smart key is too close to or contacts smart key (key with a built-in transponder chip) of another vehicle.

⚠ CAUTION
Do not match the smart key by yourself, otherwise the electronic immobilizer system may not work properly.

Vehicle anti-theft system

With vehicle in arming mode and illegal entry is detected, the vehicle anti-theft system will send sound-light alarm, alerting owner that the vehicle is in an illegal opening state.

READ

- The vehicle anti-theft system will not be enabled if the doors are locked by mechanical key. It is recommended to lock doors by smart key.
- After locking doors with smart key, the vehicle anti-theft system will be triggered if front left door is unlocked and opened by mechanical key.
- When vehicle anti-theft system is triggered, vehicle anti-theft system can be deactivated by pressing unlock button on smart key or powering on vehicle.
- Before leaving the vehicle, check that nobody is in vehicle, all doors and windows are closed properly and vehicle is armed successfully to prevent unexpected triggering of vehicle anti-theft system or vehicle theft.

Smart Key Vehicle Locating

Press lock button on smart key twice continuously within several seconds, horn sounds 6 times, at the same time, turn signal lights flash 10 times, this allows you to find your vehicle easily.

Remote Starting for Smart Key

With vehicle in arming mode and smart key is not in vehicle, long press lock button or remote starting button on the smart key for several seconds to start it remotely and A/C operates automatically at the same time. The vehicle will automatically powered off after 15 minutes of remote starting.

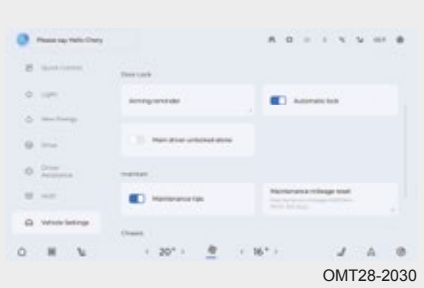
READ

- There must be no person in the vehicle including the operator when starting the vehicle remotely.
- Distance when starting vehicle remotely using smart key should not exceed normal operating distance of smart key (20 m).
- After vehicle is started remotely, some functions cannot be operated (such as headlight switch, wiper switch, audio function), depress brake pedal while carrying smart key on your person, exit remote mode to restore normal operation.

3-2. Doors

Door Unlocking/Locking

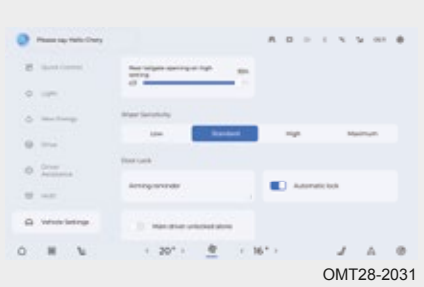
Independent driver door unlocking


OMT28-2030

With vehicle in READY state, turn on Independent Driver Door Unlocking through Audio System - Vehicle Center - Vehicle Settings.

Only the driver door is unlocked when smart key unlock button is pressed for the first time. Other three doors are unlocked when smart key unlock button is pressed for the second time.

Automatic locking

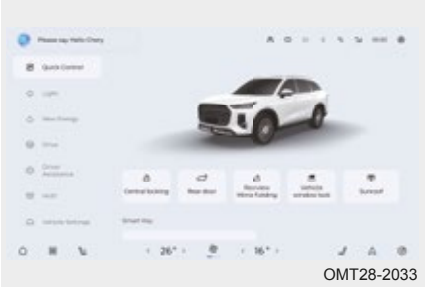

OMT28-2031

With vehicle in READY state, turn on Automatic lock through Audio System - Vehicle Center - Vehicle Settings; Doors are automatically locked when four doors, front compartment cover and back door are closed and vehicle speed is more than 15 km/h.

Unlocking/locking doors

OMT28-2032

Press "🔓" button to unlock the door;
Press "🔒" button to lock the door.


OMT28-2033

With vehicle in READY state, click "🔓" button through Audio System - Vehicle Center - Quick Control to unlock/lock doors.

Manual door unlocking

OMT28-2034

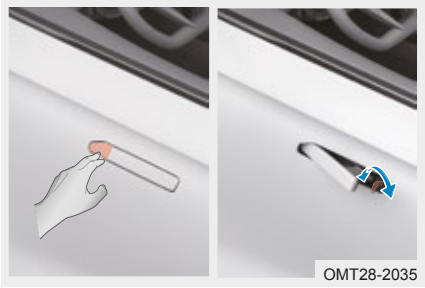
With vehicle in unlocked state, pull door inside handle directly to open doors.

With vehicle in locked state, pull door inside handle for the first time to unlock the doors, and pull it again to open the doors.

Door Mechanical Switch

Vehicle cannot be unlocked/locked electrically when battery (12 V) is depleted or under similar conditions. In this case, the doors can be unlocked/locked with door mechanical switch.

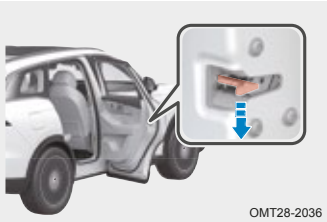
Locking/unlocking front left door manually


OMT28-2035

Step 1: Press and hold the front area of driver door outside handle to expand the hidden door handle;

Step 2: Pull the door handle, and insert the mechanical key into the key hole in the door handle, rotate it clockwise to lock the door and rotate it counterclockwise to unlock the door.

Locking front right door/second row doors



Open the door, insert the mechanical key into the lock cylinder, and move the lock button downwards to lock the door.

READ

- If the doors cannot be unlocked/locked electrically, please go to authorized service station for inspection and repair as soon as possible.
- When using door mechanical switch, please check if the doors are locked successfully one by one after locking. If unsuccessful, please contact authorized service station as soon as possible.

Child Lock

The child lock is located on inside of second row doors.

Lock: Use mechanical key to turn in the direction of arrow to lock the child lock.

Unlock: Use mechanical key to turn in the opposite direction of arrow to unlock the child lock.

WARNING

- The child lock is independent and cannot replace the central lock mechanism in any case.
- When a child is seated on the second row seats, always lock child locks to prevent the second row doors being opened accidentally while driving.
- After child lock is locked, in the event of a collision or other accident, if there is someone trapped inside vehicle and the second row door cannot be opened from the inside, please open it from outside the vehicle.
- In hot weather, if vehicle is powered off and all doors and windows are closed, do not allow any animal or child in vehicle alone. Otherwise, even if it is a short time, it may cause serious injury or even death due to sharp temperature rise.

3-3. Windows

Power Windows

There are many ways to open/close windows, such as by window switch, voice recognition and remote control.

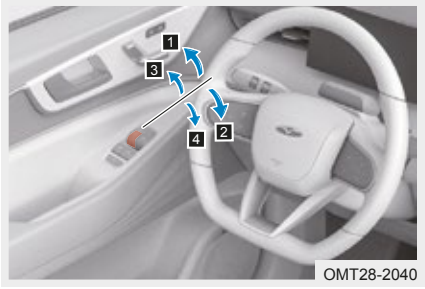
Quick control

OMT28-2041

With vehicle in READY state, click " button" through Audio System - Vehicle Center - Quick Control to turn on/off passenger side window OFF function.

After passenger side window OFF function is turned on, passenger side windows only can be operated by driver side window switch (this function is recommended when there is a child in vehicle).

Switch control



OMT28-2040

Automatic mode

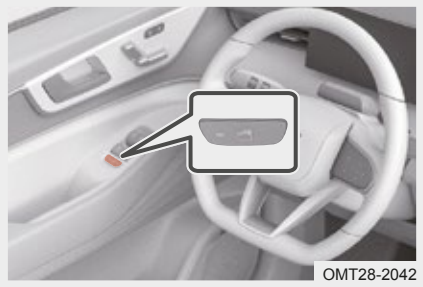
1 Pull the switch to top to make window go up automatically; press it again to stop moving the window.

2 Press the switch to bottom to make window go down automatically; press it again to stop moving the window.

Mist mode

3 Pull the switch upwards by one level to make window go up; release the switch to stop moving the window.

4 Press the switch downwards by one level to make window go down; release the switch to stop moving the window.


OMT28-2042

Press " " switch to turn on/off the passenger side window OFF function.

After passenger side window OFF function is turned on, passenger side windows only can be operated by driver side window switch (this function is recommended when there is a child in vehicle).

READ

- For details about voice recognition function, refer to "Audio System" section.
- For details about remote window control, refer to "Remote Control System" section.
- Vehicles with window jam protection function have one-touch window up function.
- If front right / left door (exclude rear doors) is not opened within 2 minutes after switching vehicle to power off state, the power window can be operated.
- After leaving vehicle in low temperature environment for a long time, when operating power window switch, window glass cannot be fully opened or closed. In this case, release the switch and then operate it again, repeat this operation 3 - 5 cycles to resume.

WARNING

- Do not leave children alone in vehicle. If accidental operation of window switch is made, children may be caught by the rising window.
- When vehicle is driving or before closing the window, make sure that all parts of passenger's body (such as hands) are in the vehicle, otherwise, personal injury may be caused.
- To avoid personal injury, it is driver's responsibility to guide all passengers to operate power window up/down switch and especially to prevent children from using it incorrectly. Ensure that the vehicle is powered off or non-mechanical device is closed when leaving the vehicle.
- Take extra care when closing windows, failure to do so may cause serious jamming and injury! For models with window jam protection function, jam protection function can be activated in jam protection area to protect passenger. However, for the thin or soft objects, jam protection function may not be activated, resulting in serious injury.

Window Remote Control Function

Remote control window down function

With vehicle is powered off, four doors are closed and unlock button on smart key is pressed and hold, windows of four doors will go down automatically. If unlock button on smart key is released or any door is opened in this process, window will stop going down.

Remote control window up function (If Equipped)

With vehicle is powered off, four doors are closed, lock button on smart key is pressed, the vehicle will enter arming status and four door window will go up automatically. Unlock/lock doors in automatic window up process and windows will stop going down.

READ

If abnormal closing occurs during remote control one-touch window up, turn signal lights flash 1 time and horn continuously sounds 5 times to alarm you that window may not close normally.

WARNING

Before using remote control up window function, please take extra care. Remote control up/down window function can be used only when the vehicle can be seen clearly and make sure that passengers cannot be caught by window.

Window Jam Protection Function (If Equipped)

Jam protection function

During one-touch window up or remote control one-touch window up, if obstacle is encountered in jam protection area and resistance exceeds a certain value, window will stop rising and go down slightly. To close window, move away obstacle and operate again.

To protect the window regulation system, window jam protection function and one-touch window up function will be canceled in some conditions to avoid potential safety hazard. At this time, the window only has the conventional up-down function. After jam protection learning, the one-touch window up function of corresponding door will return to normal.

Canceling jam protection function

If obstacle is encountered twice continuously when rising the window, the window will stop rising, jam protection function will be canceled. If the battery (12 V) cable is disconnected during working or non-working process, jam protection function will be canceled.

Overheat protection function

To protect motor, if window up-down operation is performed continuously, overheat protection function actively disables the control of corresponding window switch. After motor temperature returns to normal, it recovers. This function will not affect the use of other normal window up-down functions.

Manual learning function

If one-touch window up function and jam protection function do not operate, perform the following steps to resume function. Make sure that there are no obstacles within window range during learning.

Step 1: With vehicle powered on;

Step 2: Manually and continuously operate window switch to fully close the window and hold at that position for 2 seconds, and then release the switch;

Step 3: Manually and continuously operate window switch to fully open the window and hold at that position for 2 seconds, and then release the switch;

Step 4: Try to operate automatic window up function;

Step 5: If window cannot close automatically, please repeat the above steps to set.

If automatic window up function cannot resume after repeating the above steps, please go to authorized service station for inspection and repair as soon as possible.

Note: If window memory position is lost, it can also be set with remote control one-touch window up function. At this time, window will go down to bottom, then go up to top. Window can be closed normally while setting is successful.

READ

When driving over roads with potholes or uneven surfaces, gravity may affect door system unexpectedly. In this case, window may reverse and go down while rising by one-touch window up function. This is a small probability event and normal.

CAUTION

- If battery (12 V) cable is disconnected and reconnected, automatic window up function and jam protection function will not work.
- Jam protection function is a kind of window safety protection function. Never try to active it repeatedly using various objects, in improper methods or even by intentionally pinching any part of your body. Failure to do so may cause damage to window regulation system mechanism or accidental personal injury.
- When closing window, always keep the window close area clear even if it is equipped with jam protection function, otherwise, if there is a thin object and system cannot sense it, jam protection will not work. If someone's hand or finger is caught, extremely serious injury may be caused.

3-4. Panoramic Moon Roof

Panoramic Moon Roof (If Equipped)

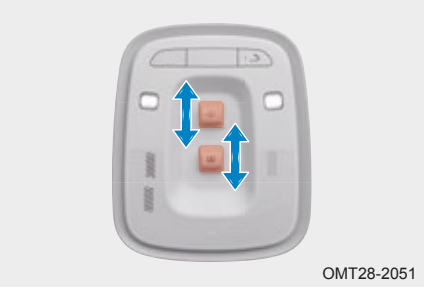
There are many ways to open/close moon roof, such as by moon roof switch, voice recognition and remote control.

Quick control

OMT28-2050

With vehicle in READY state, click " button" through Audio System - Vehicle Center - Quick Control to turn on/off moon roof.

Switch control



OMT28-2051

Opening/closing sunshade

Push " " switch backward when sunshade is closed, sunshade will slide to middle position. Push " " switch again, sunshade will slide to fully open position.

Push " " switch forward when sunshade is fully open, sunshade will slide to middle position. Push " " switch again, sunshade will slide to fully close position.

Tilting up/closing moon roof

Push " " switch backward when moon roof is closed, the moon roof will tilt up.

Push " " switch forward when the moon roof is tilted up to close moon roof; Or directly push the " " switch forward, the moon roof will automatically close first, and then the sunshade will close.

Opening/closing moon roof

With moon roof tilted up, push " " switch backward to slide and open the moon roof. Push " " switch again to slide and open the moon roof to the maximum position.

Push " " switch forward when the moon roof is opening to close moon roof; Or directly push the " " switch forward, the moon roof will automatically close first, and then the sunshade will close.

READ

- For details about voice recognition function, refer to "Audio System" section.
- For details about remote moon roof control, refer to "Remote Control System" section.
- If you find there is a false jam protection, please go to authorized service station for inspection and repair as soon as possible.
- Moon roof switch and sunshade switch are designed in 2 levels; first level is manual control opening range; second level is automatic control opening range, please select a proper level according to your demands.

CAUTION

- Failure in moon roof jam protection function may cause initial memory position to be lost, therefore, it is necessary to recalibrate the position.
- When moon roof is frozen or covered with snow, forcibly opening moon roof will damage the moon roof glass and motor.
- If there is water on moon roof after raining, always drain it off before opening, to prevent water from flowing into cab.
- Regularly clean the dust and debris in moon roof rails and strips with water; after vehicle washing or raining, completely wipe the water on the moon roof glass before use.

⚠ WARNING

- Do not leave children alone in vehicle. If accidental operation of moon roof switch is made, their heads or hands may be hurt.
- When vehicle is driving or before closing the moon roof, make sure that all parts of passenger's body (such as hands) are in the vehicle, otherwise, personal injury may be caused.

Moon Roof Remote Control Function

Moon roof remote open function

With vehicle is powered off and four doors are closed, press and hold unlock button on smart key for a few seconds, sunshade is opened and then moon roof is opened; press the lock button during opening of moon roof, the moon roof stops moving.

Moon roof remote close function

With vehicle is powered off and four doors are closed, press lock button on smart key, and vehicle enters arming mode. Moon roof closes automatically first, then the sunshade closes; Press the lock button, the moon roof complete the current operation.

⚠ WARNING

Before using moon roof remote close function, please take extra care. Moon roof remote close function can be used only when the vehicle can be seen clearly and make sure that passengers cannot be caught by moon roof.

Moon Roof Jam Protection Function

Jam protection function

When the moon roof movable glass (sunshade) encounters an obstacle in jam protection area and resistance exceeds a certain value during one-touch closed, it will stop, and the moon roof (sunshade) will rebound.

Manual learning function

If the moon roof unable to moved to closed position with one-button, unable to fully open with one-button, moon roof tilting up after closing, moon roof glass unable to open or close normally, sunshade unable to open or close, etc. Please follow the operation instructions below to reset.

Step 1: With vehicle powered on, operate the moon roof/sunshade to the fully open and closed position; Long press the moon roof/sunshade close button manually until you hear a clicking sound from the moon roof/sunshade motor (-moon roof glass/sunshade will move back and forth slightly), and try to one-button open/close again.

Note: It effective until after the moon roof reaches the closed position. If there is no response or if it triggers a rebound when closing, proceed to step 2.

Step 2: Press the moon roof/sunshade automatic opening button and release it, during the process of moon roof/sunshade automatic opening, long press the moon roof/sunshade close button; Observe the movement of moon roof/sunshade from paused to closed position, keep pressing the close button until you hear a"click" sound of the reset of the moon roof/sunshade motor (the moon roof glass/sunshade will move back and forth slightly).

Note: Be sure to release the button during the automatic opening process of moon roof/sunshade before pressing the close button.

⚠ CAUTION

- If the problem cannot be solved by repeating the above operation, please go to authorized service station for inspection and repair as soon as possible.
- If the battery (12 V) cable is reconnected after disconnected, there may be a loss of moon roof initialization, resulting in the moon roof being unable to be opened or closed.
- When closing the moon roof, always keep the moon roof closing area clear even if it is equipped with jam protection function. Otherwise, the jam protection will not work when the moon roof encountering thin objects. If passenger's hand or finger is caught, serious injury may be caused.
- Jam protection function is a kind of passengers protection function. Never try to activate it by repeatedly using various objects, improper methods or even with some part of body. Failure to do so may damage moon roof function or cause accidental personal injury.

3-5. Audio System

Audio View

OMT28-2060

1 My center

Click to enter my center setting.

2 Home page

Click to return to home page.

3 Application

Click to enter APP application.

4 Seat control

Click to enter seat control screen.

5 Card type interactive screen

Swipe to view, click on the card to enter the corresponding APP, long press the card to customize.

6 Driver temperature adjustment

Click or slide left and right to adjust the air conditioning temperature for driver.

7 Click to pop up the air conditioning system operation screen.

8 Front passenger temperature adjustment

Click or slide left and right to adjust the air conditioning temperature for front passenger.

9 Seat control

Click to enter seat control screen.

10 Navigation

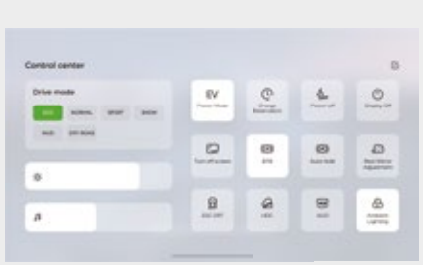
Click to enter navigation screen.

11 Multimedia

Click to enter multimedia screen.

Some models of radio support DAB/RDS function.

Shortcut Menu



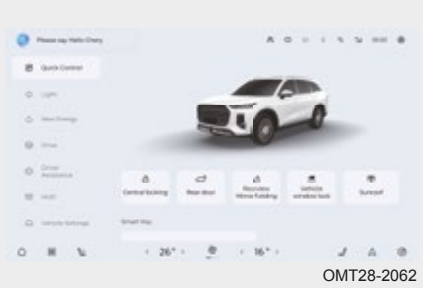
OMT28-2061

With vehicle in READY state, the shortcut menu screen can be displayed by sliding the screen down in the audio screen.

Power Mode, Appointment Charging, Vehicle Power off, Wiper Sensitivity, Rear View Mirror Folding, Rear View Mirror Adjustment, Parking Brake, Auto Hold, ESP OFF, HDC, Parking Radar, Panoramic View Monitor, etc. can be set in shortcut menu screen.

Vehicle Center

Quick control


OMT28-2062

Central lock: Click " " button to unlock/lock doors.

Rear door: Click " " button to open/close the back door.

Rearview mirror folding: Click " " button to fold/expand rear view mirror.

Vehicle window lock: Click " " button to turn on/off passenger side window OFF function. After that, passenger side windows only can be operated by driver side window switch (this function is recommended when there is a child in vehicle).

Moon roof: Click " " button to turn on/off moon roof.

Smart key: Set approach unlocking/away locking, smart key sensing back door opening.

Rear view mirror: Set the rear view mirror adjustment, outside rear view mirror automatic folding and rear view mirror automatic adjustment at reversing.

More: Set the steering wheel button customization and easy seat access/exit.

Light

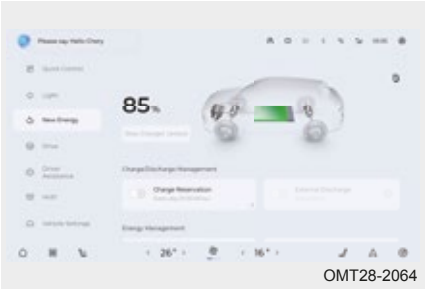
OMT28-2063

Turn on/off ambient light, set customization, linked driving mode, music rhythm and brightness.

Light setting: Set approach welcome, headlight delay and intelligent high beam assist.

Headlight leveling adjusting: Set the headlight leveling adjusting (level 0/ level 1/level 2/level 3).

New energy



OMT28-2064

Energy consumption list: Click to query the total mileage/total driving mileage/recent 50 km/data since reset.

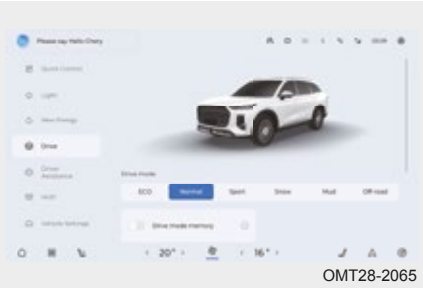
Energy flow: Display current energy flow condition of vehicle.

Charging/discharge management: Set charge reservation, external discharge.

Energy management: Set battery retention mode, energy recovery intensity, pure electric mileage display and driving distance display.

More: Set pedestrian protection sound, appointment trip, ECO mode and disclaimer.

Driving

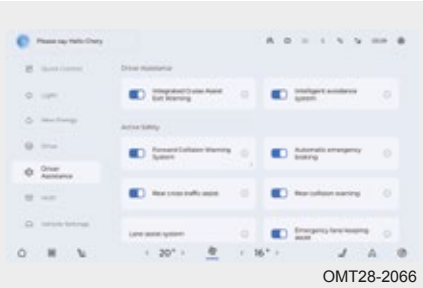

OMT28-2065

Driving mode: Set driving mode (ECO/Standard/Sport) and driving mode memory.

Power mode: Set power mode (HEV/EV/EV+).

Scene assistance: Set towing mode.

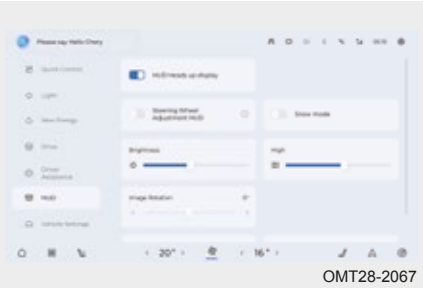
Driver assistance


OMT28-2066

Driver assistance: Set intelligent cruise control function exit reminder and intelligent avoidance.

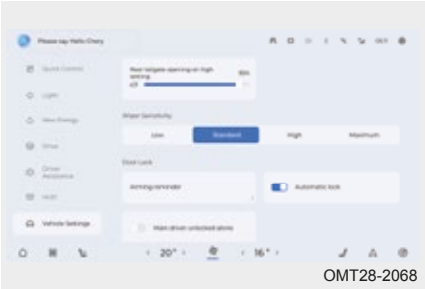
Active safety: Set front collision warning, automatic emergency brake, rear cross traffic brake, rear collision warning, lane department assist, emergency lane keeping, speed limit assistance (speed limit reminder/over speed alarm), intelligent speed control, blind spot detection, door open warning, leaving reminder and traffic sign recognition.

Head up display


OMT28-2067

Turn on/off HUD head up display: Set to adjust HUD, brightness, height, height adaptation, image rotation, snow mode, information display and default value restoring using the steering wheel.

Vehicle settings



OMT28-2068

Back door opening height: Slide to adjust the back door opening height.

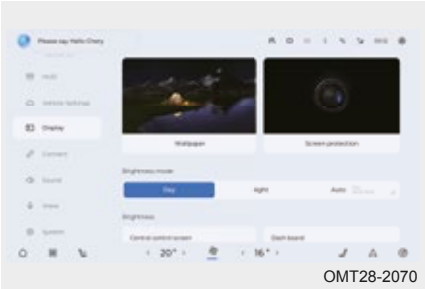
Wiper sensitivity: Set the wiper sensitivity (Low/Standard/High/Maximum).

Vehicle lock: Set arming prompt, automatic lock and independent driver door unlocking.

Maintenance: Set maintenance prompt and maintenance mileage reset.

Chassis: Set steering power mode, suspension mode, brake pitch control and brake feel mode.

Display



OMT28-2070

Set the wallpaper and screen protection.

Display mode: Set the display mode (Day/Night/Auto).

Brightness: Set and adjust the brightness of central control screen and dashboard.

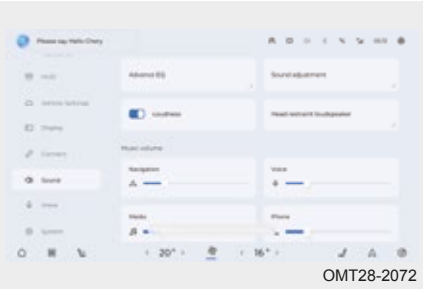
More: Set video restriction, screen cleaning and default setting restoring.

Connection

OMT28-2071

Set Bluetooth, Wi-Fi and wireless charging.

Sound

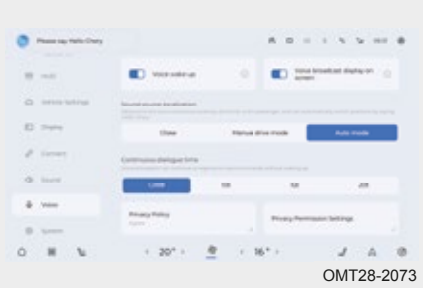

OMT28-2072

Set the advanced sound effect, sound effect adjustment, volume and headrest speaker.

Volume: Set the volume for navigation, voice, media and phone, etc.

More: Set vehicle speed volume, alarm sound type, button tone, incoming broadcast and default setting restoring.

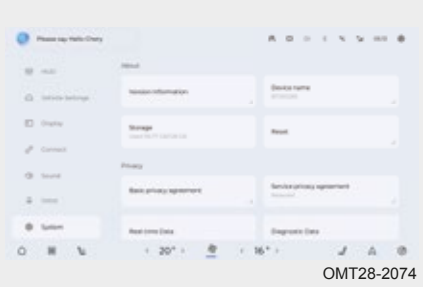
Voice


OMT28-2073

Voice: Turn on voice wake-up to locate and identify theorientation of sound, and continue to respond to voicecommands without wake-up.

Privacy permission settings: You can set the privacypermission.

System


OMT28-2074

About: Version information, device name, storage space and restore factory setting.

Privacy: Permission management and privacy policy details.

General: Gesture navigation, language setting, time setting, instrument cluster fuel consumptionunit, meter power consumption unit, tire pressure unit and user feedback.

READ
The setting items are different depending on the software versions. Please refer to the actual vehicle configuration.

Audio Button

"⊟" button: Short press to cycle the information display area on the instrument cluster.

" 🗣 " button: Short press to wake up the voice recognition function; Long press to wake up the phone voice assistant (It is necessary to connect with phone).

" ○ " button: Short press to pause when music/radio is playing.

"◁+" button: Short press to increase volume.

"◁−" button: Short press to decrease volume.

" •< " button: Short press to switch to previous track in music mode; Short press to switch to previous station in radio mode; Hang up while calling.

" >• " button: Short press to switch to next track in music mode; Short press to switch to next station in radio mode; Answer the call while calling.

Voice Recognition Function (If Equipped)

Voice recognition function can be enabled using the following methods when audio system is turned on:

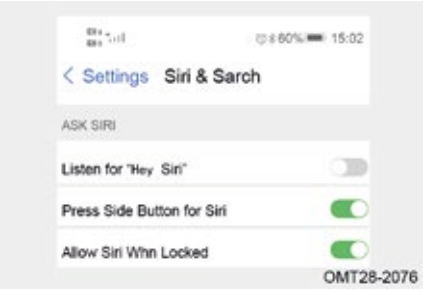
Method 1: Directly say the wake word to enable the voice recognition function.

Method 2: Short press the voice recognition button " 🗣 " on steering wheel to enable the voice recognition function.

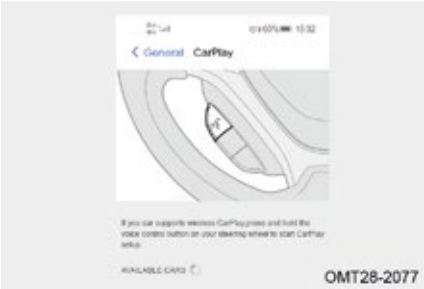
Phone-link

Apple CarPlay (iOS)

■ Connecting method



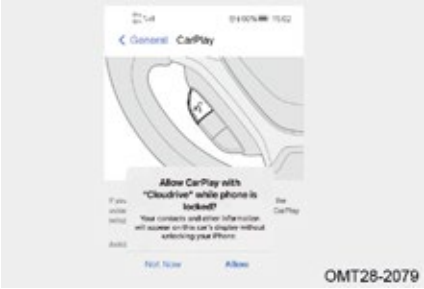
Step 1: Turn Listen for "Hey Siri" and Press Home for Siri to ON on Settings (Siri&search) screen of phone;



Step 2: Turn CarPlay to ON on Settings (General) screen of phone;

Step 3: Connect USB port and phone using original data cable;

Note: Only USB port " " supports Apple CarPlay screencast function.



Step 4: Select Allow on CarPlay permission request screen;

Step 5: Enter Apple CarPlay screencast screen.

■ Wireless carplay connection (If Equipped)

Step 1: Turn on hotspot on Apple phone, audio head unit WIFI interface is connected to phone hotspot.

Step 2: Connect Apple phone to Bluetooth on audio head unit.

Step 3: Select Carplay according to interface that pops up on audio head unit or phone.

Step 4: Make pairing connection according to pop-up interface on phone; after connection is successfully, audio head unit displays carplay interface.

Step 5: Enter Apple CarPlay screencast screen.

Android Auto (Android)

■ Connecting method

Step 1: Install the Google Framework;

Step 2: Perform the installation in Google Play and run Android Auto, install all supporting softwares according to the system prompt and update the existing program, and then Android Auto can run normal after completing the update.

Step 3: Connect USB port and phone using original data cable;

Note: Only USB port " " supports Android Auto screencast function. Before phone-link, please turn on the developer permissions in the phone settings.

Step 4: If this phone is connected to the vehicle for the first time (a prompt will pop up on the head unit, please operate according to the prompt on the mobile phone, stop the vehicle and apply the parking brake), then the first connection setting can be completed;

Step 5: Click "Android Auto" on the audio main screen to enter "Android Auto" mapping interface.

■ Wireless Android Auto connection (If Equipped)

Step 1: Turn on wireless Android Auto switch on the phone.

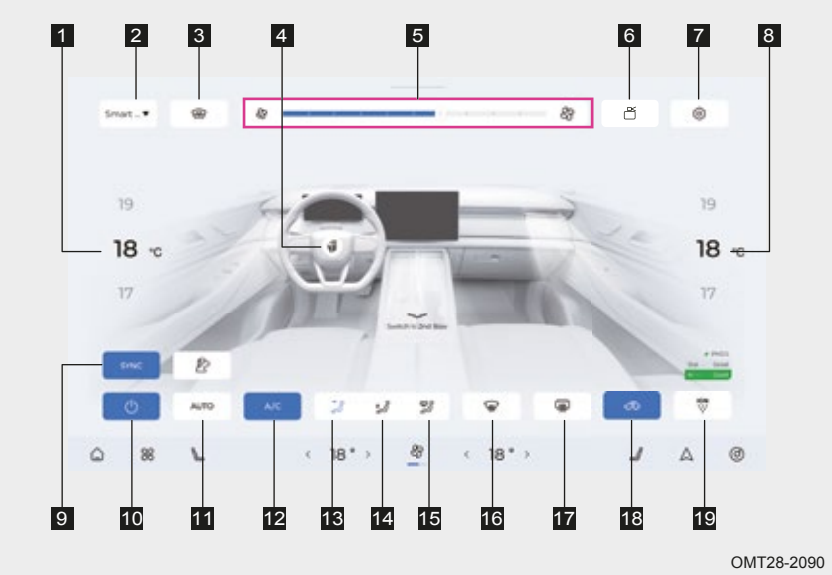
Step 2: Turn on Wi-Fi hotspot on head unit.

Step 3: Perform Bluetooth pairing between head unit and mobile phone.

Step 4: After Bluetooth connection is successful, a reminder to start wireless Android Auto will pop up on head unit, click "START" to complete wireless Android Auto connection.

3-6. Air Conditioning System

Front A/C



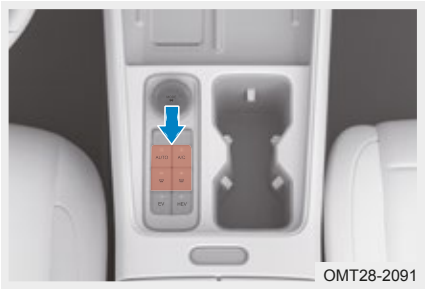
1 Driver temperature adjustment area	2 Intelligent mode button (If Equipped)	3 Front windshield heating (If Equipped)
4 Steering wheel heating button (If Equipped)	5 Airflow volume adjustment area	6 Fragrance button (If Equipped)
7 Setting button	8 Front passenger temperature adjustment area	9 Dual mode button
10 A/C switch button	11 AUTO button	12 A/C button
13 Face mode button	14 Foot mode button	15 Window mode button

16 Defogging and defrosting button

17 Rear defrosting button

18 Outside/recirculated air mode button

19 Air purification button


OMT28-2091

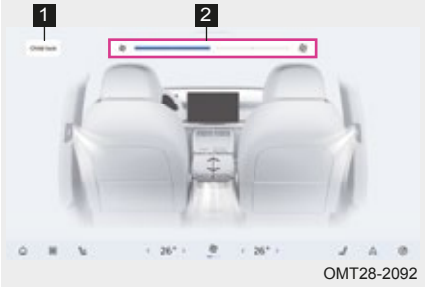
"AUTO": AUTO button.

"A/C": A/C button.

" ": Defogging and defrosting button.

": Rear defrosting button.

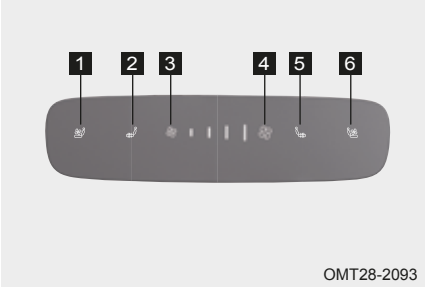
Second Row Air Conditioning (If Equipped)



OMT28-2092

1 Child lock: Click "Child lock", the second row A/C panel is locked and the air speed cannot be adjusted.

2 Air speed adjustment area.



OMT28-2093

1 Second row left seat ventilation.

2 Second row left seat heating.

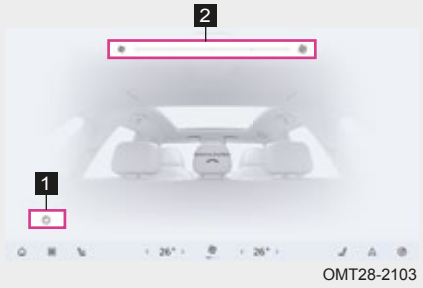
3 Air speed reduction button.

4 Air speed increase button.

5 Second row right seat heating.

6 Second row right seat ventilation.

Third Row Air Conditioning (If Equipped)



OMT28-2103

1 Third row A/C switch button

2 Air speed adjustment area.

A/C Setting

OMT28-2094

With vehicle powered ON, set the Automatic defogging function (Off/ Low/Medium/High), Custom air conditioner (Eco/Mid/Strong), Automatic cabin ventilation and Automatic cabin cleaning on A/C setting screen.

Automatic defogging function: A/C will automatically defog when there is a risk of fogging in vehicle to ensure driving safety.

Custom air conditioner: Set automatic A/C working state.

Automaticcabin cleaning: A/C will perform self-cleaning on time automatically after user locks and leaves the vehicle.

Automatic cabin ventilation: The vehicle will be automatically ventilated before unlocking and entering the vehicle.

Thermostatic cabin: Set open; NO A/C;off.

Welcome function: When unlocked by remote control, the fragrance system automatically opens.

Refreshing function: When driving for a long time, automatically turn on the fragrance system for a short time.

Air Conditioning Operation

Temperature adjustment

Operate the temperature adjustment area to realize the adjustment of air conditioning temperature.

Airflow volume adjustment

Operate the airflow volume adjustment area to realize the airflow volume adjustment of air conditioning.

A/C switch button

Click A/C switch button to realize on/off of air conditioning system.

A/C button

Click A/C button to realize air conditioning cooling (air conditioning compressor starts to operate).

Dual mode button

Click the dual mode button to switch between single mode/dual mode (Air conditioning temperature of driver/front passenger can be adjusted separately).

READ
System will memorize the operation before head unit is turned off last time by default when turning on head unit.

Mode adjustment button

Window mode, face mode, and foot mode can be used separately or in combination, with a total of 7 modes: Window mode, face mode, foot mode, face and foot mode, foot and window mode, face and window mode, face, foot and window mode.

Window mode: It can adjust airflow blowing out from defroster outlet.

Foot mode: It can adjust airflow blowing out from foot outlet.

Face mode: It can adjust airflow blowing out from center and face outlets on both sides.

Foot and window mode: It can adjust airflow blowing out from foot and window outlets.

Face and foot mode: It can adjust airflow blowing out from center and face and foot outlets on both sides.

Face and window mode: It can adjust airflow blowing out from center and face and window outlets on both sides.

Face, foot and window mode: It can adjust airflow blowing out from center and face, foot and window outlets on both sides.

READ
If front windshield become fogged-up during driving, defrosting mode is recommended. Click the defogging and defrosting button.

Outside/recirculated air mode button

The outside/recirculated air mode can be switched by clicking the outside/recirculated air mode button.

■ Use the recirculated air mode under following conditions:

1. In dusty environment.
2. To quickly cool the air in the vehicle.
3. To isolate other odors from outside.
4. To prevent outside exhaust gas from entering vehicle.

AUTO button

Click AUTO button to turn on automatic mode.

■ System remains in automatic mode under following conditions:

1. Click AUTO button in automatic mode, and system does not exit the automatic mode.
2. In automatic mode, outside/recirculated air mode switches and the outside/recirculated function exits from the automatic control, and other functions are still in the automatic mode.
3. When operating A/C button or mode adjustment button or adjusting air volume in automatic mode, the operated function will exit the automatic mode, however, other functions will still in automatic mode.

Air purification button

Click air purification button to turn on (inside/outside PM2.5 value is displayed on audio system)/off the air purification function.

■ Air purification function turns off automatically under the following conditions:

1. Outside/recirculated air mode switches.
2. Airflow volume is adjusted to OFF.
3. Temperature is adjusted to LOW/HI.
4. Front windshield defogging and defrosting function is turned on.

READ

- The air purification function effect in winter is not obvious due to low ambient temperature.
- When the air purification function is turned on, the outside/recirculated air mode is switched, and air volume and mode may change.
- Turn on air purification function to ensure that the vehicle is not fogged, the response method of automatic A/C in summer, winter, spring and autumn is not exactly the same, but purification effect can be achieved.
- Air purification function is inoperative and the button is deactivated in following conditions:
  - Air purification function cannot be turned on when temperature conditions are not met.
  - Air purification function cannot be turned on when front windshield defogging and defrosting function is turned on.
  - When the wiper is turned on (in high speed or low speed), air purification function cannot be turned on after a few seconds.

Defogging and defrosting button

After vehicle is started, click defogging and defrosting button to turn on (adjust airflow to make most of it blow to front windshield and small amount of it blow to side window) /off front windshield defogging and defrosting function.

When the airflow volume is turned on, operate defogging and defrosting button to turn on outside air mode and air conditioning compressor forcibly.

READ

- If the A/C fails to cool, the defogging effect will be affected. Please contact authorized service station for inspection and repair as soon as possible.
- When defogging in humid climate (such as rain and snow), please keep A/C on. If A/C is off, the defogging effect will be affected.
- When defogging in humid climate (such as rain and snow), please keep in outside air mode. If recirculated air mode is selected, the defogging effect will be affected.
- After wiping off all frost or fog, adjust mode and airflow volume to other proper position to improve comfort in vehicle.
- When defogging in winter, please keep in outside air mode. To adjust to the direction of partial heat, make air outlets on both sides of the instrument panel face the both sides of windows; when outside temperature is above 0℃, A/C auxiliary defogging is needed.

⚠ CAUTION

- For driving safety, please use the defogging function correctly.
- Do not use recirculated air mode for a long time in winter, otherwise the front windshield will be fogged up quickly.
- Poor glass visibility will increase the risk of traffic accidents and personal injury. Therefore, it is very important for traffic safety to ensure a good visibility during driving.

Rear defrosting button

After vehicle is started, click rear defrosting button to turn on/off rear windshield/outside rear view mirror defrosting function.

The rear windshield/outside rear view mirror defrosting function will turn off automatically after operating for about 20 minutes.

⚠ CAUTION

- The outside rear view mirror defrosting function is not a standard configuration. Please refer to the actual vehicle configuration.
- Do not scratch or damage the heater wires when cleaning the rear windshield/outside rear view mirror.
- Make sure that the defrosting function of rear windshield/outside rear view mirror is turned off after defogging or defrosting the rear windshield/outside rear view mirror surface.
- When the battery (12 V) is low, the rear windshield/outside rear view mirror defrosting function may not be turned on to ensure the normal starting of vehicle.

⚠ WARNING

To prevent burning yourself, do not touch the rear windshield/outside rear view mirror when the defrosting function of rear windshield/outside rear view mirror is operating or immediately after being turned off.

Front windshield heating (If Equipped)

Press the touch button to turn on/off the function. Avoid turning on the front windshield heating function for a long time.

Air Conditioning Heating

After vehicle is started, operate the audio system temperature adjustment area and airflow volume adjustment area; It is recommended to adjust mode to foot mode and turn off refrigeration system (A/C indicator turns off, and air conditioning compressor stops operating) or set the temperature to 22 ℃ or higher, click the AUTO button, and air conditioning will automatically operate and heat to a comfortable temperature.

Turn on AUTO mode and setting the temperature to 22 ℃ will better balance the A/C effect and energy consumption. If the heating demand is greater, it is recommended to turn on AUTO mode and set the temperature above 22℃ for better A/C effect.

A/C Cooling

After vehicle is started, click audio system AUTO button and A/C automatically controls operation of mode, airflow volume, outside/recirculated air mode and refrigeration system. In order to adapt to the different people's physique, the setting temperature can be fluctuated up and down at 22℃, which can obtain the best cooling effect.

Turn on AUTO mode and setting the temperature to 22 ℃ will better balance the A/C effect and energy consumption. If the refrigeration demand is greater, it is recommended to turn on AUTO mode and set the temperature below 22℃ for better A/C effect.

■ For the best cooling effect, please keep the surface of A/C filter clean without obvious blockage, then operate as follows:

Step 1: Adjust air volume to the maximum level;

Step 2: Adjust temperature to Max Cool;

Step 3: Adjust outside/recirculated air mode to recirculated air mode;

Step 4: Adjust to face mode;

Step 5: Turn on the refrigeration system (A/C indicator turns on, and air conditioning compressor starts operating).

READ

- Dirt and blockage in the surface of air conditioning condenser may cause poor cooling effect, please keep condenser clean.
- When air cools down quickly in hot and humid conditions, the fog may be seen from outlet, which is a normal physical phenomenon.
- When the temperature is low, such as in winter, the A/C compressor may not be started even if indicator comes on after operating A/C button.
- After the A/C system cooling operation, some water may drip from the air conditioning drain pipe and form a pool under vehicle, which is normal.
- After temperature in vehicle decreases to a lower temperature, compressor will turn off automatically to reduce the influence on power of power system and fuel consumption, this is normal.
- Refrigerant filled in air conditioning system will decrease over time, if you feel that the refrigeration effect of air conditioning becomes poor, please go to a authorized service station for inspection and repair in time.
- It is recommended to turn on air conditioning refrigeration system for 5 minutes or more every month and open the window simultaneously, this will help to prevent air conditioning system damage due to lack of lubricant, and also prevent evaporator odor due to moist and germs.
- During sudden acceleration, overtaking and climbing, power system needs more power for compensation. At this time, if the air conditioning is operating, the compressor may be turned off automatically, if it does not turn off automatically and you feel it is lack of power, it is recommended to turn off air conditioning.
- If air conditioning is on and vehicle is continually climbing long slopes, or is in heavy slow moving traffic for a prolonged period, the engine may become overheated. Please observe the high coolant temperature warning indicator. If engine overheats, it is recommended to drive vehicle to a safe area and stop it, turn off A/C and let vehicle idle for several minutes, then check if high coolant temperature warning indicator goes off. If not, please contact authorized service station for inspection and repair immediately.

⚠ WARNING

- To extend service life of air conditioning system, do not use the air conditioning for a long time with low speed when performing air conditioning cooling.
- It is forbidden to repair air conditioning system by yourself, as the high pressure refrigerant in air conditioning system is harmful to human. It is necessary to go to authorized service station for inspection and repair.
- Please purchase special refrigerant and compressor lubricant at the authorized service station, or air conditioning system damages sustained by this are not under warranty.
- In hot weather, the temperature in closed vehicle will quickly increase due to sunshine, this may cause personal or animal injury or even death, especially for infants and very young children.

Intelligent Mode (If Equipped)

Quick heating

All windows are closed, seat heating (If Equipped) is turned on, steering wheel heating (If Equipped) is turned on, outside circulation is turned on with maximum airflow and highest temperature, and foot mode is turned on; Wait until the inside temperature reaches the comfortable temperature or manually click this button to automatically turn off the quick heating.

Quick cooling

All windows are closed, seat ventilation (If Equipped) is turned on, inside circulation is turned on with maximum airflow and lowest temperature, and face mode is turned on; Wait until the inside temperature reaches the comfortable temperature or manually click this button to automatically turn off the quick cooling.

Intelligent deodorization

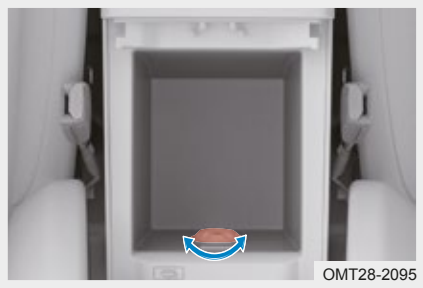
Outside circulation is turned on with maximum airflow.

Constant Temperature Cabin Function (If Equipped)

During the maximum parking time for 12 hours after leaving the vehicle, the constant temperature cabin function will be turned on to control the inside temperature below 45° C. Set the air conditioning operating mode when the interior temperature is too high. Three air conditioning modes: ON, no A/C and OFF.

- Activating the function will reduce the driving mileage.
- No A/C mode can reduce energy consumption, but the temperature may exceed 45°C.
- If the power battery drops below 20%, this function will not operate.

Refrigeration/Warming Function of Armrest Box


OMT28-2095

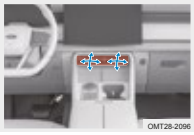
Place the required items (such as canned drinks) in armrest box, adjust A/C to face or face/foot mode and perform A/C refrigeration/warming operation, then turn the internal damper of the armrest box to refrigerate/warm the required items.

⚠ WARNING
Armrest box cannot be closed if the items is oversize. The opened armrest box may hinder the movement of driver's arm, be careful not to be injured.

Air Outlets Airflow Control

Front outlets

Move center outlet adjustment lever up and down, left and right by hand to adjust direction of airflow.


OMT28-2096

Front side outlets

OMT28-2097

Move left/right side outlet adjustment lever up and down, left and right by hand to adjust direction of airflow.

Second row outlets

OMT28-2098

Move the second row outlet adjustment lever up, down, left or right by hand to adjust direction of airflow.

Second row side outlets (If Equipped)

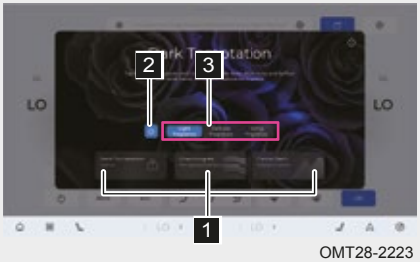
OMT28-2099

Move the second row outlet adjustment lever up, down, left or right by hand to adjust direction of airflow.

3-7. Fragrance System

Fragrance System (If Equipped)

The fragrance system keeps the air inside the vehicle clean, remove odors, and acts as an air purifier. It is beneficial to driver's safety, and it can create a cosy and inviting atmosphere in the narrow interior space of the vehicle to keep driver alert and calm, thus reducing the incidence of driving accidents.



OMT28-2223

1 Fragrance type button
2 Fragrance switch button
3 Fragrance concentration button

Fragrance type button

When the fragrance function is turned on, click the fragrance type button to switch between different fragrances.

When the fragrance function is not turned on, click the fragrance type button to turn on the fragrance function, and switch between different fragrances.

Fragrance switch button

Click the fragrance switch button to turn on/off the fragrance function.

Fragrance concentration button

When the fragrance function is turned on, click the fragrance concentration button to adjust the fragrance concentration.

When the fragrance function is not turned on, click the fragrance concentration button to turn on the fragrance function, and adjust the fragrance concentration.

Fragrance setting

OMT28-2224

Turn vehicle power to ON mode, and turn on welcome function and refreshing function on the A/C setting screen.

Welcome function: When unlocked by remote control, the fragrance system automatically opens.

Refreshing function: When driving for a long time, automatically turn on the fragrance system for a short time.

Replacing fragrance

OMT28-2225

Step 1: Hold the fragrance handle and pull out the fragrance bottle outward;

Step 2: Remove the old fragrance bottle and replace it with a new one;

Step 3: Insert the fragrance bottle into the channel of the fragrance generator in order, so that the fragrance bottle and the fragrance generator can engage automatically.

CAUTION

- Please store the fragrance cartridge in a cool and dry place and avoid direct sunlight.
- Please avoid direct inhalation through the mouth and nose, and use with caution for people who are sensitive to scent.
- The fragrance concentration will gradually fade over time, please use the fragrance cartridge as soon as possible after opening.
- Please keep the fragrance cartridge out of the reach of children to avoid harm to them (to avoid accidental ingestion by children).
- Care should be taken when removing/installing the fragrance box to avoid damage. It is recommended to go to authorized service station to be operated by after-sales personnel.
- Please go to authorized service station to purchase the fragrance cartridge to replace, so as to avoid damaging the fragrance system and ensure the best fragrance experience.
- The fragrance cartridge needs to be replaced regularly, and the validity period is 12 months if the cartridge is not opened. It is recommended to replace it after 3 months or according to the system prompt after opening.

3-8. Driving Recorder

Driving Recorder (If Equipped)

The driving recorder can record the video image and sound of the whole driving process, which can provide evidence for traffic accidents. People who like self-driving travel can also use it to record the process of overcoming difficulties and dangers. It records the time, speed and light in the video while driving, which is similar to a "black box".

Installing Micro SD card

OMT28-2100

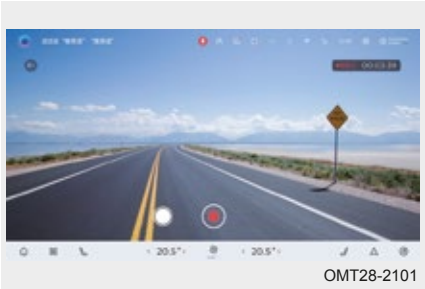
Please insert Micro SD card of Class10 or above version before power on, and the partition format of the card is FAT32.

The Micro SD card is installed behind the inside rear view mirror (as shown in the illustration).

READ

The maximum memory of the memory card is 128 GB.

Connection and display


OMT28-2101

The driving recorder is connected to the audio system through Wi-Fi and is displayed and operated on the audio system. Click driving recorder application to enter the real-time screen of it.

READ

- There is a certain delay in Wi-Fi transmission, so the real-time screen displayed on the audio system has a certain delay compared with the actual screen in front of the vehicle seen by the human eyes.
- The Wi-Fi connection between audio system and driving recorder may be disconnected after exiting the driving recorder. When clicking the driving recorder application again, it needs to reconnect Wi-Fi. This process will take a certain time. Please wait patiently.

Video

Start vehicle, the driving recorder starts recording, the red dot on upper left corner of real-time screen on audio system flashes, and REC is displayed. And the time in middle of the screen increases by seconds.

The video is recorded and stored in video folder by sections. When the video folder is full, the earliest recorded video will be automatically overwritten.

READ

Under normal recording, the indicator light of the recorder is blue; Under abnormal conditions, the indicator light of the recorder is red.

CAUTION

Do not unplug the Micro SD card directly during video recording. If the Micro SD card needs to be unplugged, please pause the recording or power off the vehicle before unplugging.

Emergency video

When the driving recorder is in normal working state, in case of collision, the driving recorder is not damaged and this function is activated, the video before and after the collision is recorded automatically for 10 s.

The emergency video is recorded and stored in emergency video folder. When the emergency video folder is full, the earliest recorded video will be

automatically overwritten, while the audio system will prompt with text: Driving recorder emergency video folder is full.

READ

In case of accidental collision, emergency video files are not guaranteed in each collision due to the insufficient collision intensity or other factors. If no emergency video is generated, you can find the video segment when accident occurs in video folder.

Parking monitoring

In the shutdown mode, in case of collision, the driving recorder is not damaged and this function is activated, it will turn on and automatically record for 20 seconds, and then turn off.

The parking monitoring is recorded and stored in emergency video folder. When the emergency video folder is full, the earliest recorded video will be automatically overwritten, while the audio system will prompt with text: Driving recorder emergency video folder is full.

READ

- The parking monitoring function is on by default and can be turned off by setting.
- When the battery power is lower than a certain voltage value and the parking monitoring function is turned on, the driving recorder cannot be enabled by vibration.
- In case of accidental collision, the collision intensity may be insufficient or Others factors may exist, which does not guarantee that the driving recorder can enable every time to record video.

Taking photos and snapshot

Method 1: Click " " button on real-time screen of audio system to take photos, one photo at each time.

Method 2: With vehicle in READY status, press the " ☆ " button to capture when driving recorder snapshot is customized through Audio System - Vehicle Center - Quick Control - Steering Wheel Buttons.

Photo/video playback

Entering the driving recorder to view cyclic video, emergency video and images.

In the video or emergency video folder, slide up and down, select and click a video to enter the playback screen to play the video. You can pause, continue, switch to the previous/next video, and delete video.

In the video file list screen, long press a video, a small circle will appear in the top right corner of the video thumbnail, with " √ " indicating that the video is selected, multiple or single choice is allowed, click Delete to delete the selected video. Deleted video is not recoverable.

During video recording, when the overlay switch of driving information is ON, you can see the date, time and driving status when recording this video in the information bar of video playback screen.

CAUTION

In the process of deleting videos or pictures, do not unplug Micro SD card or cut power off to avoid damaging Micro SD card.

Setting

Click " ⚙ " to enter the setting menu screen of driving recorder, set the driving information overlay, audio recording during recording, recording resolution, recording time, snapshot method, vibration sensitivity, wide dynamic, parking monitoring, storage space, format memory card, version information and restore default setting.

READ

In the process of formatting the memory card, do not unplug the card or cut power off to avoid damaging the memory card or recorder.

3-9. Wireless Charging

Wireless Charging (CWC) (If Equipped)

Wireless charging uses electromagnetic induction technology conveniently and safely to allow for a better experience while driving.

OMT28-2110

With vehicle in READY state, turn on Wireless Charging through Audio System - Vehicle Center - Connection.

Usage methods

OMT28-2111

With vehicle powered on, when the wireless charging starts to work after putting the mobile phone in wireless charging sensing area, the sound system updates the charging icon in real-time based on the charging status.

■ In the following conditions, the wireless charging may not work properly:

1. The mobile phone cannot be charged if the back of phone is more than 6 mm away from wireless charging sensing area.
2. The mobile phone cannot be charged if the back of the phone has thick metal (such as 1 Yuan coin, metal mobile phone shell), and audio system charging icon prompts abnormal charging.
3. If the temperature of the phone itself or the wireless charging sensing area (-surface) is too high, the phone may not be able to enter charging mode. It is recommended to wait for the temperature to decrease before charging.
4. Due to different information security requirements from different mobile phone manufacturers, some brand of phones may not be able to release fully charged information to the wireless charging module, and even after being fully charged, the screen of the head unit still displays the charging status icon.
5. If the phone malfunctions, it may also cause the inability to charge. Other compliant mobile phones can be used for wireless charging detecting to confirm if there is a malfunction with the phone.

READ

- Wireless charging function supports fast charging for some phones （50W）.
- Heat dissipation holes are set underneath the wireless charging to avoid falling into foreign matters or entering liquids.

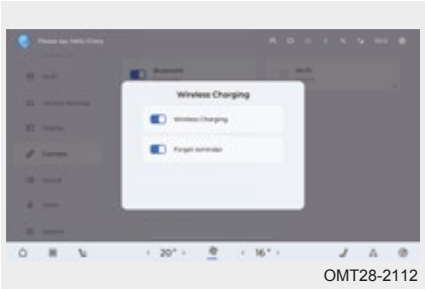
⚠ CAUTION

- Wireless charging function only supports mobile phones with wireless charging function.
- Please put the mobile phone in the center of the mobile phone slot. If you accelerate, decelerate or turn sharply during driving, the mobile phone will shake, which may affect the charging efficiency and stability.
- In the process of normal use of the vehicle, there will be a temporary charging shielding, so that vehicle may identify the smart key. At the same time, do not place metal objects such as the smart key on the wireless charging tray.
- If your mobile phone does not support the wireless charging function, it is recommended that do not use the wireless charging patch. The quality of the wireless charging patch in the market is uneven, and damage may be caused if using frequently (such as function failure, poor interface contact, metal foreign object recognition failure).
- If the mobile phone cannot be charged normally when the vehicle is awakened, make sure that there is no foreign matter in the wireless charging area and wait for the wireless charging area to cool before trying. If it is still unable to charge, it is recommended that you contact authorized service station.

⚠ WARNING

- Passengers using pacemakers or other medical devices should turn off the phone wireless charging function before driving.
- During driving, do not check the charging status of mobile phone for a long time to avoid potential traffic safety hazard.
- Do not place heavy objects in the charging area or impact the surface of the wireless charger to avoid damage to the charging area.
- During the program upgrade process, please do not place any items in the charging area to avoid abnormal wireless charging function after the upgrade.
- The wireless charging module only supports charging one phone at a time, and the company does not make promises for any problems caused by illegal operations.
- During wireless charging, do not place ETC card/ID card/NFC card key/credit card, etc. in the charging area, as this may cause damage to card data.
- To prevent battery (12 V) depleted, do not use high-power wireless charging function for a long time when high voltage is not applied to the vehicle; When there is no driver in vehicle, please do not place your phone in the vehicle for charging to avoid safety hazards.
- Do not splash liquids (water, beverages, etc.) on the charging panel to prevent liquids from entering the wireless charger through the gaps in the charging panel, causing charger failure. Do not use grease, oil or alcohol to clean the charging panel. If you accidentally spill liquid on the charging panel, please wipe it immediately with a dry cloth.
- Do not place coins, keys, chip cards or other metal items in the charging area. Otherwise, it may cause the metal object to be heated, leading to abnormal charging or causing safety accidents. If any metal foreign matter between mobile phone and charging pad is found, the wireless charging function should be immediately turned off. Do not remove the foreign matter immediately by hand to avoid burns.

Phone forgetting reminder function



OMT28-2112

With vehicle in READY state, turn on Forgetting Reminder through Audio System - Vehicle Center - Connection.

The vehicle is switched from READY to power on state, (open driver door, driver seat not occupied and gear position in P), if mobile phone is left in wireless charging sensing area, and an alarm sound is emitted to remind the user to take the phone out.

3-10. FOTA Upgrade

FOTA Upgrade (If Equipped)

Upgrade conditions

1. Downloading the upgrade package requires (4G or Wi-Fi).
2. Park the vehicle in a safe place and apply parking brake to ensure the safety of vehicle in the process of upgrade.
3. It is recommended that you do not operate the audio system in the process of upgrade and keep the OTA upgrade screen on the top.

READ
The vehicle with an activated card can use 4G network or Wi-Fi to download the installation package, and the vehicle without an activated card needs to connect Wi-Fi in the Audio System - Vehicle Center.

Upgraded controller and time

OTA upgrade includes the following controllers. The upgrade time of single controller is tens of minutes. The specific upgrade time is subject to the upgrade of real vehicle. Please make sure that there is sufficient time before the upgrade, otherwise the upgrade may fail.

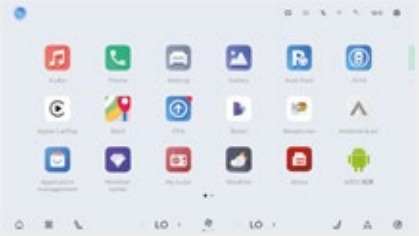
Rear Left Corner Radar/Rear Right Corner Radar (RLCR/RRCR)	Estimated upgrade time: 120seconds
Body Domain Control Module (BDM)	Estimated upgrade time: 300 seconds
Power Back Door (PLG)	Estimated upgrade time: 60 seconds
Seat Control Module (SCU)	Estimated upgrade time: 175 seconds

Door Control Module (DCM)	Estimated upgrade time: 90 seconds
Automatic A/C Module (CLM)	Estimated upgrade time: 120 seconds
Infotainment Domain Controller (DMC)	Estimated upgrade time: 480 seconds
Remote Communication Module (T-BOX)	Estimated upgrade time: 240 seconds
External Power Amplifier (EAMP)	Estimated upgrade time: 100 seconds
Wireless Charging Module (CWC)	Estimated upgrade time: 90 seconds
Hydraulic Control Unit (HCU)	Estimated upgrade time: 60 seconds
Rear Drive Motor Control Unit (MCUR)	Estimated upgrade time: 150 seconds

Method for Entering Vehicle Upgrade

OMT28-2120

Method 1: With vehicle powered on and gear position in P, if there is a new upgrade version, the system automatically pops up the upgrade prompt box. Click to check and enter the vehicle upgrade screen.



OMT28-2121

Method 2: Click Vehicle Upgrade in Audio System - APP to enter the vehicle upgrade screen.

Operation for Upgrade Now

Upgrade prompt

OMT28-2122

After entering the vehicle upgrade screen, the update content will be displayed. Click Upgrade Now.

Disclaimer

OMT28-2123

Click Upgrade now to enter disclaimer screen, which informs the owner of upgrade terms and statements, then click Agree.

Inspection of vehicle conditions

OMT28-2124

After agreeing the disclaimer, the pop-up box on the screen will prompt "Checking vehicle conditions", and the vehicle is automatically powered off on this screen. After a few seconds of blank screen due to power off, the vehicle is automatically powered on, and the pop-up box on the screen will prompt "Vehicle is about to enter upgrade mode".

Upgrade mode

OMT28-2125

The vehicle enters upgrade mode after it is automatically powered on successfully. If entering upgrade mode fails, please operate according to the prompt.

⚠ CAUTION

In the upgrade mode, do not depress brake pedal, and wiper washing function, interior light control, exterior light control, air conditioning control, instrument cluster screen and other functions are disabled.

Detecting upgrade preconditions

OMT28-2126

After entering the upgrade mode successfully, it will enter upgrade precondition detection screen, and automatically enter the next step after meeting the vehicle conditions required by the upgrade; If it is detected that the vehicle does not meet the upgrade preconditions, a prompt window that conditions are not met will pop out, please operate according to the prompt.

Task effectiveness test

OMT28-2127

Before starting the upgrade, ask the OTA server whether the upgrade task of this time has failed. If it fails, report the task failure status and prompt that the upgrade task is invalid. please operate according to the prompt. If successful, it will enter the upgrade installation.

Upgrade installation

OMT28-2128

After entering the upgrade mode successfully, enter the screen of starting upgrade and wait for the end of upgrade.

⚠ CAUTION
Meter and multi-media may be restarted after upgrading, which is normal.

Appointment Upgrade Operation

Upgrade prompt

OMT28-2129

After entering the vehicle upgrade screen, the update content will be displayed. Click Appointment Upgrade.

Disclaimer

OMT28-2130

Click Appointment upgrade to enter disclaimer screen, which informs the owner of upgrade terms and statements, then click Agree.

Setting appointment time

OMT28-2131

After agreeing the disclaimer, it enters the appointment time setting screen. After the time is set, click OK. After the appointment time is set successfully, it will prompt that the appointment is successful.

Note: The appointment upgrade supports an appointment time setting within 24 hour.

OMT28-2132

Click OK to return to the main screen and the appointment time can be seen. After the appointment time is set and the appointment is successful, please power off the vehicle, people leave the vehicle and four doors are locked, and the vehicle is in sleep state.

Detecting upgrade preconditions

OMT28-2133

After the appointment time is reached, the vehicle is woken up and upgrade precondition detection is carried out.

If the vehicle is powered off and vehicle is in arming mode, it will automatically enter the upgrade mode. If the preconditions for upgrade are not met, it will exit the upgrade process. The next time the vehicle is started, the upgrade will be prompted again.

If the vehicle is not powered OFF or vehicle is not in arming mode, exit the appointment upgrade. Please operate according to the prompt.

Upgrade mode

OMT28-2134

After the appointment time is reached and the vehicle status meets the upgrade conditions, the vehicle enters the upgrade mode, and the user cannot drive and use the vehicle at this time.

Upgrade installation

After upgrade preconditions are detected and met, the automatic upgrade will be performed. The vehicle cannot be used during the upgrade process.

Upgrade Result Prompt

After the upgrade is completed and the vehicle is powered on, the following upgrade results will pop up.

Upgrade succeeded

OMT28-2135

When all controllers are successfully upgraded, a message is displayed indicating that the upgrade is successful. By clicking confirmation button or after 20 seconds, it will exit upgrade mode.

Upgrade not completed

OMT28-2136

When a controller fails to upgrade and the rollback is successful, it will prompt that the upgrade is not completed and the vehicle returns to the status before upgrading. By clicking confirmation button or after 20 seconds, it will exit upgrade mode.

Upgrade failed

OMT28-2137

When a controller fails to upgrade and the rollback fails, it will prompt that the upgrade is failed. The vehicle has serious problems. By clicking confirmation button or after 20 seconds, it will exit upgrade mode.

Countermeasures for Abnormal Problems during Upgrading

When OTA upgrade is completed and upgrade mode cannot be exited, wait for 2 hours to automatically exit OTA mode in normal conditions. If it is still impossible to exit upgrade mode after 2 hours, please contact authorized service station.

If other abnormal problems occur in OTA upgrade, it is recommended to power off the vehicle, make the person and key leave the vehicle, lock the four doors and wait 15 minutes, then restart the vehicle and try to operate OTA upgrade again; If the problem is still not resolved or OTA upgrade fails, please contact authorized service station.

Network Security Notification

Network security service update or termination notification

Our company has provided network security support services for the corresponding software and equipment of the Internet of Vehicles service, and update it regularly or irregularly or terminate this service.

When the service changes, our company will inform you through website announcement, email, on-board system, SMS, voice call, etc.

Email, SMS and voice call will be notified or sent to the email address and mobile phone listed in your account registration information.

Network security notification for resale or disposal

Before you resell or dispose the vehicle, that is, when you no longer hold the vehicle, you should clear the personal information in the vehicle terminal by yourself.

Be careful to avoid that the personal information of the vehicle terminal is disclosed to third party due to improper operation.

3-11. Remote Control System

Remote Control System (If Equipped)

User can remotely view the vehicle status (including lock status, engine status, window status, moon roof status, back door status, tire temperature and pressure, remaining fuel, etc.) on their mobile phone APP, and remotely control the vehicle to improve driving efficiency, monitoring and protection of the vehicle.

READ

For details about activation and usage of vehicle control function, refer to electronic manual in mobile APP, or contact authorized service station.

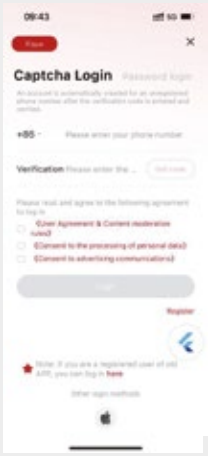
CAUTION

Due to product version upgrade or other reasons, the information company will update or revise the contents herein from time to time without prior notice. Please make sure that you refer to the latest version before using the product.

Introduction of product functions

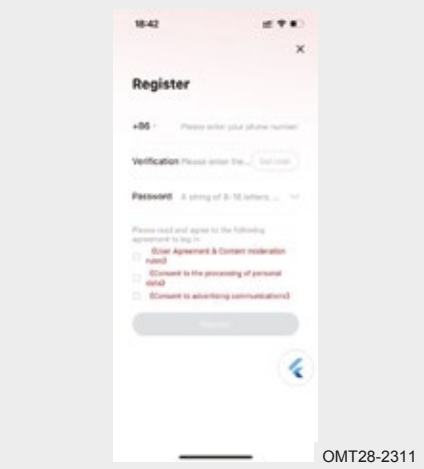
User registration

■ Registration with mobile phone (MP) number



OMT28-2310

Open the vehicle control APP and click the "Profile" tab at the page bottom. The following interface will display when user logs in for the first time:

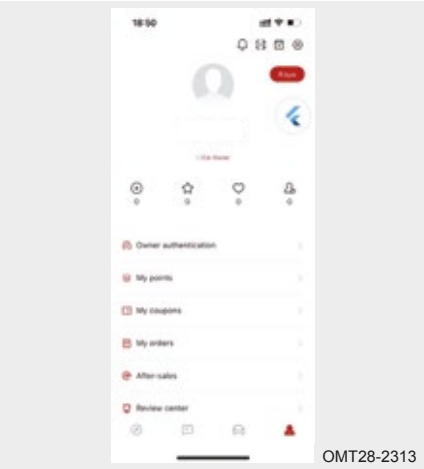


OMT28-2311

The page will jump to the APP operating interface automatically upon the account creation.

Vehicle binding and vehicle control activation

■ Add a vehicle


OMT28-2313

After logging in, click the "Vehicle" tab, and then click "Owner verification". Or click the : Me" tab enter "My car" menu and click the "-Owner verification" button.

Click and enter vehicle information on the pop-up page, such as VIN, engine number, license plate number, etc.

OMT28-2314

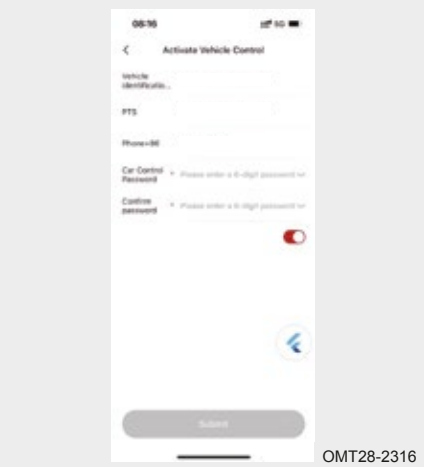
Click "SUBMIT FOR AUTHENTICATION" to add a vehicle. If the vehicle information has been subject to maintenance in the system, after the data verification is completed, it will prompt "-Successfully bound vehicle", otherwise "Owner certification record does not exist" will display, please carefully check whether the VIN and engine number are matching.

■ Activate vehicle control function

OMT28-2315

For users who have activated the vehicle control function for the first time, click on the "Car" page and then the "Car Control" page to enter the vehicle remote control interface.

Click "To Be Activated" to activate the car control function.

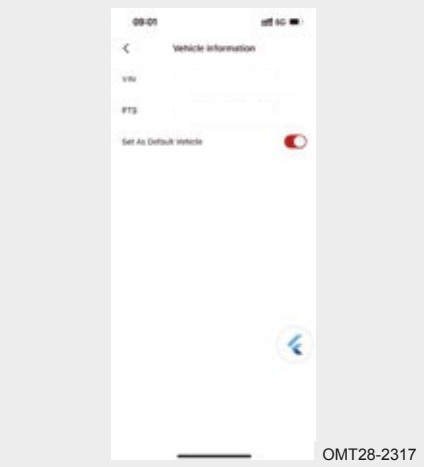


OMT28-2316

Enter the initial vehicle control password, then the activation is successful. At this time, the vehicle control function is activated.

View vehicle status

■ Select a vehicle



OMT28-2317

In case of several available vehicles at the same time, click the vehicle card and click "DEFAULT VEHICLE" to view the vehicle status.

■ View vehicle status

OMT28-2318

Above the car rendering on the vehicle's homepage, users can see two types of remaining range, including battery range and fuel range.

Remote vehicle control1

■ Remote unlock/lock

If the initial state of the car lock is locked, clicking once will unlock the car, and clicking again will lock the car.

■ Remote engine control

If the engine is initially off, click the button once and the engine will start

■ Remote window open/half-open/close

If the initial state of the window is closed, click once to make the window half open, click again to make the window fully open, and click again to make the window closed. Cycle in sequence.

■ Remote trunk/tail door open

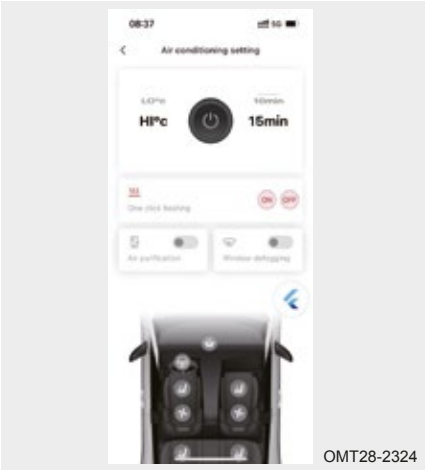
If the initial state of the trunk is closed, clicking once will open the trunk, and clicking again will close the trunk.

■ Searching for cars

Click the finding button, and the vehicle will sound its horn and flash its lights. After a certain period of time, it will turn off.

Remote A/C ON

■ A/C temperature/duration adjustment



OMT28-2324

Click the A/C icon on the vehicle condition/vehicle control page. In the A/C sub-interface, you can adjust the A/C temperature and execution time by sliding.

After selecting the A/C temperature and ON duration, Click on the switch button and select "ON", the A/C will be turned on. Click the "OFF", the A/C will be turned off.

■ Heating/ventilation adjustment

In the A/C sub-interface, the seat heating or ventilation function can be adjusted. By clicking the icons on the virtual vehicle, the sub-functions of steering wheel heating, windshield heating, seat heating and seat ventilation can be realized.

Click the corresponding icons again, the sub-functions of steering wheel heating, windshield heating, seat heating and seat ventilation will be turned off.

■ Air purification/Defrost

In the A/C sub-interface, click "AIR PURIFICATION"/"DEFROST" to turn on the corresponding functions.

Click the corresponding icons again, the "AIR PURIFICATION"/" DEFROST" function will be turned off.

■ One-button heating regulation

In the A/C sub-interface, click "ONE-BUTTON HEATING". At this time, the one-button heating function is activated, and all the heating-related functions on the vehicle are activated.

The user may select the one-button heating function to make the vehicle reach the set temperature quickly. Click "ONE-BUTTON HEATING" again to turn off the function.

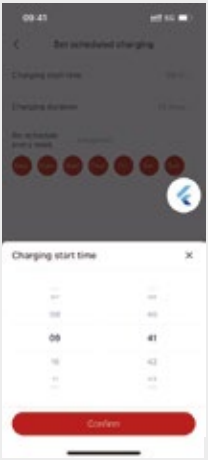
READ

- Please note that the specific adjustment options and functions may vary subject to different vehicle models or configurations.
- Please note that the availability of specific functions may depend on the model and configuration of the vehicle. When using the remote control function, please ensure that the vehicle is in a safe environment and observe the local traffic laws and regulations.

Energy Center

OMT28-2323

The percentage of remaining charge and range are displayed above the car image, the car rendering is green when the charge is >20% and red when the charge is below 20%.



OMT28-2322

Appointment charging starts from 00:00-23:45 with a 15 minute interval cycle. Appointment charging initial is 08:00-14:00, end time default is plus 6 hours.

Departure time allows for all moments throughout the day and Monday to Sunday selection. After clicking on the booking date, the cycle selected is cycled.

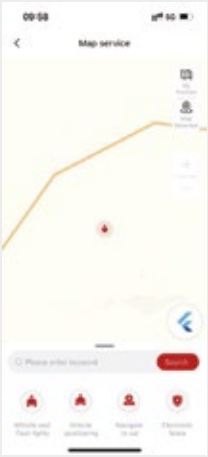
Tyre Monitoring

OMT28-2321

In the "Tyre monitoring" module, the air pressure and temperature of all four tyres are displayed, and abnormal tyre pressure data will be marked in red as a reminder.

Map service

■ Flashing lights and whistling


OMT28-2325

You may activate the flashing lights by clicking the "LIGHTS AND WHISTLING" in the map service function sub-item.

After confirmation, the lights will flash and whistle to help the user find the vehicle quickly.

■ Vehicle positioning

You may click on "Vehicle Location" or the car icon on the map in the Map Services function sub-item.

After this function is activated, the user may determine the vehicle location through the vehicle icon on the map.

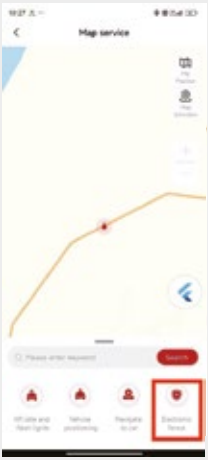
■ Navigate to vehicle

Click "MAP SERVICE" to enter the function sub-item, and click "NAVIGATE TO VEHICLE".

At this time, the APP will wake up the third-party navigation system (google map/Here We Go).

After entering the third-party navigation system, the user's current location and the current vehicle location will be taken as the starting point of navigation, and the user may use the navigation function to plan the best route in order to reach the location of the vehicle.

■ Electronic fence

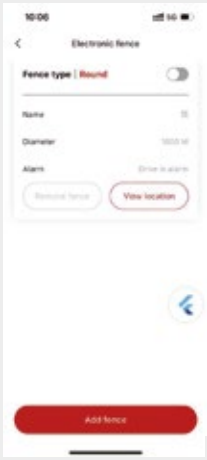


OMT28-2329

View the set electronic fence information.

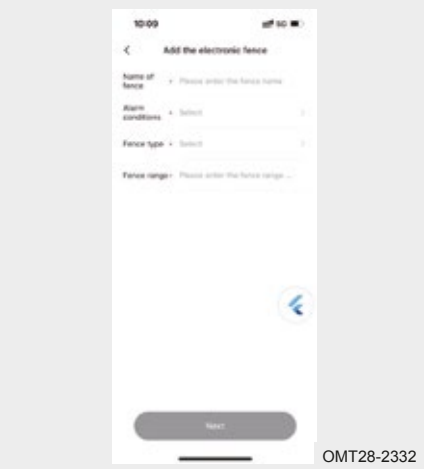
Click "MAP SERVICE" to enter the function sub-item, and then click "-ELECTRONIC FENCE" button.

The use may browse the created electronic fence and view its name, notification conditions, shape and size, etc.



OMT28-2331

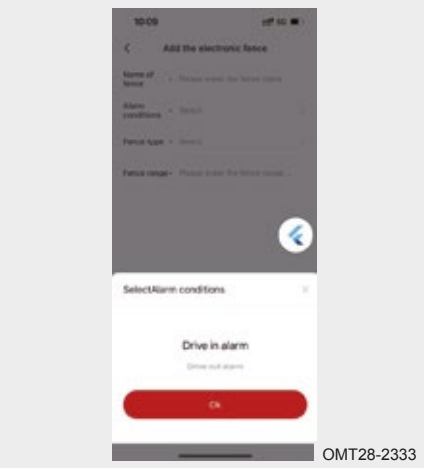
Click "VIEW LOCATION" to view the location and coverage of the fence on the map.



OMT28-2332

Add a new electronic fence

Click "ADD FENCE" to add a new electronic fence.



OMT28-2333

The use may choose to mark the fence location on the map and set its name, notification conditions, shape and size.

Set the fence name

When adding or editing an electronic fence, you may set an easy-to-identify name for the fence.

The user may assign a unique name to each electronic fence as per needs, which is ease for management and identification.

Notification conditions

When adding or editing an electronic fence, the notification conditions may be chosen.

The notification conditions may include driving-in, driving-out or driving-in + driving-out, that is, the notification will be triggered when the vehicle enters, leaves or enters & leaves the fence.

Fence shape and size

When adding an electronic fence, the fence shape and size may be chosen.

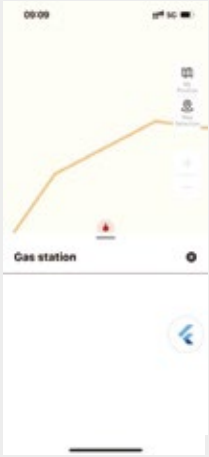
Common fence shapes include circular and rectangular, and users may choose the appropriate shape as per needs.

The user may also adjust the fence size to ensure that it covers the required area.

■ POI information query

OMT28-2334

In the map interface, you may query POI (point of interest) information.



OMT28-2335

The user may search for specific locations or types, such as banks, gas stations and parking lots, etc.

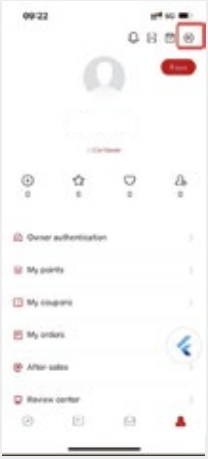
Click "SEND TO VEHICLE" after searching out the address, the APP will send the displayed POI information to the vehicle end, and proceed navigation in the vehicle navigation system.

READ

These map service functions can help users easily locate vehicles, plan navigation routes, set up electronic fences and inquiry surrounding POI information. Please note that the availability of specific functions may depend on the versions and regions of the vehicle control APP.

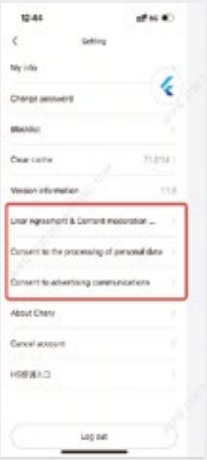
Binding authorization

■ Add user authorization



OMT28-2336

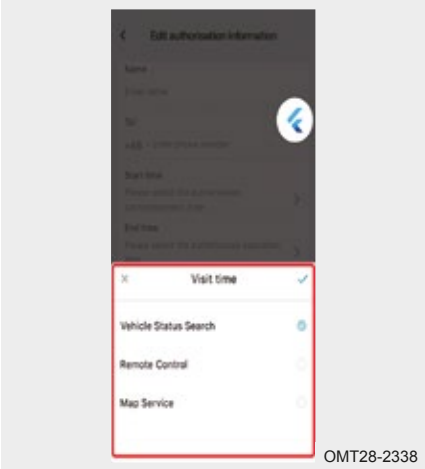
Click on the Settings icon in the top right corner and "PRIVACY SETTINGS" will appear in the list.



OMT28-2337

Click "REMOTE ACCESS OVERVIEW" on the corresponding vehicle.

Click "ADD", and enter the name, MP number, effective time and invalid time of authorization, vehicle control password (irrelevant to the original vehicle control) and limit of authority of the authorized person on the pop-up page.



OMT28-2338

The authorizer can set the authorized person's range of right to use the vehicle, including basic permissions, remote control and vehicle positioning.

READ

- If granted basic permissions, the authorized user may view the vehicle condition.
- If granted remote control, the authorized user may control the vehicle remotely.
- If granted vehicle positioning, the authorized user may use the related functions in the map service.

■ Edit user authorization

On the setting or authorization management page of the vehicle control APP, the user may choose to edit the user authorization.

Users may select the existing authorized users to edit and modify their related information or permission range.

■ Delete authorization

On the setting or authorization management page of the vehicle control APP, the user may choose to delete the user authorization.

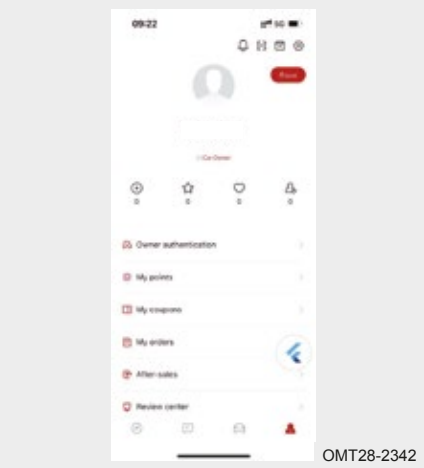
Users may select to delete the existing authorized users and confirm the deletion operation.

READ

Through the binding authorization function, the owner can conveniently manage and control the authorization permission of the vehicle. He/she may add a new authorization, provide the information and permission range of the authorized person; or he/she may edit the existing user authorization and modify its information or authority; and he/she may also delete user authorizations that are no longer needed. In this way, the owner can flexibly authorize others to use the vehicle and manage and adjust as needed. Please note that the availability of specific functions may depend on the versions and regions of the vehicle control APP.

Account cancellation

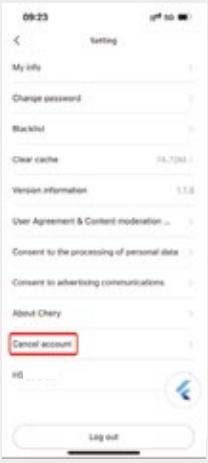
■ Enter the "MY" function page



OMT28-2342

Click "ACCOUNT SETTING" on the interface.

■ Select account cancellation



OMT28-2343

Select "DELETE ACCOUNT" on the account setting page.

■ Confirm cancellation

OMT28-2344

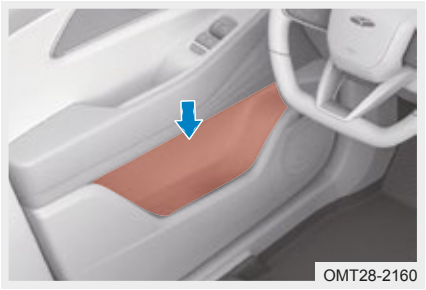
Confirm account cancellation operation.

⚠ CAUTION
Cancelling the account will clear all account-related data, which cannot be recovered. Please be careful.

3-12. Storage Space

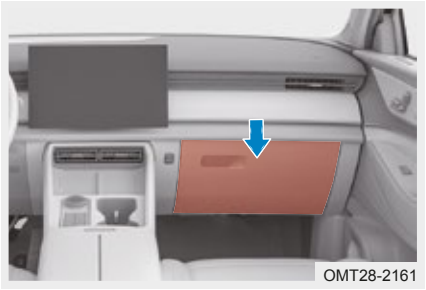
Storage Space

Door storage boxes


OMT28-2160

Storage boxes on front and the second row doors can be used for storing maps, cups and others items.

Glove box


OMT28-2161

Glove box is used to store map, instructions and other items.

Pull the glove box handle to unlock the glove box.

⚠ WARNING

Before driving, make sure that the glove box is closed in place. Otherwise in case of emergency braking or emergency steering, it may cause accidents and serious injury or even death.

Armrest box

OMT28-2162

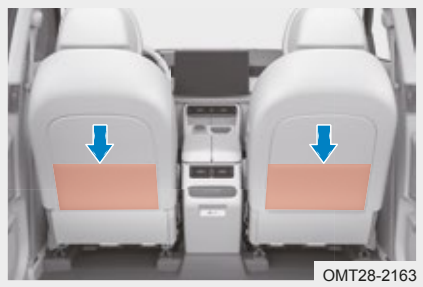
Armrest box is used to store maps, instructions and other items.

Press armrest box button to unlock the auxiliary fascia console armrest box.

⚠ WARNING

- Adults or children are not allowed to sit on armrest box.
- Armrest box must be closed when the vehicle is running, and the opening armrest box may hinder the driver's arm movement to prevent injury.

Seat storage bag


OMT28-2163

Front seatbacks are both equipped with storage bags on backside, which are used to store documents, instruction etc.

Luggage compartment

OMT28-2164

To enlarge space for stowing luggage, the rear seats can be folded when no passenger is in rear seats.

■ When stowing luggage in the vehicle, observe the following precautions:

1. Be careful to keep the vehicle balanced.
2. For better fuel economy, do not stow unneeded items.
3. Make sure that the stowing items are not oversize to prevent the luggage compartment from closing properly.

⚠ WARNING

- Do not drive the vehicle with the back door open or not closed, to prevent items from being thrown out to cause personal injury.
- Do not allow anyone to sit in the luggage compartment. The passengers should sit in their seats with their seat belts properly fastened. Otherwise, they may be seriously injured in event of sudden braking or a collision.
- Do not stack goods or luggage higher than seatback. Keep them low, as close to the floor as possible to prevent them sliding forward in event of braking, causing personal injury.

Carrier

OMT28-2165

Roof carrier is used for loading cargo, with a load of 100 kg. Be sure that the total weight of the loading cargo on the carrier or loading tool (-such as luggage compartment, cross rod) does not exceed 100 kg.

⚠ CAUTION

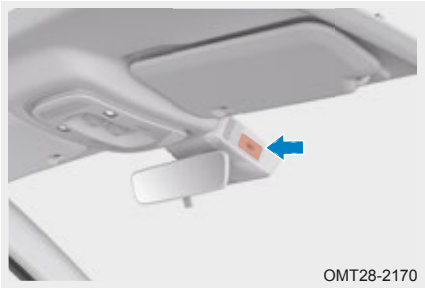
- Never allow the loaded long or wide cargoes to exceed the overall length or width of the vehicle.
- Overweight will cause carrier, moon roof glass, body roof and other components to be damaged, the various problems caused by overweight are not under the warranty.
- Before driving, make sure the cargo is securely attached to the roof carrier. Blankets or other protection items can be placed between the cargo and the roof. Be careful not to scratch the roof surface.

⚠ WARNING

- Apply loads evenly. Improper loading may cause deterioration of steering or braking control, which may cause serious injury or even death.
- Loading cargo on carrier will raise the vehicle center of gravity. Avoid high speeds, sudden starts, sharp turns, sudden braking or abrupt maneuvers, otherwise it may result in loss of control or vehicle rollover due to failure to operate vehicle.

3-13. USB Port

Driving Recorder USB (If Equipped)


OMT28-2170

Driving recorder USB is located above the inside rear view mirror, which is used to supply power to the driving recorder installed by yourself.

⚠ CAUTION

Driving recorder USB is only used to supply power to the driving recorder, and cannot be used to charge other electric appliances.

Front USB

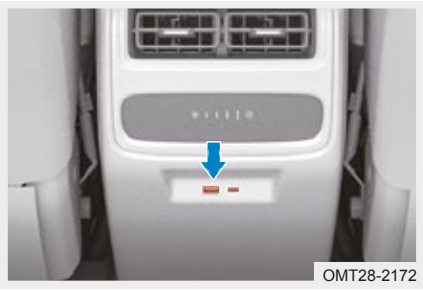
OMT28-2171

Front USB is located on the lower part of auxiliary fascia console (as shown in the illustration).

Type-A port: It can be used for reading U disc, phone connect and charging the electrical equipment with low power, such as phone etc.

Type-C port: It can be used for charging the electrical equipment with low power, such as phone etc.

Rear USB


OMT28-2172

Rear USB is located at the rear of center armrest box (as shown in the illustration).

Type-A port: It can be used for charging the electrical equipment with low power, such as phone etc.

Type-C port: It can be used for charging the electrical equipment with low power, such as phone etc.

3-14. Backup Power Supply (12 V)

Front Backup Power Supply

OMT28-2180

Front backup power supply is located on the lower part of auxiliary fascia (as shown in the illustration).

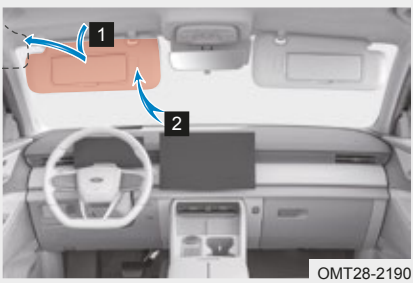
The backup power supply can only be used when the vehicle is powered on.

⚠ CAUTION

- To prevent the battery (12 V) from depleting, do not use backup power supply longer than necessary.
- To prevent the fuse from being blown, do not use electrical equipment with high power (120 W or more).
- Do not insert anything or allow any liquid to get into the backup power supply other than an appropriate plug. Failure to do so may cause electrical failure or short circuits.

3-15. Sun Visors and Vanity Mirrors

Sun Visors and Vanity Mirrors



OMT28-2190

Flip the sun visor down and open the vanity mirror cover panel to use the vanity mirror, and the corresponding vanity mirror light (If Equipped) comes on.

1 Flip the sun visor down.

2 Detach the hook and turn it outward to shade the sidelight.

3-16. Front Compartment Cover

Opening/Closing Front Compartment Cover

OMT28-2200

Step 1: The front compartment cover will spring up slightly when the front compartment cover release lever is pulled twice;

Step 2: Lift the front compartment cover up and lift and support the front compartment cover under action of the air spring;

Step 3: Lower the front compartment cover and close it until the latch is locked;

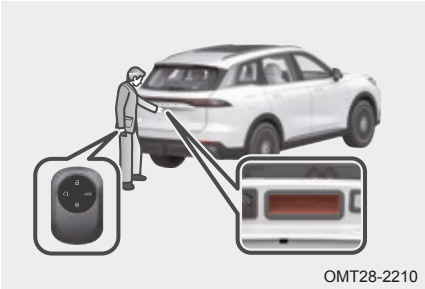
Step 4: After closing the front compartment cover, lift the front compartment cover lightly to check if front compartment cover is fully closed.

CAUTION

- Before closing the front compartment cover, check if you have not left any tools, rags etc. in the front compartment.
- When closing the front compartment cover, do not press it by hand, otherwise it may be deformed.
- Make sure that front compartment cover is closed before driving, otherwise accidents and personal injury may be caused.

3-17. Back Door

Manual Back Door


OMT28-2210

Method 1: With central lock unlocked, approach the back of vehicle, press exterior switch on the back door and lift up to open the back door.

Method 2: With central lock locked, approach to back of vehicle while carrying smart key on your person, press back door exterior switch and lift up to open back door.

READ

When the central lock is locked, please unlock the central lock first, and then open it with back door exterior switch.

WARNING

Make sure that the back door is closed before driving, otherwise, accidents and damage to related parts may be caused.

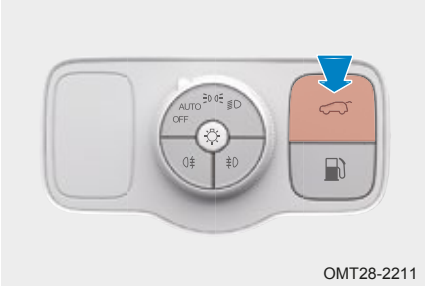
Power Back Door (If Equipped)

For your convenience, power back door can be opened/closed in various ways (such as using driver side switch, back door exterior switch, back door interior switch, smart key remote control, smart key sensing, voice, remote open/close back door (If Equipped)), the height adjustment function can also be achieved, let you fully feel the convenience of power back door.

Smart key remote control

When vehicle is powered off, long press back door opener button on smart key, power back door will be open/closed.

Driver door switch

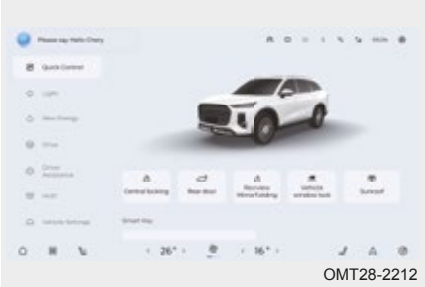


OMT28-2211

With central lock unlocked, long press "" button, turn signal lights will come on and power back door will be opened/closed.

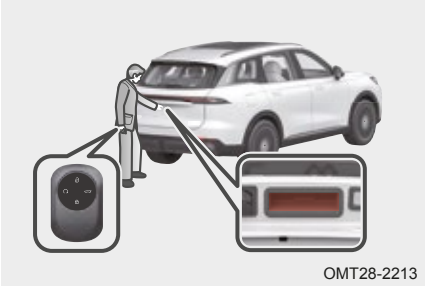
When the power back door is moving, press " " button to suspend the action.

Quick control


OMT28-2212

With vehicle in READY state, click " button" through Audio System - Vehicle Center - Quick Control to turn on/off back door.

Back door exterior switch

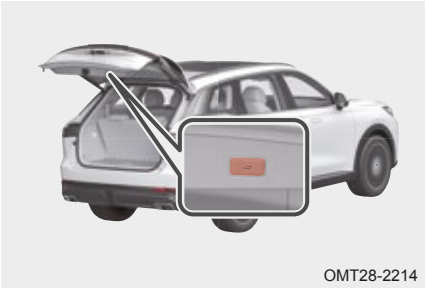

OMT28-2213

Method 1: With central lock unlocked, approach the back of vehicle and press exterior switch on the back door, turn signal lights will come on and power back door will be opened/closed.

Method 2: With central lock locked, approach to back of vehicle while carrying smart key on your person and press back door exterior switch, turn signal lights will come on and power back door will be opened/closed.

READ
When the central lock is locked, please unlock the central lock first, and then open it with back door exterior switch.

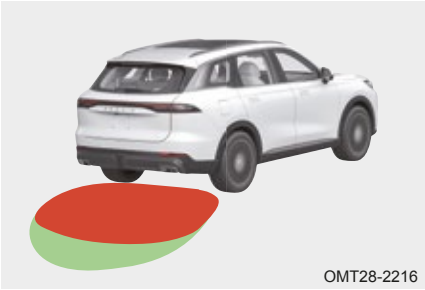
Back door interior switch


OMT28-2214

With the power back door open, press "" button to close the power back door.

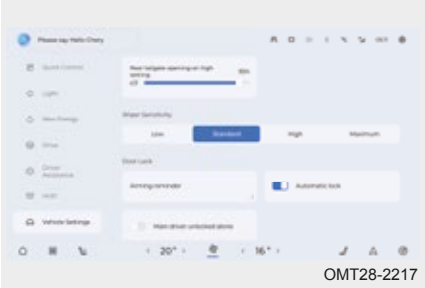
When the power back door is moving, press " " button to suspend the action.

Smart key sensing


OMT28-2216

With vehicle powered off or when starting vehicle remotely, close the four doors, front compartment cover and back door, approach to the rear (red area) of vehicle while carrying smart key, the system automatically recognizes the validity of smart key, after turn signal lights come on, take a step back (green area), power back door opens.

Back door opening height


OMT28-2217

With vehicle in READY state, slide and adjust the Back Door Opening Height through Audio System - Vehicle Center - Vehicle Settings.

omt28-2218

After the power back door is opened, adjust it to your desire height; long press "" button until the vehicle gives a light prompt, and the power back door opening height is set successfully.

READ

- For details about voice recognition function, refer to "Audio System" section.
- For details about remote back door control, refer to "Remote Control System" section.
- If the back door opening height is too low or too high, the back door opening height cannot be set.
- Smart key sensing back door open function is turned off after 3 days since vehicle is locked, restarting the vehicle will resume the function.
- Do not put smart key next to computer, cordless mouse, phone, etc. failure to do so may cause the power back door being unable to sense opening/closing.
- When any switch (such as power back door switch, power back door button, back door open button) is activated during the movement of the power back door, the back door will stop moving.

CAUTION

- When abnormality occurs in power back door, please go to authorized service station for inspection and repair as soon as possible.
- When the power back door opens, do not pull electric support rod laterally, which may cause damage to related parts.
- Before driving, make sure that the back door is closed properly, otherwise it may cause accidents and damage to related parts.
- Before opening the power back door, be sure to note that there should be nothing in the opening range, which could result in scratching the back door.
- When closing the back door, make sure that nobody will be caught. If closing is interrupted, close it again.
- When the power back door is opened to the highest position, it cannot be pushed or supported by hand to higher place, as this may cause damage to related parts.
- When closing power back door by hand, please operate gently. Never operate with brute force, failure to do so may cause damage to motor and module.
- When going uphill or downhill, due to change in the center of gravity, the power back door may not open or close. This is normal. Open or close it by hand.
- If the battery (12 V) cable is reconnected after disconnected, the power back door needs to be manually closed to locked position at a constant speed, and then press the power back door switch to open/close the power back door normally.

⚠ WARNING
Make sure that the back door is closed before driving, otherwise, accidents and damage to related parts may be caused.

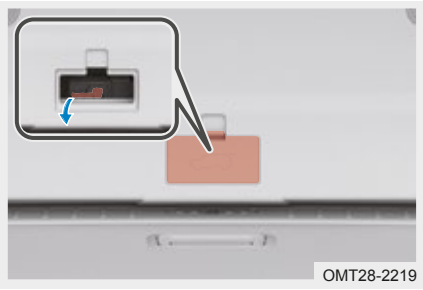
Power back door jam protection function

Positive jam protection: When power back door is opening, if it encounters resistance (such as wall, obstacle), the back door positive jam protection works to avoid vehicle damage.

Reverse jam protection: When power back door is closing, if it encounters resistance (such as children, luggage), the back door reverse jam protection works to avoid child injury and vehicle damage.

⚠ WARNING
Although the power back door is equipped with jam protection function, do not activate jam protection function on purpose to avoid accidental injury.

Back Door Emergency Opening



Back door cannot be opened when battery (12 V) is depleted or under similar conditions. In this case, the back door can be opened with back door stand-by device switch (stop the vehicle as safely as possible if condition permits).

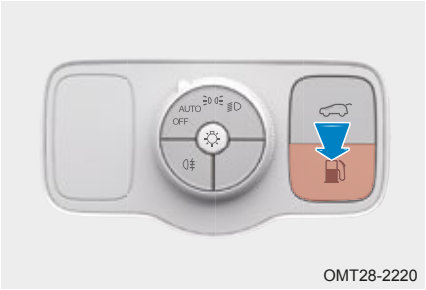
Step 1: Fold the rear seatback;

Step 2: Get in the rear of vehicle and open stand-by device cover;

Step 3: Press down the stand-by device switch with hand, release it, and then push the back door to open it.

3-18. Fuel Tank Cap

Electric Fuel Tank Cap



OMT28-2220

Step 1: Switch vehicle to power off state, long press " ⛽ " button and instrument cluster displays "It is ready to refuel, please refuel" message, and fuel tank cap is unlocked after pressure relief is completed;

OMT28-2221

Step 2: After fuel tank cap is unlocked, push fuel tank cap, it will pop up;

OMT28-2222

Step 3: Turn the fuel filler door counterclockwise;

Step 4: After refueling, turn fuel filler cap clockwise until a "click" sound is heard.

Step 5: Turn fuel tank cap to correct position and press to close it.

READ

- After the fuel tank cap is closed, it will be locked again within 30 seconds.
- After fuel tank cap unlocks, if it is not opened within 10 minutes, the cap will lock again.
- Fuel may pollute environment. Therefore, the sprayed fuel should be collected and disposed by a professional.

⚠ CAUTION

- Never add diesel to fuel tank.
- After fuel filler cap is tightened firmly, loose your hand and the cap will turn slightly in the opposite direction. This is normal.
- To prevent damage to the cap, apply force only in the direction of rotation. Do not pull or pry the cap.
- A slight whooshing sound may be heard when the fuel tank cap is opened, this is normal.
- When freezing at low temperature, after the vehicle arming is deactivated, tap fuel tank cap and then fuel tank cap opens. It is normal phenomenon.
- If fuel overflows during refueling, wipe it off immediately to avoid damage to vehicle paint surface.
- During driving, if fuel tank cap is not closed, drive vehicle to a safe area and stop it, then close the cap again.
- If the vehicle arming is not deactivated, never push fuel tank cap with a strong force as this may cause damage related components of fuel tank cap.

⚠ WARNING

- If the fuel filler door is not tightened in place, it may cause the engine malfunction light comes on.
- Do not inhale vaporized fuel, as the fuel contains substances that are harmful for the health.
- Before refueling, switch vehicle to power off state and close all doors and windows.
- Make sure that the fuel filler door is tightened securely, to prevent accident caused by fuel spillage.
- Do not attempt to continue to refuel after the fuel gun is automatically turned off! Otherwise, the fuel tank may be too full, causing fuel to overflow from the fuel tank, which can easily cause fire, explosion and serious injury.
- Do not remove the fuel filler door quickly when opening it. In hot weather, if cap is removed suddenly, high-pressed fuel vapor may be ejected from the filler neck and cause personal injury.
- After exiting the vehicle and before opening the fuel tank cap, touch an unpainted metal surface to discharge any static electricity. It is important to discharge static electricity before refueling, because sparks resulting from static electricity can cause fuel vapors to ignite while refueling.
- Because gasoline is extremely flammable, smoking and phone calls are prohibited in the gas station area, and there must be no other sparks or open flames.

DRIVING VEHICLE

4-1. Before Driving Vehicle

Inspection and Preparation Before Driving 166

Vehicle Power-on 166

Vehicle Power-off 167

4-2. Steering System

Electric Power Steering System (EPS) 168

4-3. Brake System

Electric Parking Brake System (EPB) 170

Auto Hold System (AUTO HOLD) 172

Foot Brake 173

4-4. Transmission

Automatic Transmission 175

Column Shift Switch 176

4-5. Intelligent Timely All-wheel-drive System (AWD)

Intelligent Timely All-wheel-drive System (If Equipped) 177

Drive Mode 178

4-6. Airbag

Airbag 184

4-1. Before Driving Vehicle

Inspection and Preparation Before Driving

Step 1: Check surroundings of vehicle before getting in;

Step 2: Adjust seat angle, head restraint height and steering wheel angle;

Step 3: Adjust angles of the inside and outside rear view mirrors;

Step 4: Fasten the seat belts;

Step 5: Confirm that the parking brake is applied and gear position is in P;

Step 6: With vehicle powered on, check if malfunction indicator and other indicators on meter are normal; if they are abnormal, please contact authorized service station for inspection and repair immediately;

Step 7: Carry smart key on your person or put it in vehicle, so that it can be detected normally; Depress brake pedal to start vehicle, and "READY" green indicator on instrument cluster remains on.

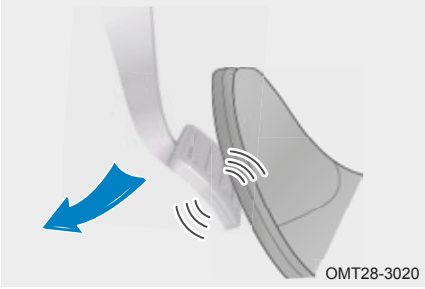
Vehicle Power-on

Normal power-on

The driver performs door unlocking operation, opens the driver door, and the vehicle is automatically powered on.

⚠ CAUTION
After vehicle is powered on, do not use electrical appliances of vehicle for a long period of time. When low battery is prompted, charge in time or use engine to charge by starting vehicle, otherwise the vehicle may not start due to power battery loss. When vehicle fails to start due to serious loss of power battery, it can be restarted by connecting the charging gun for charging. If it still cannot be started, please contact authorized service station.

Normal starting



With vehicle powered on, carry the smart key on your person and enter the vehicle, depress brake pedal to start vehicle, and "READY" green indicator on instrument cluster remains on.

READ

When vehicle is in READY state, the motor is silent, make sure that the shift lever is shifted to P before leaving or locking vehicle.

Starting in emergency

When smart key battery is low or signal is seriously interfered, the vehicle cannot be started. Start according to following steps:

OMT28-3021

Lay smart key in auxiliary fascia console storage box with front side facing up (as shown in figure), depress brake pedal to start vehicle, and "READY" green indicator on instrument cluster remains on.

CAUTION

- Avoid engine idling for a long time as much as possible.
- Do not run cold engine at high speed or under high load (It is normal that the engine runs at high speed when the power battery of vehicle is depleted and vehicle is started in Sport mode).

Vehicle Power-off

Normal power-off

OMT28-3022

Method 1: With vehicle powered on, driver seat not occupied, four doors closed, and gear position in P, perform vehicle locking operation, and the vehicle is powered off.

Method 2: With vehicle in READY state, driver door open, driver seat not occupied, gear position in P, turn the vehicle to power-on state, close the four doors, and perform vehicle locking operation, the vehicle is powered off.

OMT28-3023

Method 3: With vehicle powered on or in READY state, gear position in P, click " OFF " button on quick menu, the vehicle is powered off. The next time the driver uses vehicle, it is not possible to automatically power on the vehicle, directly depress brake pedal to start vehicle, and " READY " green indicator on instrument cluster remains on.

Automatic power-off

With vehicle powered on, driver seat not occupied, four doors closed, and gear position in P, the vehicle is powered off automatically after parking for 90 minutes.

⚠ WARNING

- Do not touch high temperature components (such as engine, exhaust pipe, radiator) immediately after engine has just stopped, otherwise, burns may occur.
- It is forbidden to park on dry leaves, hay or other flammable materials or allow the vehicle to idle for a long time. When engine is running or the vehicle is just stopped, high temperature of exhaust pipe may cause fire.

4-2. Steering System

Electric Power Steering System (EPS)

Electric power steering system uses torque generated by motor as power source of steering system, instead of assisting method using in general vehicle, that is, hydraulic pump is driven by engine.

Electric power steering system self-learning

After the vehicle battery (12 V) is powered off and reconnecting it (12 V) or starting vehicle, due to the initialization of electric steering system angle, " " yellow indicator on instrument cluster blinks, turn the steering wheel left and right to the limit position to complete the angle reset, and the " " yellow indicator on instrument cluster turns off.

⚠ CAUTION

- Frequent handling and rotation of steering wheel over long periods of time may damage the mechanism in EPS system.
- It is forbidden to turn the steering wheel left and right frequently and quickly at idle speed to prevent the system from overheating. If the system is overheating, heavy steering will occur, which is normal. Stop turning the steering wheel and switch vehicle to OFF state until the system cools down.

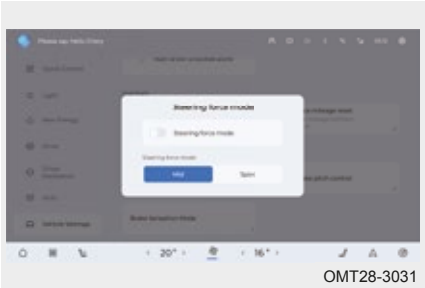
Electric power steering system indicator

When there is a fault, "⚠" red indicator on instrument cluster remains on.

⚠ WARNING

After electric power steering system is disabled, although the vehicle still has the conventional steering capability, it should be driven with caution. At this time, please go to authorized service station for inspection and repair as soon as possible.

Steering power mode


OMT28-3031

With vehicle in READY state, turn on Steering Force Related Driving Mode through Audio System - Vehicle Center - Vehicle Settings, and steering force mode (Mid/Sport) can be set separately after turning off.

4-3. Brake System

Electric Parking Brake System (EPB)

EPB system is a technology that integrates temporary braking during driving and long-time braking after stopping, and implements parking brake by electronic control. This technology replaces the traditional hand-brake.

Usage methods

OMT28-3040

EPB operation conditions

Vehicle is in READY state, driver seat belt is fastened, driver door is closed, and brake pedal is depressed.

EPB ON

When EPB conditions are met, click " Ⓟ " button on quick menu, and " Ⓟ " red indicator on instrument cluster remains on, indicating that EPB function has been turned on.

EPB function is automatically applied when the vehicle is powered off or the shift lever is shifted to P.

EPB OFF

When EPB is turned on, click " Ⓟ " button on quick menu, and " Ⓟ " red indicator on instrument cluster goes off, indicating that EPB function has been turned off.

Releasing parking brake automatically

With vehicle stopped on level ground, driver seat belt fastened and driver door closed, when the shift lever is shifted from P to D or R, the EPB is released automatically, and " Ⓟ " red indicator on instrument cluster goes off.

With vehicle stopped on a slope, driver seat belt fastened and driver door closed, when the shift lever is shifted from P to D or R, depress accelerator pedal deeply, and parking brake can be released automatically only when driving force is greater than slipping force.

READ
When towing vehicle, it is necessary to release parking brake, and the shift lever needs to be shifted into N.

⚠ CAUTION

- EPB and AUTO HOLD cannot be used when vehicle battery (12 V) is depleted. Jumper cables can be used to start.
- While depressing brake pedal for releasing or applying parking brake, brake pedal may push slightly up or down, just depress the brake tightly.
- When performing automatic releasing of electric parking brake, fasten the driver's seat belt and close the driver door. Failure to do so may cause the automatic releasing conditions of parking brake cannot be satisfied.
- When enabling and releasing electric parking brake, "whooshing" sound may be heard from rear part of vehicle. This is the working sound emitted by parking brake and is normal.
- If vehicle coasts after stopping within a short period of time, system will increase parking brake force automatically to hold it for safety. When parking brake force is increasing, system makes operation sound. This is normal.

⚠ WARNING

To avoid accidental vehicle movement, when stopping or leaving the vehicle, after EPB system operates, the "Ⓟ" red indicator on instrument cluster will go off automatically after coming on for a certain period of time, in this case, check if "Ⓟ" red indicator on instrument cluster remains on to ensure that electric parking brake is applied.

Emergency braking function

If foot brake fails, press transmission P button continuously to forcibly apply brake by parking brake. In process of emergency braking, "Ⓟ" red indicator on instrument cluster flashes. Release the P button to exit emergency braking.

⚠ WARNING

- When emergency braking function is activated, it will drone. This is normal.
- When applying emergency braking, electric parking brake will apply brake at constant deceleration which is deviated from driver's desired deceleration and braking distance will be different.
- Use this function cautiously during normal driving. When driving, passengers should not touch button accidentally. Otherwise, it may cause an accident.
- Emergency braking function can only be used in case of emergency such as foot brake failure or brake pedal stuck. ESP and its components cannot exceed road traction physical limit. Use of the emergency braking function on windy roads, dangerous roads, in heavy traffic or severe weather, may lead to drifting, side slipping or pulling, so please be careful.

Auto Hold System (AUTO HOLD)

Auto hold system is used to prevent vehicle from rolling when vehicle is stationary and starts off.

Usage methods

OMT28-3041

Auto hold operation conditions

Vehicle is in READY state, driver seat belt is fastened, driver door is closed.

Turning on auto hold function

When auto hold conditions are met, click " Ⓐ " button on quick menu, and " Ⓐ " white indicator on instrument cluster remains on, indicating that auto hold function has been turned on.

Activating auto hold function

When auto hold function is turned on, depress brake pedal, the gear position is in forward driving gear and changes to stationary state from movement, auto hold function is activated and " Ⓐ " green indicator on instrument cluster remains on.

Depress brake pedal when vehicle is stationary, and the auto hold function is turned on at the same time and the condition of auto hold is met, then auto hold function is activated, " Ⓐ " green indicator on instrument cluster remains on.

Turning off auto hold function

When auto hold function is turned on, click " Ⓐ " button on quick menu to turn off the auto hold function, " Ⓐ " white indicator on instrument cluster goes off, indicating that auto hold function has been exited.

When auto hold function is activated, click " Ⓐ " button on quick menu to turn off the auto hold function, " Ⓐ " green indicator on the instrument cluster goes off, indicating that auto hold function has been exited and switched to EPB function.

Auto hold release function

Way to release auto hold is the same as that of electric parking brake, including manual release and automatic release.

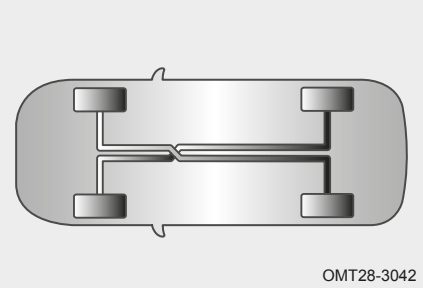
⚠ CAUTION

- Turn off auto hold function before driving into car wash.
- Always park vehicle correctly according to safety regulations and take care to avoid hurt yourself and pedestrians.
- If accelerator pedal is depressed very slowly, auto release of auto hold delays. This is normal.
- When auto hold function is activated, open driver door or unfasten driver seat belt, auto hold will switch to parking brake function.
- When auto hold function is enabled, open driver door or unfasten driver side seat belt to exit auto hold function, close the driver door or fasten the seat belt again to activate the auto hold function again.
- After auto hold function is enabled, the auto hold system will automatically park the vehicle after the vehicle comes to a complete stop from motion state by foot brake, but the gear position is still in D. It is recommended to shift to N for a short time parking and shift to P for a long time parking.

⚠ WARNING

To avoid vehicle accidentally moving, in the state of auto hold, confirm the shift position before you depressing accelerator pedal to start.

Foot Brake



The brake system adopts X type arrangement, double circuit brake system; The system is a hydraulic system with two independent subsystems. If one of the subsystems fails, the other system can still perform brake function. However, brake pedal depressing force will be greater than usual as well as the braking distance, and the brake system malfunction indicator remains on.

⚠ WARNING

Do not drive vehicle under conditions in which only one brake system works. Please contact authorized service station as soon as possible.

Brake system indicator

When there is a fault, "(!)" red indicator on instrument cluster remains on.

⚠ WARNING
When there is a fault in brake system, check the brake fluid level, add brake fluid when the level is lower than MIN line. If reason is unclear, please contact authorized service station immediately.

Precautions for brake system

1. If there is continuous shudder or vibration being transferred to the steering wheel during braking, please contact authorized service station immediately for inspection and repair.
2. When driving downhill, shift to a low gear to make full use of engine braking effect and avoid continuous use of brakes. Failure to do so may cause the brakes to overheat and braking distance will become longer, and the brakes may even temporarily lose its effectiveness in a serious case.
3. The brake system will make some noises sometimes during operation, which is normal, but if you hear metal friction or a whistling sounds over a period of time, the brake linings may be seriously worn, and you must contact a authorized service station for replacement.
4. The new brake linings must be break-in to reach optimal brake effect. Braking effect in the first 200 km is not optimal. In this case, depress brake pedal more firmly to compensate braking effect.
5. A wet brake may cause abnormal vehicle deceleration or pulling to one side when braking. Depress brake pedal slightly to test effectiveness of brakes. After driving through deep water, keep a safe vehicle speed and depress brake pedal slightly until braking function is restored.
6. Wear condition of brake lining depends largely on its working conditions and driving style. For vehicles mainly used in city traffic, frequent starting and stopping will make working condition of brake lining worsen. Therefore, please go to authorized service station according to specified maintenance mileage to check thickness of brake linings or replace it as needed.

4-4. Transmission

Automatic Transmission

The automatic transmission belongs to the electronically controlled automatic transmission.

OMT28-3050

Fully depress brake pedal and shift the shift lever to D; Release the parking brake manually or automatically and release the brake pedal, and then drive the vehicle slowly.

⚠ WARNING

- Never tow the vehicle for a long distance or at high speed. Raise drive wheels or disconnect propeller shaft when towing.
- When shift lever is in N, make sure parking brake is applied or brake pedal is depressed, otherwise an accident may occur.

Fail-safe mode

When malfunction occurs in transmission system, fail-safe mode will be automatically activated, at the same time " ⚙ " yellow indicator on instrument cluster remains on; transmission cannot operate normally, and vehicle will slow down and be driven at low speed.

⚠ CAUTION

Long distance driving is not allowed in fail-safe mode. Otherwise, transmission will be damaged, please contact authorized service station for inspection and repair immediately.

Column Shift Switch

OMT28-3051

P gear: When the vehicle is stationary, depress the brake pedal and the shift lever is not in P. Press the button on the right side of column shift switch to shift the shift lever to P.

R gear: When the vehicle is stationary, depress brake pedal, move up to the top and shift the shift lever to R.

D gear: When the vehicle is stationary, depress brake pedal, move down to the bottom and shift the shift lever to D.

N gear: When the vehicle is stationary, depress brake pedal and shift the shift lever to N by following operations.

1. When the gear position is in D/P, push up column shift once to shift to N.
2. When the gear position is in R, push down column shift once to shift to N.

Gear position introduction

Gear Position	Function
P gear	Park position. The vehicle can be started.
R gear	Reverse position. Back-up lights will come on and parking assist system will operate.
N gear	Neutral position. It is used for short time idling stop.
D gear	Forward driving position. Automatically shifts up and down among forward drive gears according to engine load and vehicle speed.

⚠ CAUTION

- Do not coast vehicle in N. Otherwise, the transmission will be damaged.
- Never shift in P position when the vehicle is not stopped steadily. This may lead to abnormal sound or damage to the transmission.
- Do not shift the shift lever out of D while the vehicle is moving forward. Otherwise, the transmission may be damaged seriously.
- Do not shift the shift lever out of R while the vehicle is moving backward. Otherwise, the transmission may be damaged seriously.
- When shifting the shift lever out of P, it is necessary to depress the brake pedal first to stop the vehicle steadily, and then perform shifting among each gear position. Otherwise shifting mechanism will be damaged.
- When vehicle malfunctions occur due to insufficient battery (12 V), even depressing the brake pedal, shifting out of P is impossible, please contact authorized service station immediately for inspection and repair.
- When the vehicle is parked on a slope, the parking brake must be applied first, and then the shift lever is shifted into P. After starting on a slope, first shift the shift lever out of P, then release parking brake for driving.

4-5. Intelligent Timely All-wheel-drive System (AWD)

Intelligent Timely All-wheel-drive System (If Equipped)

The vehicle is equipped with 7 driving modes: standard/sport/ECO/snow/muddy/sand/off-road, and 4WD system operates intelligently in all modes to automatically switch between 2WD and 4WD instantly. You can also set the driving mode manually according to judgment for road conditions, off-road mode will help you get out of trouble in complicated road conditions.

⚠ CAUTION

- When electronic stability control system is turned off, even if snow/muddy/sand/off-road mode is selected, the vehicle skid limiting ability and getting out of trouble ability is reduced.
- Do not drive the vehicle in sand or muddy roads for a long time or let tires in slippery state for a long time, overheat protection function of 4WD system may be triggered under these operations, " AWD " yellow indicator on instrument cluster remains on, exit 4WD state and switch to 2WD to protect drive train; Please stop the vehicle to dissipate heat as soon as possible under the condition of safety and wait for a few minutes until the overheat protection function is exited (it is recommended to wait for a few minutes after the alarm is eliminated, so that the temperature of the 4WD system can be lower, and the performance can be better restored) before entering 4WD system again. Please contact the authorized service station if the alarm cannot be eliminated for a long time.

Intelligent Timely All-wheel-drive System Indicator

For temporary malfunction, " AWD " yellow indicator on instrument cluster remains on; For permanent malfunction, " AWD " red indicator on instrument cluster remains on, instrument cluster displays "4WD system is malfunctioning, please contact service station" at the same time.

READ

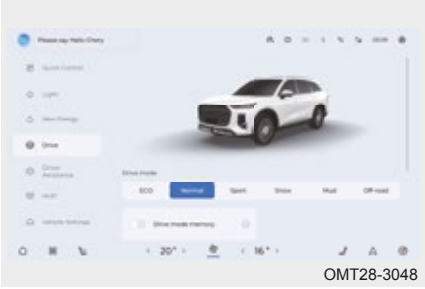
- When 4WD system is malfunctioning, electronic stability control system will sound an alarm and downgrade, only ABS is retained.
- When " AWD " yellow indicator on instrument cluster remains on, the vehicle will be driven with 2WD state to protect your normal driving.

Drive Mode

Drive mode

OMT28-3047

Turn vehicle power to ON mode, and the vehicle is stationary or drives safely. Click drive mode button (NORMAL/SPORT/ECO/SNOW/MUD/SAND/OFF-ROAD) on quick menu to switch drive mode; And the corresponding mode indicator on instrument cluster will come on and prompt you that drive mode is switched successfully.



OMT28-3048

Turn vehicle power to ON mode and the vehicle is stationary or drives safely. Set Drive mode (NORMAL/SPORT/ECO/SNOW/MUD/SAND/OFF-ROAD) through Audio System - Vehicle Center - Drive; And the corresponding mode indicator on instrument cluster will come on and prompt you that drive mode is switched successfully.

OMT28-3045

Turn vehicle power to ON mode, and the vehicle is stationary or drives safely, turn the drive mode knob to cycle through the drive modes; And the corresponding mode icon on instrument cluster will come on and accompanied by voice reminder to prompt you that drive mode is switched successfully.

Turn vehicle power to ON mode, and the vehicle is stationary or drives safely, turn the drive mode knob, audio head unit pops up drive mode screen, manually select the drive mode; And the corresponding mode icon on instrument cluster will come on and accompanied by voice reminder to prompt you that drive mode is switched successfully.

READ
The driving mode memory can be turned on/off through Audio System - Vehicle Center - Vehicle Settings (only used to Standard/ECO/Sport/Snow/Mud/Sand/Off-road).

Driving mode introduction

The following information will help you understand the use of different driving modes, and you can select according to different road conditions.

Drive Mode	Function
Standard	Normal mode combines vehicle power and economy and is suitable for all kinds of roads.
ECO	ECO mode improves the fuel economy of the vehicle and is suitable for the flat and hard roads such as urban roads and paved roads.
Sport	Sport mode improves vehicle power and realizes higher response speed and driving experience. It is suitable for wide and flat roads with few vehicles (such as motorway).
Snow	Snow mode is suitable for hard but smooth road surface, including snow, ice, grass, gravel road, etc.
Mud	Mud mode is suitable for muddy and uneven road surfaces with a smooth and shallow mud layer or rut.

Drive Mode	Function
Sand	Sand mode improves the acceleration performance, enhancing the vehicle trafficability. Suitable for sand and the vehicle out of trouble.
Off-road	Off-road mode improves the acceleration performance, enhancing the vehicle trafficability. Suitable for mountain off-road and the vehicle out of trouble.

READ

- In snow/muddy/sand/off-road mode, idling stop-start system will be turned off by default.
- When windows and moon roof are open, rainfall may drench the interior equipment and cause damage to the vehicle. Always keep windows and moon roof closed during off-road driving
- ECO/snow/muddy/sand mode corresponding to adaptive cruise control system can accelerate the vehicle gently, and sport/sand/off-road mode corresponding to adaptive cruise control system can accelerate the vehicle faster.

Before off-road driving

Before off-road driving, it is necessary to learn how to operate the vehicle in different off-road situations and how to safely pass through uneven off-road areas. Off-road driving requires different ability and behavior than driving on the road. The safety of driver and passenger depends on knowledge, skill and caution of driver.

⚠ WARNING

- Off-road driving always avoids bias driving on slopes.
- Always make the speed and driving style consistent with the current off-road situation.
- Carefully explore the route on foot before driving into an unknown off-road area.
- Do not drive too fast (especially when turning) or perform extreme driving operation.
- Always match the speed and driving style to load, visibility, off-road and weather conditions.
- Be sure to drive at the appropriate speed according to the actual off-road conditions, road conditions, traffic and weather.
- In the event of a turnover, a person who unfastens seat belt may be more likely to die than a person fastening seat belt.
- Luggage and other items being transported on the roof will further raise the center of gravity, increasing the risk of turnover.
- A vehicle with a high center of gravity has a greater risk of turnover than a "normal" passenger vehicle that is not suitable for off-road driving during driving.
- Always straighten front wheels if the vehicle is lifted. If the vehicle contacts with the road in an impact manner, the vehicle may roll over.
- Cruise control system is used for road driving and is not suitable for off-road driving at all, the vehicle may even be dangerous if the system is used for off-road driving.
- Always perform off-road driving with special care and foresight. Excessive speed or mishandling may result in serious injury and damage to the vehicle.
- Do not drive over river levee, ramp or slope at excessive speed. This may cause the vehicle to lift, making it impossible to turn and lose control of the vehicle.

⚠ WARNING

- Do not choose an unsafe route or put driver and occupants in danger due to adventure. When there are doubts about the safety of a route, go back and choose another route.
- Even if it seems easy for off-road driving, it can actually be difficult and dangerous, and may put the driver and occupants at risk. It is best to explore off-road area on foot beforehand.
- Off-road area that does not seem dangerous can be fraught with danger. Pits, ditches, deep pits, deep valleys, obstacles, shallow banks, and loose muddy ground are often not easily identified and are completely or partially covered by water, grass, or tree branches scattered on the ground. Explore off-road area on foot if necessary.
- Do not leave the vehicle through a door facing downhill if the vehicle is stopped sideways on a slope. The center of gravity created by the vehicle and its load (occupants and load) may shift, causing the vehicle to roll over and down the slope. Leave the vehicle steadily through the door facing uphill every time.
- Off-road area that does not seem dangerous can be fraught with danger. Pits, ditches, deep pits, deep valleys, obstacles, shallow banks, and loose muddy ground are often not easily identified and are completely or partially covered by water, grass, or tree branches scattered on the ground. When driving through this off-road area, causing accidents, serious injuries and vehicle failures.

Stuck vehicle

The vehicle may continue to sink if incorrect operation is performed when repeatedly driving back and forth to get out of stuck, at this time, ask for external rescue.

■ When wheel does not rotate smoothly

Carefully dig out all wheels and then make sure that no other parts are buried in the sand. Gear position is in R position, carefully move backward along the original lane. If the wheel does not operate, place tree branch, foot mat or sackcloth under the front part of tires to improve ground adhesion and drive force.

■ Repeatedly drive back and forth to get out of stuck

Straighten the steering wheel, move the vehicle backward until wheels start to slip. Immediately shift to 1st gear and drive forward until wheels start to slip again. Repeatedly perform this backward and forward driving operation until rotations of wheels are enough to move the vehicle backward and forward repeatedly to get out of stuck.

⚠ WARNING

- Do not allow wheels to slip for a long time, doing so may cause the vehicle to continue to sink;
- Do not stay in front of or behind the vehicle, especially when trying to drive a stuck vehicle.
- If a stuck vehicle suddenly moves, it may run over someone who stays in front of or behind the vehicle.
- A slipping wheel may cause rocks, branches, pieces of wood or other objects under the wheel to accelerate sharply, which could cause fatal injuries.

After off-road driving

1. Turn off off-road mode.
2. Remove the towing eyelet and tire chains if necessary.
3. Remove heavy dirt from radiator grille and vehicle deck board.
4. Check the engine compartment and check if the dirt affects engine operation.
5. Clean turn signal light, lighting devices, license plate and all window glasses.
6. Check tires, shock strut and axles for damage, and remove large dirt, stones and foreign objects embedded in the tire pattern.
7. Check the vehicle deck board and remove all objects stuck in brakes, wheels, chassis, exhaust devices and engine, such as branches, leaves or wooden blocks. If damage or leakage is found, please contact the authorized service station immediately.

⚠ WARNING

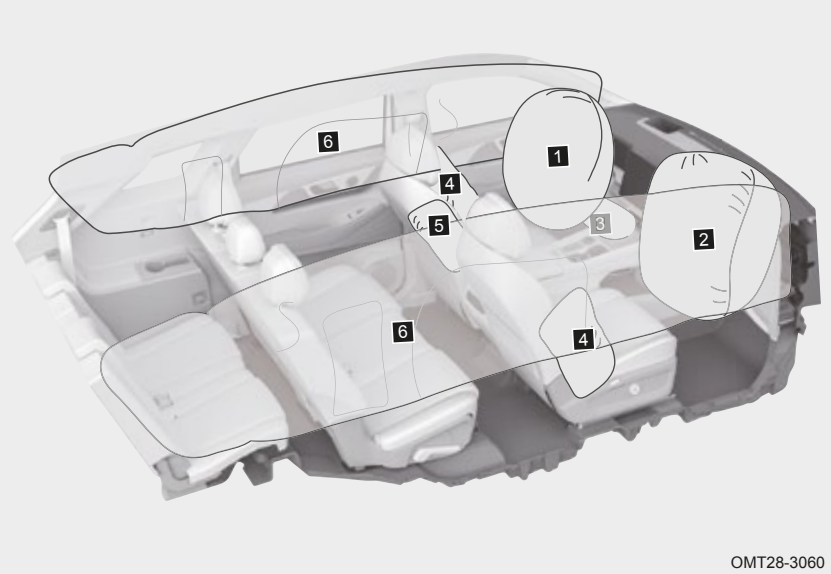
- Do not drive if there are objects stuck in the deck board, brakes, wheels, chassis, exhaust devices or engine.
- Flammable materials such as dry leaves or branches may catch fire when they come into contact with hot components. A fire may cause serious injury.
- Objects stuck under the vehicle deck board are dangerous. After each off-road driving, it is necessary to check if there is any object stuck under the vehicle deck board.
- The stuck objects may cause damage to fuel pipes, brakes, seals, and other chassis components. It may lead to accidents and cause the vehicle to run out of control.

4-6. Airbag

Airbag

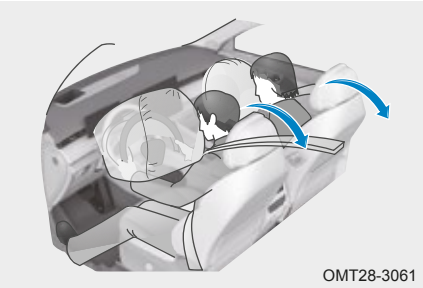
In severe frontal/side collision, the airbags deploy and work together with seat belts to protect occupants in vehicle. Airbags can distribute impact force more evenly to upper parts of occupants' body, so their body move slowly until stop, thus minimizing injuries to occupants and driver. Automatically unlock doors, illuminate interior lights, and turn on hazard light after the airbag is deployed.

Airbag position

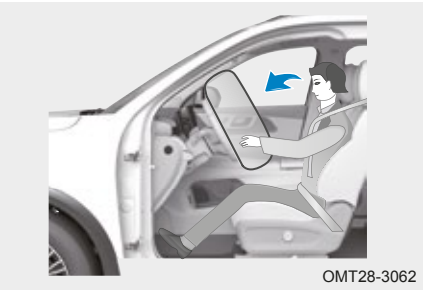


1 Driver Frontal Airbag	2 Front Passenger Frontal Airbag	3 Driver Knee Airbag (If Equipped)
4 Front Seat Side Airbag (If Equipped)	5 Center Airbag (If Equipped)	6 Curtain Side Airbag (If Equipped)

Using airbag correctly


OMT28-3061

In an event of a severe frontal collision, driver frontal airbag, front passenger frontal airbag and driver knee airbag (If Equipped) work together with seat belts to help reduce injuries to the head or chest of driver and front passenger caused by hitting the interior component. (Front passenger frontal airbag may be activated even if there is no occupant in the front passenger seat).


OMT28-3062

The airbag will deploy only when the collision degree of vehicle reaches the design condition. In some collisions, seat belts are the only protective device. Wearing a seat belt during a collision can help reduce the risk of hitting objects inside the vehicle or being thrown out of the vehicle, and effectively protect the driver and occupants. Therefore, all people in vehicle should wear seat belts correctly. Airbags and seat belts can provide protection only for adults, they are not designed to protect infants and young children.

The airbag will generate considerable force at the moment of deployment. In order to avoid injury caused by deployment of the airbag, the driver and occupants must adopt the correct sitting posture, correctly wear the seat belt and adjust their seat position, never get too close to the airbag (such as sitting on the edge of the seat or tilting the body forward). For vehicles equipped with front seat side airbag (If Equipped) and curtain shield side airbag (If Equipped), ensure that the upper limbs are at a sufficient distance from the side of the vehicle to avoid injury during deployment.

⚠ CAUTION

- The related parts of airbag will generate heat after deploying. Do not touch the related parts of airbag immediately to avoid injury.
- The airbag is a non-reusable device. Once the airbag is deployed, the related parts of airbag must be replaced.
- If the areas where the airbags are stored (such as the steering wheel and instrument panel) are damaged or cracked, please go to authorized service station for replacement as soon as possible.
- The deployment and contraction of the airbag is completed in a short period of time, and cannot protect against the impact of a second impact that may occur subsequently.
- The airbag is neither designed for rear collision, slight frontal collision, nor for vehicle rolling over, and it does not work when the vehicle is braked in an emergency.
- The airbags release some smoke and dust after deploying. For people with asthma or other respiratory problems, respiratory system could be stimulated. Therefore, all people in vehicle should get out as soon as possible, or open windows to breathe fresh air and seek medical treatment if necessary.

⚠ WARNING

- The seat cover should not block side airbag (If Equipped) during using, as in the event of an accident, the side airbag (If Equipped) will not pop up after inflating, which will reduce protection for passengers.
- A soft, dry cloth or cloth dampened with water must be used to clean the airbag area. Avoid any fluid entering into the airbag, otherwise it may seriously affect the normal function of airbag.
- If there is water in vehicle, the airbag may be damaged. Even if there is no collision at this time, it may cause the airbag to deploy accidentally. Turn off the engine immediately and disconnect the negative battery (12 V) cable. Do not try to start the engine. Please contact authorized service station for inspection and repair immediately.

Airbag indicator

The " " red indicator on instrument cluster remains on when it is malfunctioning, which is used to alert the driver that airbag is malfunctioning. Please go to authorized service station for inspection and repair as soon as possible.

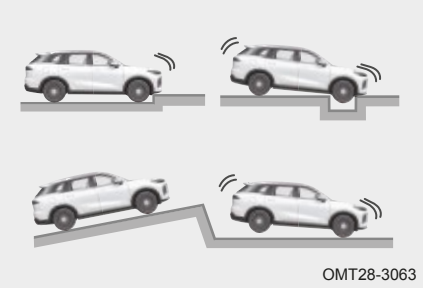
Airbag operating conditions

Deployment conditions of the airbag do not depend on driving speed of vehicle, but depend on the object, collision direction and vehicle deceleration conditions due to a collision. Airbags may be not deployed when impact of

collision is absorbed or dispersed into the body; However, the airbag can sometimes operate depending on the impact condition in an accident. Therefore, deployment conditions of the airbag should not be judged according to the damaged condition of the vehicle.

Even if the airbag is not deployed, a collision may damage the airbag in the vehicle. Airbag may not operate properly if damaged, and it will not be able to protect you and other occupants in the event of another collision, resulting in accidents and personal injuries. In order to ensure that the airbag can deploy properly in an event of collision, please go to authorized service station for inspection and repair as soon as possible.

■ Conditions under which airbag may deploy other than a collision

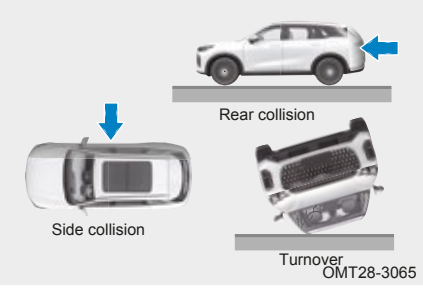


The driver frontal airbag, front passenger frontal airbag, driver knee airbag (If Equipped) may deploy if an impact occurs to the underside of your vehicle.

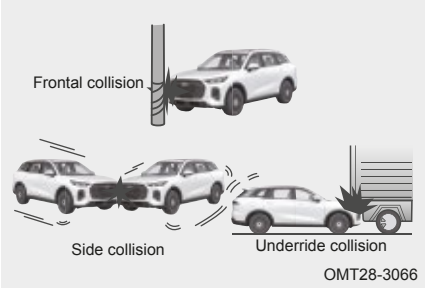
■ Conditions under which airbag may deploy in a collision

Operating conditions: In general, in an event of frontal collision, the driver frontal airbag, front passenger frontal airbag and driver knee airbag (If Equipped) may deploy if the deceleration of vehicle exceeds the designed threshold level.

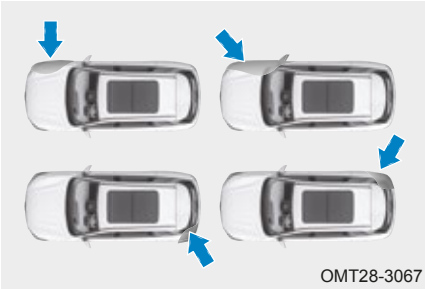
■ Conditions under which airbag may not deploy during a collision



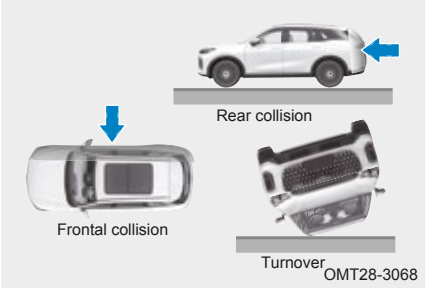
The driver frontal airbag, front passenger frontal airbag and driver knee airbag (If Equipped) may not deploy if the vehicle is involved in a side or rear collision, if it rolls over, or if it is involved in a low-speed frontal collision.



The driver frontal airbag, front passenger frontal airbag and driver knee airbag (If Equipped) may not deploy if the front of vehicle hits a telegraph pole, goes under a truck, or inclined side collision.



The front seat side airbag (If Equipped), curtain side airbag (If Equipped) and center airbag (If Equipped) may not deploy if the vehicle is subjected to a collision from side, the rear part of the rear tire or a side collision at certain angles to the vehicle.



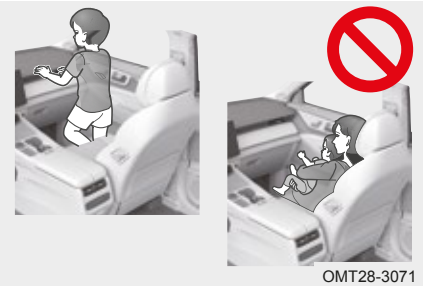
The front seat side airbag (If Equipped), curtain side airbag (If Equipped) and center airbag (If Equipped) may not deploy if the vehicle is subjected to a front or rear collision, turnover or low speed side collision.

Precautions for airbag

There should be no objects on deployment path of airbag. It is forbidden to place anything (such as mobile phone, etc.) between the occupant and the airbag. Never fix or place any object on or near the airbag cover. If there is an object between occupant and airbag, the airbag may not deploy according to designed path, or the airbag may push object into occupant's body, causing serious injury or even death.

OMT28-3070

Do not sit on the edge of the seat or lean against the instrument panel.


OMT28-3071

Do not allow a child to stand in front of the front passenger frontal airbag unit or sit on the knees of front passenger.

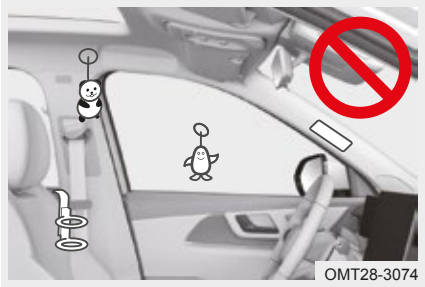
OMT28-3072

Do not lean against the door, A pillar, B pillar or C pillar.

Do not allow anyone to kneel on the passenger seat toward the door or put their heads or hands outside the vehicle.

OMT28-3073

Do not attach anything to or lean anything against the areas such as the instrument panel, steering wheel and lower portion of the instrument panel. These items may be thrown out when driver frontal airbag or front passenger frontal airbag deploys.



Do not attach anything to areas such as the door, windshield glass, side door glass, A pillar, B pillar, C pillar, roof side rail and assist grip.

Do not strike or apply excessive force to the area of airbag components. Otherwise, it may cause airbag malfunction.

Replacement of airbag components

The related parts of the airbag must be replaced 10 years from the date of vehicle purchase. In order to make sure that the airbag can ensure your safety, please always go to authorized service station to replace related parts of the airbag within the specified time.

Make sure that the new owner knows the airbag configuration and the replacement date of airbag in this vehicle when the vehicle is sold.

Modification and disposal of airbag components

Do not dispose of the vehicle or operate the following components without permission of the authorized service station, otherwise accidents and personal injuries may occur:

1. Modification of vehicle suspension system.
2. Modification of vehicle front bumper, etc.
3. Modification of side doors or door protective panel and B-pillar protective panel, etc.
4. Installation, removal, disassembly and repair of airbags.
5. Repair, modification, removal or replacement of steering wheel, instrument cluster, instrument panel and seats.

5-1. Speed Limit Assist System (SLA)

Speed Limit Assist System (SLA) (If Equipped) 193

5-2. Speed Limit System

Cruise Control System (CCS)..... 194

Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) System (If Equipped) 195

Active Speed Limit (ASL) (If Equipped)..... 201

5-3. Lane Assist System

Lane Assist System (If Equipped) 202

Lane Departure Warning (LDW) System 202

Lane Departure Prevention (LDP) (If Equipped) 204

Emergency Lane Keeping (ELK) (If Equipped) 205

5-4. Blind Spot Detection Assist System

Blind Spot Detection Assist System (If Equipped) 207

Door Opening Warning (DOW) System (If Equipped) 209

Rear Collision Warning (RCW) System (If Equipped) 209

Rear Cross Traffic Alert (-RCTA) System (If Equipped) 210

5-5. Driving Safety Assist System

Head Up Display (HUD) (If Equipped)..... 210

Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) 211

Automatic Emergency Braking (AEB) System/ Front Collision Warning (FCW) System (If Equipped) 213

5-6. Intelligent Cruise Control System

Traffic Jam Assist (TJA) System /Integrated Cruise Assist (ICA) System (If Equipped) 216

Intelligent Avoidance System (IES) (If Equipped) 219

5-7. Driver Monitoring System

Driver Monitoring System (DMS) (If Equipped)..... 220

5-8. Parking Assist System

Panoramic View Monitor System (AVM) 221

Parking Radar System 225

5-9. Auto Parking Assist System

Auto Parking Assist System (If Equipped) 227

Auto Parking..... 233

Tracking Reverse 236

5-10. Braking Force Control System

Integrated Braking Force Control System 237

Electronic Stability Control System 238

Hill Descent Control (HDC) System 240

Anti-lock Brake System (ABS) 241

Extended Function 242

5-11. Plug-in Hybrid Electric Vehicle System (PHEV)

Power Battery..... 244

New Energy 247

Energy Recovery Intensity..... 248

Operating Mode 249

Charging Device 255

Charging Method 259

AC Charging Socket Electronic Lock 264

Emergency Unlocking of Electronic Lock (Only for AC Charging) 265

Charging Precautions 265

Safety Warning for Charging..... 267

External Discharging Device (If Equipped)..... 268

External Discharging Method 268

Discharging Precautions ... 271

Safety Warning for Discharging..... 271

Low-speed Pedestrian Warning Sound..... 272

5-1. Speed Limit Assist System (SLA)

Speed Limit Assist System (SLA) (If Equipped)

SLA detects speed limit sign information on road ahead and combines the information with speed limit information of navigation system, and use the final speed limit information to remind the driver to pay attention to the various current road speed limit regulations in the form of image, sound, etc., to keep legal speed and observe local traffic laws.

After SLA detects speed limit sign information on road ahead and combines the information with speed limit information of navigation system, " ⊖ " indicator on instrument cluster comes on, if the speed exceeds current speed limit for 5 km/h, speed limit value flashes, prompt sound will sound 1 time.

Function limit

■ SLA may not be able to recognize in following situations:

1. Faded signs.
2. Signs on curve.
3. Rotated or damaged signs.
4. High signs on highway.
5. Signs that is covered fully or partly, or that the position can not be found easily.
6. Signs covered by frost, snow, dust fully or partly.

READ

SLA can be set in audio system. For details, refer to "Audio System".

WARNING

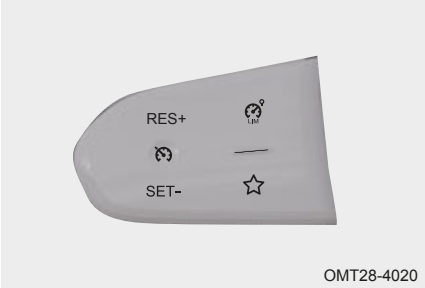
- SLA based on camera function is affected by weather and light, so the function is not appropriate for all conditions.
- Speed limit assist system is only a driving assistance function and cannot completely replace driver's vision. Obstruced cameras or radar, imcorrect or missing speed limit information on the map, difficult road conditions and bad weather may all prevent this feature from working properly. In any case, drivers should take the initiative to pay attention to their own speed and road speed limit, and control their driving speed.

5-2. Speed Limit System

Cruise Control System (CCS)

Cruise control system can maintain the speed set by driver.

Cruise control system button



Cruise button " ": Turn on/off cruise control system.

Active speed limit button " LIM ": Turn on/off active speed limit.

"RES+" button: Resume cruise control system and adjust speed value.

" SET- " button: Set cruise control system, active speed limit and adjust speed value.

READ
" RES+ ", " SET- " button is shared button for cruise control system and active speed limit.

Usage methods

■ Entering cruise control system

With vehicle in READY status, press " " button to enter pre-cruising state, " CRUISE CANCEL --- km/h " indicator on instrument cluster flashes; when vehicle speed is within 40 - 150 km/h, press " SET- " button again to set current vehicle speed as cruise speed and enter cruising state, " CRUISE ON 45 km/h " indicator on instrument cluster remains on.

■ Exiting cruise control system

Press " " button to exit cruising state, and " CRUISE ON 45 km/h " indicator on instrument cluster goes off.

During cruising, press " LIM " button to exit cruise function, and " CRUISE ON 45 km/h " indicator on instrument cluster goes off; Enter pre-speed limit state, " LIMIT --- km/h " indicator on instrument cluster remains on.

Exit cruising state and enter pre-cruising state when brake pedal is depressed or sudden braking is applied during cruising, " CRUISE CANCEL --- km/h " indicator on instrument cluster flashes. When vehicle speed is not lower than 40 km/h, press " RES+ " button, vehicle accelerates until it returns to the cruise state before exiting cruising.

■ Speed setting

Short press " RES+ " button during cruising process, set vehicle speed will increase by 1 km/h.

Long press " RES+ " button during cruising process, set vehicle speed will increase continuously.

Short press " SET- " button during cruising process, set vehicle speed will decrease by 1 km/h.

Long press " SET- " button during cruising process, set vehicle speed will decrease continuously.

Function limit

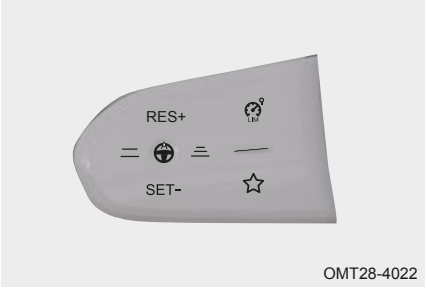
■ In the following conditions, do not use cruise control system, failure to do may cause an accident as well as injury and death.

1. During emergency towing.
2. In heavy traffic.
3. On winding roads.
4. On roads with sharp curves.
5. On slippery roads, such as roads covered with rain, ice or snow.
6. Vehicle speed may exceed set speed when driving up and down on a steep slope.

Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) System (If Equipped)

Adaptive cruise control system can maintain the speed set by driver and can also follow the vehicle at a set safe distance.

Adaptive cruise control system buttons



OMT28-4022

Main button " ":

Activate/exit function: When ACC is in pre-cruising or cruising state, short press main button to activate/exit ACC;

Mode switching function: When ACC is in pre-cruising or cruising state, or TJA/ICA is in pre-activating or activated state, long press the main button to switch between ACC and TJA/ICA modes.

Active speed limit button " LIM ": Turn on/off active speed limit.

" ": Following clearance increasing adjustment.

" ": Following clearance decreasing adjustment.

"RES+" button: Resume the adaptive cruise control system and adjust speed value.

"SET-" button: Enter adaptive cruise control system, active speed limit and adjust speed value.

READ
"RES+","SET-" button is shared button for adaptive cruise control system and active speed limit.

Adaptive cruise control system activation conditions

The following conditions must be met at the same time to activate adaptive cruise control system:

1. Gear position is in D position.
2. Front compartment cover is not opened.
3. Active speed limit is not turned on.
4. Driver door is closed.
5. Driver seat belt is fastened.
6. Parking brake is not applied.
7. Anti-lock brake system is not activated.
8. Electronic stability program system is turned on.
9. Electronic stability program system is not activated.
10. Hill descent control system is not turned on.
11. Brake pedal is not depressed (during driving).
12. Vehicle speed is higher than 15 km/h or an object is recognized in front.

Usage methods

■ Entering adaptive cruise control system

With vehicle in READY status, when the activation conditions are met, it will enter the pre-cruising state automatically. " " gray indicator on instrument cluster remains on;

Method 1: In pre-cruising state, when vehicle speed is higher than 15 km/h, press "SET-" or " " button to set current speed as cruise speed and enter cruising state, " " green indicator on instrument cluster remains on.

Method 2: In pre-cruising state, when vehicle recognizes the target ahead and vehicle speed is lower than 15 km/h, press "SET-" or " " button to set 15 km/h as cruise speed and enter cruising state, " " green indicator on instrument cluster remains on.

Method 3: In current ignition cycle, press "RES+" button after exiting ACC, set the last cruising set speed and enter cruising state, " " green indicator on instrument cluster remains on.

READ

- ACC exits when turning on active speed limit.
- When there is a vehicle in front of your vehicle in the same lane, and driving speed is not higher than vehicle set speed, ACC system will control the vehicle to follow vehicle ahead.
- When there is no vehicle in front in the same lane, or there is a vehicle in front in the same lane and driving speed is higher than set speed, your vehicle will drive at the set speed.
- When applying parking brake and entering pre-cruising state, press "SET-" button, instrument cluster will prompt "Please depress accelerator pedal to activate adaptive cruise control system", driver depresses accelerator pedal slightly to activate ACC according to the prompt.

■ Exiting adaptive cruise control

When one or more of the following situations occur in cruising process, ACC system will exit:

1. Front compartment cover is opened.
2. Depress brake pedal.
3. Press " " button.
4. Driver door is opened.
5. Driver seat belt is not fastened.
6. Apply electric parking.
7. Anti-lock brake system operates.
8. Gear position is in a position other than D.
9. Automatic emergency braking system operates.
10. Turn on HDC system.
11. Electronic stability program system operates.
12. Electronic stability control system is not turned on.
13. Driver depresses accelerator pedal for more than 15 minutes.

After the above conditions that cause the function to exit are resumed, press "RES+" button, enter cruising state and resume set state before exiting.

■ Speed setting

Short press " RES+ " button during cruising process, set vehicle speed will increase by 1 km/h.

Long press " RES+ " button during cruising process, set vehicle speed will increase by 5 km/h; when vehicle speed exceeds 80 km/h, set vehicle speed will increase by 10 km/h.

Short press " SET- " button during cruising process, set vehicle speed will decrease by 1 km/h.

Long press " SET- " button during cruising process, set vehicle speed will decrease by 5 km/h; when vehicle speed exceeds 80 km/h, set vehicle speed will decrease by 10 km/h.

READ

- For ACC system, the lowest speed setting is 15 km/h and the highest speed setting is 130 km/h.
- Speed will be slightly lower than set speed when driving uphill, and will be slightly higher than set speed when driving downhill.
- When cruise system is activated, the driver depresses accelerator pedal to enter the overtaking mode. At this time, adjust the cruise speed by pressing "SET-" or "RES+" button. The logic of the cruise speed adjustment is consistent with that of the cruise activation.

Following clearance

Press " ⊟ "/" ⊟ " button in cruising process, adjust following clearance which is divided into 5 levels from minimum clearance to maximum clearance.

READ

- Following clearance changes based on speed and increases with speed improving.
- In minimum clearance mode, the distance between the vehicle and vehicle ahead will quite small during following at low speed. For safety, select maximum clearance mode to follow vehicle ahead on slippery road.
- During following vehicle ahead and decreasing, electronic stability program system continuously performs brake and motor will generate operation sound when rotating, this is normal and please drive at ease.

WARNING

- Please note that any drive behavior must confirm all traffic regulations.
- The driver must control vehicle and operate as needed during the whole driving process to avoid danger.

Overtaking

Depress accelerator pedal to exceed set speed in cruising process. After accelerator pedal is released, the control state will return to previous state. During overtaking, if the vehicle is too close to vehicle ahead, instrument cluster will pop up "Please take over the vehicle by driver" accompanied with urgent warning sound to remind driver to avoid.

READ

When cruise system is in the overtaking status, adjust the cruise speed by pressing "RES+" or "SET-" button. The logic of the cruise speed adjustment is consistent with that of the cruise activation.

Curve speed control

Decrease the speed when vehicle enters curve in cruising process, which help driver to drive through curve safely.

⚠ WARNING

- The driver must control vehicle, drive through curve as slowly as possible in the whole driving process.
- While entering a curve, due to limitation of detection target for sensor, vehicle ahead on the same driving route may not be detected in time, which requires the driver to be ready to take over the control of the vehicle at any time.

Stopping and starting function

During following vehicle ahead in ACC mode, vehicle ahead decreases to stop, the vehicle also decreases to stop, after stopping:

1. Vehicle ahead starts to drive away within 3 seconds and the vehicle starts automatically to follow vehicle ahead.
2. If vehicle ahead stops for more than 3 seconds and starts within 3 seconds to 10 minutes, driver needs to depress accelerator pedal slightly to activate ACC.
3. When vehicle stops within 10 minutes, driver unfastens seat belt or opens driver door, EPB will be activated automatically for parking.
4. When vehicle stops for more than 10 minutes, the ACC will exit, and EPB will be activated automatically for parking.

⚠ WARNING

During following vehicle ahead, always pay attention to whether the instrument cluster displays the vehicle target in front. If the instrument cluster does not display the target in front, it means that target in front of ACC system has been lost, and the vehicle will start to accelerate according to set speed.

Precautions for adaptive cruise control

1. Adaptive cruise control system can not violate laws of physics and has certain limitations. Driver must always keep control of the vehicle and be fully responsible for the vehicle.
2. If the vehicle is extremely close to vehicle on adjacent lanes, adaptive cruise control system may select the vehicle as following target.
3. Adaptive cruise control system can not respond to stationary objects and vehicles, crosswise vehicles, oncoming vehicles, pedestrians, bicycles and animals.

4. When stopping vehicle briefly by adaptive cruise control system, driver must confirm that there are no obstacles or other traffic participants such as pedestrians, bicycles and animals in front of the vehicle.
5. When ACC function is malfunctioning, "" yellow indicator on instrument cluster remains on. At this time, ACC function fails, please go to the authorized service station for inspection and repair as soon as possible.
6. During adaptive cruise control controls vehicle, never inadvertently step on accelerator pedal, otherwise, adaptive cruise control will not apply brake to vehicle, driver should always be ready to brake actively to ensure the safety of the vehicle.
7. Adaptive cruise control system has a limited brake time reaction; if vehicle ahead occurs sudden brake, another driver cuts in front of the vehicle, the vehicle cuts behind a preceding vehicle, adaptive cruise control system may not respond or react to vehicle ahead too slow, in this case, driver should take over the vehicle control in time.
8. The distance to the vehicle ahead, adjacent lane conditions, and target type displayed on instrument cluster may be different from the actual situation. Driver must observe the vehicle and real road conditions in real time; Driver should adjust the proper distance from vehicle ahead and vehicle speed based on traffic flow, weather condition and other actual road conditions, and is responsible for ensuring that the vehicle can stop safely at any time. In inclement weather (rain, snow, fog, etc.), adaptive cruise control system may not recognize a vehicle ahead. In this case, adaptive cruise control system should be turned off.
9. Adaptive cruise control system is suitable for use on highways and roads in good condition. It is not recommended for use on urban roads, narrow roads, mountain roads, hills, tunnels, etc. If using adaptive cruise control system on curves, target vehicle ahead may be lost or target selection is delayed due to limitation of sensor detection range. In this case, adaptive cruise control system will control vehicle to accelerate to set speed.
10. During the process of following the vehicle ahead to stop, ACC system may not be able to recognize the end of the vehicle, but the lower or upper part of vehicle (such as rear axle of truck that has higher chassis, upper part of lower flatbed trailer). In these cases, system cannot ensure a proper stopping distance or even lead to collision. Therefore, driver must keep a watch on vehicle and be ready to take over vehicle control anytime during this process.
11. Camera sensor is installed behind windshield. Please note that view of sensor should not be covered by pollutants, and front or surrounding areas should not be modified. When sensor is completely covered by snow, ACC function will be exited. Sensors may also be affected by vibration or collision, and system performance may be reduced or its function fails. In this case, please go to the authorized service station for recalibration of sensors as soon as possible.

Precautions mentioned above do not cover all circumstances that may affect system normal operation. System function may fail to bring the expected effect due to other reasons. Driver must always take full responsibility for vehicle control anytime.

Active Speed Limit (ASL) (If Equipped)

Driver drives vehicle at set limit speed.

Usage methods

■ Entering active speed limit

With vehicle in READY status, press " LIM " button to enter pre-speed limit state, " LIMIT ---km/h " indicator on instrument cluster remains on:

Method 1: During pre-speed limit state, vehicle speed is lower than 30 km/h, press "SET-" button to enter speed limit state, " LIMIT ON 30km/h " indicator on instrument cluster remains on, set vehicle speed is 30 km/h by default;

Method 2: During pre-speed limit state, and vehicle speed is within 30 - 200 km/h, press "SET-" button to set current speed as limit speed to enter speed limit state, " LIMIT ON 30km/h " indicator on instrument cluster remains on.

■ Exiting active speed limit

Press " " button to exit speed limit state, enter pre-cruising state, " CRUISE CANCEL ---km/h " indicator on instrument cluster flashes.

Press " LIM " button to exit speed limit state, " LIMIT ON 30km/h " indicator on instrument cluster goes off.

■ Speed setting

Short press "RES+" button during speed limit process, set vehicle speed will increase by 1 km/h.

Long press "RES+" button during speed limit process, set vehicle speed will increase by 5 km/h.

Short press "SET-" button during speed limit process, set vehicle speed will decrease by 1 km/h.

Long press "SET-" button during speed limit process, set vehicle speed will decrease by 5 km/h.

Overtaking

In speed limit process, in order to overtake or in other operation condition, fully depress accelerator pedal to enter pre-speed limit state, " LIMIT ---km/h " indicator on instrument cluster remains on.

After overtaking, if vehicle speed is higher than previous set limit speed, it enters pre-speed limit state, " LIMIT ---km/h " indicator on instrument cluster remains on.

After overtaking, if vehicle speed is less than previous set limit speed, it enters speed limit state, " LIMIT ON 30km/h " indicator on instrument cluster remains on.

5-3. Lane Assist System

Lane Assist System (If Equipped)

Lane assist system includes LDW, LDP and ELK, which can assist driver to reduce traffic accident due to lane departure, improving driving safety.

READ

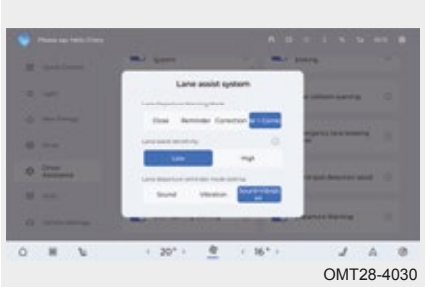
- Keep front view multi-function camera free from obstructions (such as bird droppings, insects and ice, etc.).
- Lane line captured by camera: It can detect white solid line, white dotted line, yellow solid line, yellow dotted line and double solid line lanes.
- The system may not operate in cold and bad weather conditions, such as rain, snow or fog and high contrast lighting will affect the sensor.
- The system may not operate when driving on cement road.
- The system may not operate when driving in road construction area.
- The system may not operate when driving on flooded or muddy roads.
- The system may not work when driving on sharp turns or narrow roads.
- The system will only work normally on the roads with two clear lane lines.
- When only single-sided lane line is detected, the system alarm stability decreases.
- If sensor is disturbed, the system may not work.
- Sensors may misidentify temporary construction markings on the road, etc. and give false alarm by mistake.
- If your vehicle suspension kit is not approved by us, the lane assist system may not operate properly.

WARNING

- The driver must control vehicle and operate as needed during the whole driving process to avoid danger.
- Lane assist system only offers assistance to the driver. It may not work properly under all driving conditions, weather conditions, traffic conditions or road conditions.

Lane Departure Warning (LDW) System

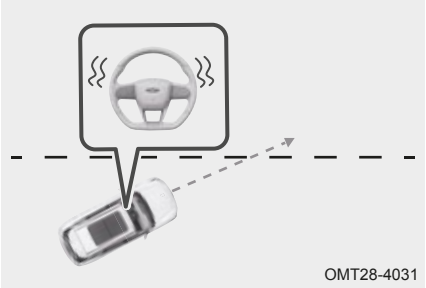
LDW detects lane line by front view multi-function camera. The system sends an alarm when wheel rolls over lane line and vehicle departs from its lane.



OMT28-4030

With vehicle in READY status, turn on Lane assist system through Audio System - Vehicle Center - Driver Assistance, and set assist mode, sensitivity and reminder mode.

Activating lane departure warning


OMT28-4031

When vehicle speed is no less than 65 km/h and lane line is recognized, LDW enters standby status.

When vehicle speed is no less than 65 km/h and the vehicle departs from one lane line, LDW is activated.

When vehicle speed decreases from 65 km/h to 60 km/h, LDW enters limit status.

Lane departure warning indicator

When function is turned on/limited, " " gray indicator on instrument cluster remains on.

When it is in standby status, " " green indicator on instrument cluster remains on.

When it is activated, " " green indicator on instrument cluster flashes.

When there is a fault, " " yellow indicator on instrument cluster remains on.

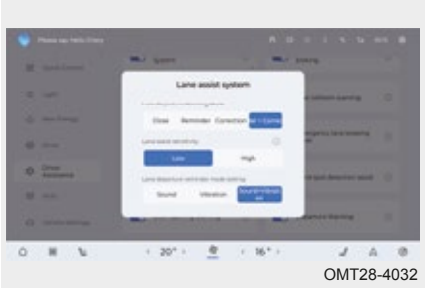
Function limit

■ LDW may not work properly in the following conditions:

1. When changing lanes.
2. When turning with high speed.
3. When depressing accelerator pedal with excess force.
4. When depressing brake pedal hard.
5. When turning on the hazard light.
6. When turning on departure side turn signal light.
7. When driving on roads with tight curves.
8. When lane line is too thin, broken, blurred or departure side has no lane line.

Lane Departure Prevention (LDP) (If Equipped)

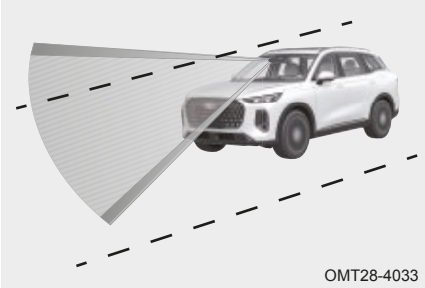
LDP monitors the relative position between vehicle and lane line by front view multi-function camera in real-time. When the vehicle is about to deviate from the lane, it controls the lateral movement and assists driver to keep the vehicle in the original lane.



OMT28-4032

With vehicle in READY status, turn on Lane assist system through Audio System - Vehicle Center - Driver Assistance, and set assist mode, sensitivity and reminder mode.

Activating lane departure prevention


OMT28-4033

When vehicle speed is no less than 65 km/h and lane line is recognized, LDP enters standby status.

When vehicle speed is no less than 65 km/h and the vehicle departs from one lane line, LDP is activated.

When vehicle speed decreases from 65 km/h to below 60 km/h, LDW enters limit status.

⚠ CAUTION

- Driver performs an active control for vehicle when meeting a large curve.
- Driver performs an active control for vehicle when meeting some conditions such as lane increase, lane merger, etc.
- Driver performs an active control for vehicle when meeting complex traffic environment (such as intersection, heavy traffic road).

Lane departure prevention indicator

When function is turned on/limited, " " gray indicator on instrument cluster remains on.

When it is in standby status, " " green indicator on instrument cluster remains on.

When it is activated, " " green indicator on instrument cluster flashes.

When there is a fault, " " yellow indicator on instrument cluster remains on.

Function limit

■ LDP may not work properly in the following conditions:

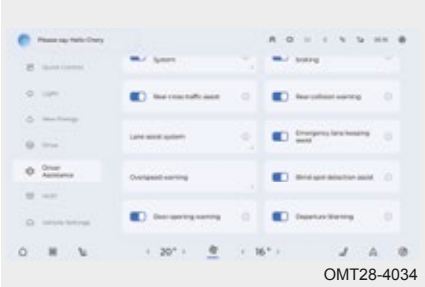
1. When changing lanes.
2. When lane is too narrow.
3. When lane is too wide.
4. When lane line is lost.
5. When the braking force is too large.
6. When turning with high speed.
7. When hazard lights are turned on.
8. When turning on departure side turn signal light.
9. When EPS system is not ready (such as malfunction).
10. When ABS system or ESP system is activated.
11. When TJA/ICA system is activated.
12. Steering wheel is operated by driver when LDP applies corrective steering intervention.

■ Under the following situations, do not use LDP. Failure to do so may cause an accident, resulting in death or serious:

1. When driving on low-quality section.
2. When driving on road construction site.
3. When driving on roads with more curves.
4. At night and when the surrounding light is dark.
5. When driving vehicle in a sporty style.
6. In bad weathers (such as rain, snow, fog).

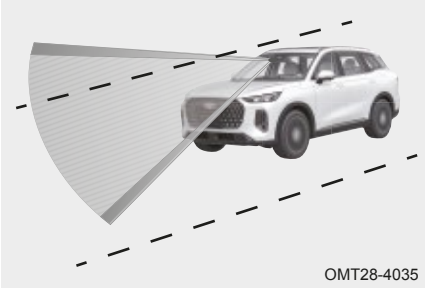
Emergency Lane Keeping (ELK) (If Equipped)

ELK system uses front view multi-function camera and rear corner radar to detect in real time that the vehicle departs from solid lane marker, road edge, oncoming or overtaking vehicles in adjacent lanes, if so, the vehicle continues to lateral movement or the system control lateral movement if necessary, which can keep the vehicle in the original lane and assist driver to reduce traffic accident due to lane departure, improving driving safety.


OMT28-4034

With vehicle in READY status, turn on Emergency lane keeping assist through Audio System - Vehicle Center - Driver Assistance.

Activating emergency lane keeping


OMT28-4035

When vehicle speed is no less than 65 km/h and vehicle target is monitored, ELK enters standby status.

When vehicle speed is no less than 65 km/h and vehicle target is monitored, ELK is activated.

When vehicle speed decreases from above 65 km/h to below 60 km/h, ELK enters limit status.

⚠ CAUTION
• Driver performs an active control for vehicle when meeting a large curve. • Driver performs an active control for vehicle when meeting some conditions such as lane increase, lane merger, etc. • Driver performs an active control for vehicle when meeting complex traffic environment (such as intersection, heavy traffic road).

Emergency lane keeping indicator

When function is turned on/limited, " " gray indicator on instrument cluster remains on.

When it is in standby status, " " green indicator on instrument cluster remains on.

When it is activated, " " red indicator on instrument cluster flashes.

When there is a fault, " " yellow indicator on instrument cluster remains on.

Function limit

■ ELK may not work properly in the following conditions:

1. When changing lanes.
2. When lane is too narrow.
3. When lane is too wide.

4. When lane line is lost.
5. When the braking force is too large.
6. When turning with high speed.
7. When depressing accelerator pedal with excess force.
8. When hazard lights are turned on.
9. When double solid line lanes are detected and turn signal light is turned on.
10. When EPS system is not ready (such as malfunction).
11. When ABS system or ESP system is activated.
12. When TJA/ICA system is activated.
13. Steering wheel is operated by driver when ELK system applies corrective steering intervention.

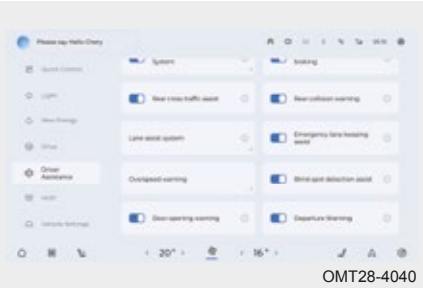
■ Under the following situations, do not use ELK. Failure to do so may cause an accident, resulting in death or serious injury:

1. When driving on low-quality section.
2. When driving on road construction site.
3. When driving on roads with more curves.
4. At night and when the surrounding light is dark.
5. When driving vehicle in a sporty style.
6. In bad weathers (such as rain, snow, fog).

5-4. Blind Spot Detection Assist System

Blind Spot Detection Assist System (If Equipped)

BSD system is used to monitor presence of moving vehicles in left and right rear areas of your vehicle and inform related information to remind the driver for driving safety and lane-changing safety. This system also extends some functions such as LCA, DOW, RCTA etc.


OMT28-4040

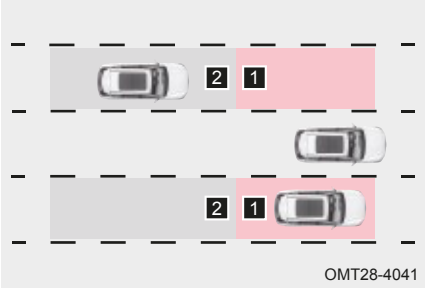
With vehicle in READY status, turn on Blind spot detection assist, Door opening warning, Rear collision warning, Rear cross traffic alert and Rear cross traffic brake through Audio System - Vehicle Center - Driver Assistance.

Note: Blind spot detection assist and lane assist system share blind spot detection switch.

⚠ WARNING

Blind spot detection assist system just offers assistance to you. It may not work properly under all driving conditions, weather conditions, traffic conditions or road conditions.

Activating Blind Spot Detection (BSD) / Lane Change Assist (LCA)



When speed is no less than 15 km/h, blind spot detection is activated; When speed is decreases from above 15 km/h to 10 km/h, BSD enters pre-activating.

1 Detection area of blind spot detection

2 Vehicle approaches detection area of blind spot detection

Level I: If a vehicle enters detection area and meets alarm conditions, level alarm I is triggered. " " yellow indicator on rear view mirror remains on, " " green indicator in instrument cluster remains on.

Level II: On base of level I, turn on the turn signal light in the same side. After level alarm II is triggered, " " yellow indicator on rear view mirror blinks, " " yellow indicator on instrument cluster blinks, alarm sounds.

⚠ CAUTION

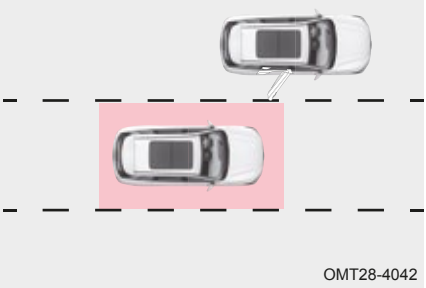
- When lots of snow or ice accumulates on rear bumper and near radar sensor, or if drive on snowy road for a long time, blind spot detection assist system may not work.
- When towing or attaching accessories to the rear of vehicle (such as a bicycle carrier), turn off blind spot detection assist system. Otherwise, radar radio waves will be affected, causing system work abnormally.
- BSD/LCA may detects stationary objects on or near a road (such as guardrails, tunnels, side walls, and parked vehicles) to turn on warning light.

Blind spot detection indicator

During operation, level alarm I " " green indicator in instrument cluster remains on; level alarm II " " yellow indicator in instrument cluster blinks.

When there is a fault, " " yellow indicator on instrument cluster remains on.

Door Opening Warning (DOW) System (If Equipped)



With vehicle in READY status, when the vehicle is stationary, if blind spot detection assist system detects approaching vehicles on left and right sides of the vehicle and any door is opened, DOW sounds an alarm to remind the driver/ occupant to pay attention to following vehicle when exiting to avoid collision.

Level I: If a vehicle enters detection area and meets alarm conditions, level alarm I is triggered. " " yellow indicator on corresponding side rear view mirror remains on, indicator on corresponding side rear door trim panel remains on.

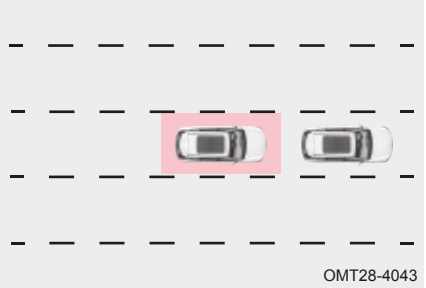
Level II: On base of level I, open the door. After level alarm II is triggered, " " yellow indicator on corresponding side rear mirror blinks, indicator on corresponding side rear door trim panel comes on, alarm sounds.

Function limit

■ DOW may not work properly in the following conditions:

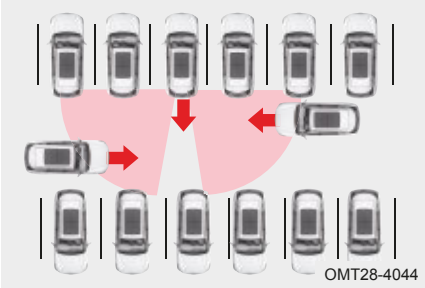
1. The vehicle speed is higher than 0 km/h.
2. After the vehicle is powered off for 5 minutes.
3. When the vehicle is powered off and enters arming mode within 5 minutes.

Rear Collision Warning (RCW) System (If Equipped)



When the vehicle is in READY status and the vehicle speed is not lower than 15 km/h, if a following vehicle quickly approaches the vehicle, meter gives an alarm to remind that there is a approaching vehicle from behind.

Rear Cross Traffic Alert (RCTA) System (If Equipped)


OMT28-4044

When the vehicle is in READY status and vehicle is reversing (-gear position is in R position), blind spot detection assist system detects that vehicles are approaching from left/right sides, " " yellow indicator on rear view mirror blinks and alarm sounds.

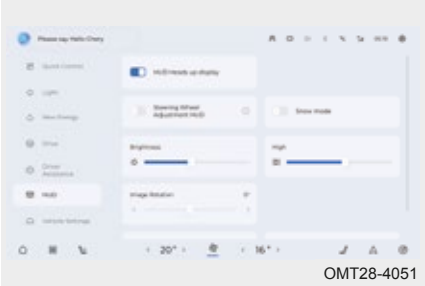
5-5. Driving Safety Assist System

Head Up Display (HUD) (If Equipped)

Head up display is a driving assistance instrument used in automobiles. Through optical systems and electronic control, the projected information (-such as driving status, driving assistance, navigation, entertainment, etc.) of the head up display is reasonably and vividly integrated with the actual traffic conditions and superimposed on the driver's effective view field, allowing the driver to obtain corresponding information in real time without adjusting their line of sight, enhancing their perception of the traffic environment.

OMT28-4050

The head up display is located in the front windshield area.


OMT28-4051

With vehicle in READY state, turn on/off HUD Heads up display through Audio System - Vehicle Center - HUD, and set steering wheel adjustment HUD, brightness adjustment, high adjustment, image rotation, snow mode, HUD information display, and default value restoring.

READ

- In snowy weather or poor visibility, it is recommended to turn on snow mode.
- Head up display automatically adjusts the brightness of displayed image according to the collected ambient brightness signal value, so as to adapt to different ambient brightness.

CAUTION

- When the head up display is blocked, the image cannot be displayed.
- The front windshield film may affect the brightness of the head up display image.
- If the driver wears polarized sunglasses, the head-up display image may not be seen.
- Under extreme heat, the shown image may become dark, or even fade away. The display will recover after the temperature drops, which are normal.

Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS)

Tire pressure monitoring system is an active safety configuration and can monitor pressure and temperature of tire in real-time and the information can be checked through information display area. When tire pressure is too low or temperature is too high, tire pressure monitoring system alarms.

OMT28-4080

When vehicle speed is not lower than 25 km/h, if TPMS has not received radio-frequency signal from one or more sensors after several minutes, TPMS will send system malfunction warning, " (!) " yellow indicator on instrument cluster will blink for tens of seconds and then remains on, "Abnormal Tire Pressure, Check" will be displayed for several seconds and then turned off, which can be checked on tire pressure display screen.

READ

Even if vehicle is equipped with TPMS, check if tire pressure and appearance are normal before driving. Please contact the authorized service station for inspection and repair as necessary.

Low pressure warning

When tire pressure is less than 184 bar and speed is no lower than 25 km/h for a period of time, system will send a low pressure warning, corresponding wheel symbol will blink, current tire pressure value will be displayed and " (!) " yellow indicator in instrument cluster will remain on.

When the vehicle is switched to power-on state and tire pressure is lower than 184 bar, system will send a low pressure warning, corresponding wheel symbol will blink, current tire pressure value will be displayed and " (!) " yellow indicator on instrument cluster will remain on.

When low pressure warning occurs, please inflate the tire to 230 kPa as soon as possible. After the vehicle is driven at a speed not less than 25 km/h for a period of time, low pressure warning will be automatically canceled.

⚠ CAUTION
Low tire pressure will increase fuel consumption and aggravate tire wear (-serious tire wear may cause a risk of tire blowout), inspect causes of tire air leakage. Please contact the authorized service station for inspection and repair as soon as possible as needed.

High temperature warning

When tire temperature is higher than 85°C and speed is no less than 25 km/h for a period of time, system will send a high temperature warning, corresponding wheel symbol will blink, current tire temperature value will be displayed and " (!) " yellow indicator in instrument cluster will remain on.

When the vehicle is switched to power-on state and tire temperature is higher than 85°C, system will send a high temperature warning, corresponding wheel symbol will blink, current tire temperature value will be displayed and " (!) " yellow indicator on instrument cluster will remain on.

When high temperature warning occurs, after tire temperature is lower than 80°C and the vehicle is driven at a speed no less than 25 km/h for a period of time, high temperature warning will be automatically canceled.

⚠ CAUTION
When high temperature warning occurs, stop driving at once to cool down tires naturally. Do not cool it down by pouring cold water, otherwise, tire may be damaged, causing an accident. Please contact the authorized service station for inspection and repair as soon as possible as needed.

Function limit

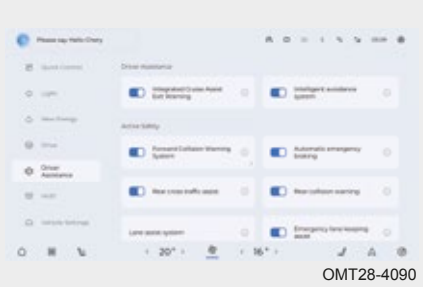
■ Tire pressure monitoring system may send a system malfunction warning in the following conditions:

1. Configuration learning of tire pressure monitoring system is not performed after replacing wheels (spare tire included).

2. Tire pressure sensor or other components has been damaged, please contact the authorized service station for inspection and repair as soon as possible as needed.
3. Sensor may be affected due to electromagnetic shielding caused by installing tire chains, affecting tire pressure monitoring system proper operation.
4. The tire pressure monitoring system may not work properly due to interference of electronic equipment (over standard equipment) installed on vehicle, resulting false alarm.
5. TPMS may not operate due to radio interference; And it may be interfered temporarily due to strong electromagnetic radio signals with same frequency (433 MHz).

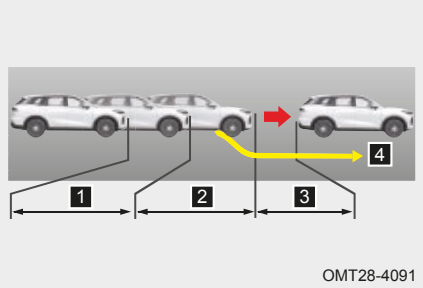
Automatic Emergency Braking (AEB) System/Front Collision Warning (FCW) System (If Equipped)

When vehicle is about to hit a vehicle or pedestrian ahead, automatic emergency braking system and front collision warning system work together, sounding an alarm to remind driver, if driver cannot respond quickly enough, vehicle will brake automatically, reducing loss from collision.


OMT28-4090

With vehicle in READY state, turn on Automatic emergency brake and Front collision warning through Audio System - Vehicle Center - Driver Assistance.

Activating automatic emergency braking system/front collision warning system



OMT28-4091

1. Start pre-warning before impacting.
2. Start braking partly before impacting.
3. Start emergency braking before impacting.
4. If driver reacts correctly (for example, avoid a collision by steering), the following emergency braking is canceled.

READ

Some configurations only work on vehicle targets, not pedestrians or cyclists.

CAUTION

- When vehicle speed is lower than 30 km/h, FCW system does not send an alarm; When speed is higher than 85 km/h, FCW does not sound an alarm for static target ahead.
- Operating speed range of AEB is 4 - 62 km/h for static vehicle target (4 - 48 km/h for some models); Operating speed range of AEB is 4 - 85 km/h for moving vehicle target; Operating speed range of AEB is 4 - 65 km/h for pedestrians and cyclists (not support for some models).
- Driver needs to ensure that seat belts have been fastened, doors are closed. Failure to do so, AEB system does not work.
- Turn on electronic stability program system, front collision warning system and automatic emergency braking system. Otherwise, front collision warning system and automatic emergency braking system do not work.
- " " yellow indicator on instrument cluster remains on, please go to the authorized service station for inspection and repair as soon as possible.
- Driver needs to take over vehicle because vehicle does not keep stationary state when vehicle is braked automatically to stop.
- During automatic emergency braking system is activated, driver quickly rotate steering wheel or depress accelerator pedal deeply, automatic emergency braking system will exit.

⚠ WARNING

- The driver must control vehicle and operate as needed during the whole driving process to avoid danger.
- Automatic emergency braking system just offers assistance to you. It may not work properly under all driving conditions, weather conditions, traffic conditions or road conditions.
- The vehicle targets that can be detected by automatic emergency braking system include passenger vehicles, buses, trucks. For some vehicles, such as cement tank trucks, special vehicles with higher or lower chassis, the system has certain limitations in detecting.
- Automatic emergency braking system will work when it detects some characteristics consistent with normal human walking (such as head swing, arm swing, leg swing). Automatic emergency braking system detects pedestrians who across the vehicle's lane, but automatic emergency braking system does not detect pedestrians who walk alongside the lane, who are around a corner or who are blocked by any other objects.
- Automatic emergency braking system will work when it detects body and bicycle contour information as well as normal cycling movements. Automatic emergency braking system does not detect an oncoming cyclist as target.
- Automatic emergency braking system is not always capable of detecting vehicles, cyclists or pedestrians, and automatic emergency braking system may generate unnecessary braking automatically or not work for a variety of reasons. Automatic emergency braking system is only a driving assistance system to reduce severity of collision, it is not always possible to completely avoid collision in the speed range.

Precautions for automatic emergency braking system

1. Automatic emergency braking system can not violate laws of physics and has certain limitations. Driver must always keep control of the vehicle and be fully responsible for the vehicle.
2. Driver controls speed and the distance from vehicle ahead according to weathers, road surface conditions, traffic conditions, etc.
3. Automatic emergency braking system does not react to animals, crossing vehicles, oncoming vehicles, bicycles and pedestrians.
4. System performance will be greatly limited for targets that cut into the lane quickly, targets that are detected after the vehicle changes lanes, and targets in curves.
5. Fasten all seat belts and secure all loads to avoid danger when automatic emergency braking system is triggered.

6. When AEB system is malfunctioning, " " yellow indicator on instrument cluster comes on, please go to the authorized service station for inspection and repair as soon as possible.
7. When inspecting the vehicle using a drum tester, front collision warning system and automatic emergency braking system should be turned off.
8. When installing non-full size spare tire, it is recommended to turn off front collision warning system and automatic emergency braking system, and replace full-size tires of original vehicle in time.
9. In some special circumstances, automatic emergency braking system may perform unnecessary warning and braking, such as at track that crosses a road, entering the underground parking lot turning, etc. Some circumstances will affect and weaken sensor detection, effecting related functions of system, such as tunnel, light of incoming vehicle, reflection of slippery road.
10. Camera sensor is installed behind windshield of vehicle; note that view of sensor should not be covered by pollutants, front or surrounding areas should not be modified. When sensor is completely covered by snow, system function will exit. Automatic emergency braking system performance may be reduced or do not work due to sensor vibration or collision. In this case, please go to the authorized service station for recalibration of sensors as soon as possible.

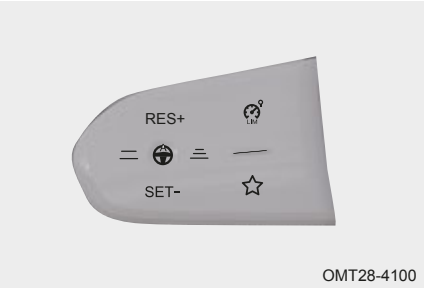
Precautions mentioned above do not cover all circumstances that may affect automatic emergency braking system normal operation. Automatic emergency braking system function may fail to bring the expected effect due to other reasons. Driver must always assume full responsibility for vehicle control anytime.

5-6. Intelligent Cruise Control System

Traffic Jam Assist (TJA) System /Integrated Cruise Assist (ICA) System (If Equipped)

TJA/ICA detects lane line through the front view camera to perform vertical and horizontal control for vehicle, providing driving assistance and reducing driver's workload under monotonous driving environment or busy traffic. This system also extends the intelligent avoidance system.

Activating traffic jam assist system/integrated cruise assist system



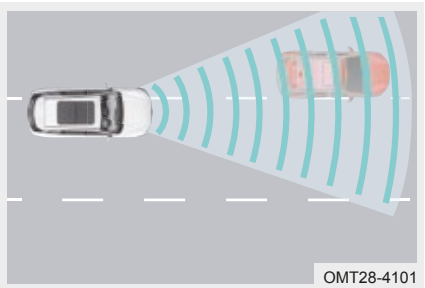
OMT28-4100

Main button " ":

Activate/exit function: When TJA/ICA is in pre-activating or activated state, short press main button to activate/exit TJA/ICA;

Mode switching function: When ACC is in pre-cruising or cruising state, or TJA/ICA is in pre-activating or activated state, long press the main button to switch between ACC and TJA/ICA modes.

If the TJA/ICA activation conditions are not met, " " gray indicator on instrument cluster remains on; If the TJA/ICA activation conditions are met, " " blue indicator on instrument cluster remains on.


OMT28-4101

TJA: When vehicle speed is lower than 60 km/h, vehicle will be kept near lane center. If no lane line is detected, the vehicle follows vehicle ahead as driving target. If neither lane line nor target vehicle is detected, TJA will be turned off.

ICA: When vehicle speed is 60 to 130 km/h, vehicle will be kept near lane center. If no lane line is detected, ICA will be turned off regardless of whether there is a target vehicle ahead.

READ

When the vehicle uses the TJA/ICA function for the first time, and the lane lines on both sides are clear, turn on TJA/ICA function and drive the vehicle in a straight line within the lane lines for a certain period of time (with slight differences in the duration of individual vehicle), TJA/ICA function will automatically perform self-learning. During the self-learning period, the lateral control parameters will dynamically adapt and adjust until the optimal state is reached, and then self-learning is completed. Note: Before self-learning is completed, the centering effect of TJA/ICA function may not be obvious, and the deviation correction effect of lane assist system may not be obvious.

Traffic jam assist system/integrated cruise assist system indicator

When it is pre-activated, " " gray indicator on instrument cluster remains on.

When it is activated, " " blue indicator on instrument cluster remains on.

When there is a fault, " " yellow indicator on instrument cluster remains on.

Function limit

■ TJA/ICA may not work properly in the following conditions:

1. Hands off steering wheel.
2. Turn signal lights are turned on.
3. Hazard lights are turned on.
4. Lane line is not detected.
5. Overly narrow or wide lanes.
6. The vehicle speed is less than 1 km/h.
7. Too small lane curve radius.
8. Driver rotates steering wheel actively.
9. Any exiting condition for adaptive cruise control system exists.

⚠ WARNING

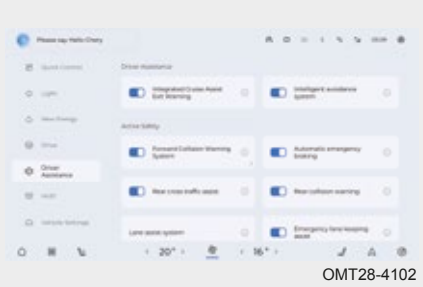
- The driver must control vehicle and operate as needed during the whole driving process to avoid danger.
- TJA/ICA just offers assistance to you. It may not work properly under some driving conditions, weather conditions, traffic conditions or road conditions.

Suggest to use traffic jam assist system/integrated cruise assist system

When TJA/ICA monitors vehicle speed is higher than 60 km/h, the current lane lines are clear and persistent, and ACC is in cruising state, " " green indicator on instrument cluster remains on. After a certain period of time, the instrument cluster pop-up window prompts "Road conditions are good, we suggest you to turn on Intelligent Cruise Control system".

Exiting reminder for traffic jam assist system/integrated cruise assist system

When TJA/ICA exits from the activated state, the system issues an alarm sound and the instrument cluster pop-up window prompts "Intelligent Cruise Control system has exited, please note" to inform the driver that the function has exited.


OMT28-4102

With vehicle in READY status, turn on Intelligent Cruise Assist Exit Warning through Audio System - Vehicle Center - Driver Assistance.

If you feel that the exiting reminder will interfere with driving, you can turn off this reminder function according to your preference.

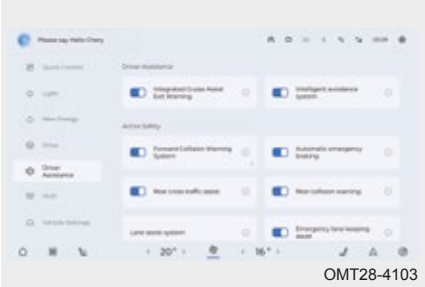
Precautions for traffic jam assist system/integrated cruise assist system

1. TJA/ICA system is a driving assist system, which cannot violate laws of physics and has certain limitations. Driver must always keep control of the vehicle and be fully responsible for the vehicle.
2. Longitudinal control of TJA/ICA system is performed by ACC, lateral control of TJA/ICA is performed by LKA, all precautions for ACC and LKA are also applicable to the system.
3. TJA/ICA system do not provide automatic driving function and does not allow hand off driving. Under the conditions such as turning, crossing, merging and vehicle ahead cuts in, diver should control vehicle at all times to ensure safety.
4. TJA/ICA system performance is affected by weather, illumination and lane line clarity. Under the conditions of backlight, sunset, night, snow and ice on the road surface and unclear lane lines due to road wear, the performance will be significantly reduced or even lost.
5. When TJA/ICA system is malfunctioning, " " yellow indicator on instrument cluster remains on, at this time, TJA/ICA system will not work, please go to the authorized service station for inspection and repair as soon as possible.

Precautions mentioned above do not cover all circumstances that may affect system normal operation. System function may fail to bring the expected effect due to other reasons. Driver must always take full responsibility for vehicle control anytime.

Intelligent Avoidance System (IES) (If Equipped)

Under the active control of traffic jam assist system/integrated cruise assist system (driving in the lane), when the vehicle speed is between 60 to 130 km/h and vehicle is about to overtake larger vehicles (such as trucks and buses) in the adjacent lane, the system controls the lateral movement of vehicle appropriately to keep it away from large vehicles until the overtaking is completed.


OMT28-4103

Turn vehicle power to ON mode, and turn on Intelligent avoidance system through Audio System - Vehicle Center - Driver Assistance.

5-7. Driver Monitoring System

Driver Monitoring System(DMS) (If Equipped)

DMS (Driver Monitoring System) uses the infrared camera arranged in the cabin to monitor driving status of driver in real time and collects the face image of driver (such as yawning, eyes closed, nodding, etc.) and line-of-sight area information in real time, judging the driver status in real time. The camera only captures the face of driver, does not capture the rest of the vehicle. The entire face information captured will not be used for personal identification and will not be stored. The system is enabled by default.

■ Main function

1. Determine if driver is fatigued by monitoring facial expression, eye closure, blinking frequency, etc. of driver. When detecting that driver is in a state of fatigue, pop-up window will display on instrument cluster and an alarm sounds;
2. Determine where the driver is looking and if the driver is distracted by tracking driver line-of-sight. When the driver is detected to be distracted, pop-up window will display on instrument cluster and an alarm sounds;
3. The system is enabled by default every time the vehicle is started, and can be turned off manually on head unit screen. After each power-on, the system will perform self-check, when the camera is blocked or system is malfunctioning, the corresponding prompt will display on instrument cluster.

⚠ CAUTION

- DMS can be set in audio system. For details, refer to "Audio System".
- When driver monitor system is activated, "" indicator on the meter comes on; when driver monitor system is abnormal, "" indicator on the meter comes on. Please go to authorized service station for inspection and repair as soon as possible.
- When the vehicle speed is higher than 10 km/h, driver monitor system will sound an alarm when the system detects that driver is in a fatigued driving state.
- When the vehicle speed is greater than 20 km/h, driver monitor system will sound an alarm when the system detects that driver is distracted or does not respond to the reminder.

⚠ WARNING

Driver fatigue monitoring system is only an auxiliary tool. In any case, the driver should be responsible for the safety of the vehicle. Fatigue and distracted driving are strictly prohibited. He/she must always concentrate on driving carefully.

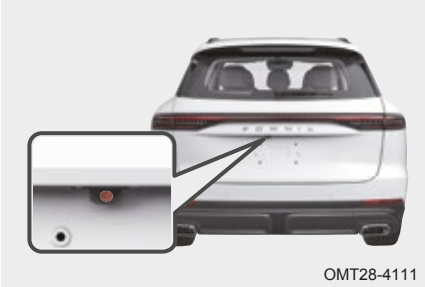
5-8. Parking Assist System

Panoramic View Monitor System (AVM)

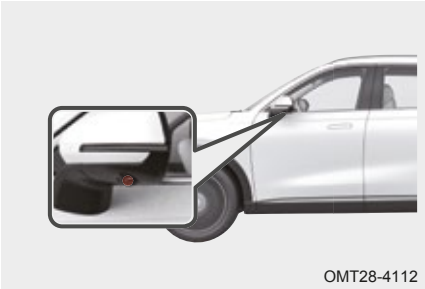
Panoramic view monitor system collects surrounding images of vehicle through four cameras and audio system displays the surrounding images and lane guideline, so as to assist the driver to park safely and easily.

Camera layout

Installation position of front camera: Lower middle part of the front license plate.


OMT28-4111

Installation position of rear camera: Upper middle part of rear license plate.


OMT28-4112

Installation position of left/right camera: Bottom of left/right outside rear view mirror.

Usage methods

OMT28-4113

Vehicle is in READY state and stationary, click " AVM " button on quick menu to enter AVM; Click " × " button to exit AVM.

When vehicle is in READY state and vehicle speed is lower than 30 km/h:

Method 1: Move shift lever to R to enter AVM; Move shift lever out from R to exit panoramic view monitor system.

Method 2: Turning at a large angle to enter panoramic view monitor system (it is necessary to turn on steering linkage).

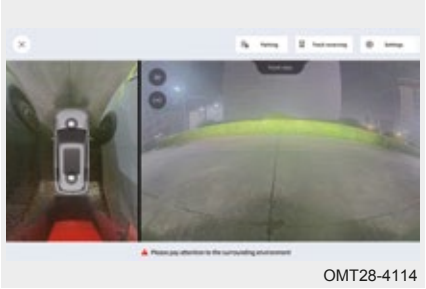
Method 3: Turn on left/right turn signal light to enter panoramic view monitor system (it is necessary to turn on steering linkage); Turn off left/right turn signal light to exit panoramic view monitor system.

Note: When switching vehicle power to OFF mode or vehicle speed is higher than 30 km/h, it exits AVM.

READ

The panoramic view monitor system provides driving assistance convenience, but the object in the image does not reflect the actual size and obstacle distance. Compared to the actual image, the image has a little delay and blind spot. Therefore, the panoramic view function is not a substitute for driver's operation and judgment. Driver should pay attention to the surroundings and drive safely during turning on/off and using the function.

Switching view


OMT28-4114

Click " × " button, and shift lever is not in R, exit panoramic view monitor system.

Click " 3D " button to switch between 2D/3D view; Click " ▶■ " button around the vehicle to switch the corresponding view.

Click " (•) " button to switch wheel side view.

Click " ⚙ " button to enter panoramic view monitor system setting.

READ

The panoramic view monitor system is very helpful for parking and safety driving. It is recommended that you should be familiar with this function in an open and convenient area.

⚠ CAUTION

- Do not scratch the lens when cleaning dirt or snow on the camera surface.
- Do not place any object on the camera of panoramic view monitor system.
- The object distance seen from the panoramic view monitor system is different from the actual distance.
- Before using panoramic view monitor system, make sure to extend outside rear view mirrors and close the back door firmly.
- The panoramic view monitor system has been calibrated professionally before leaving the factory. Any removal/installation and changes on camera installation position and angle without permission may affect the function and effect of panoramic view monitor system.
- The panoramic view monitor system provides driving assistance convenience, but the object in the image does not reflect the actual size and obstacle distance. Compared to the actual image, the image has a little delay and blind spot. Therefore, the panoramic view function is not a substitute for driver's operation and judgment. Driver should pay attention to the surroundings and drive safely during turning on/off and using the function.

System setting

OMT28-4115

[Panoramic View Starting Screen] Click " AVM " button for the first time to enter AVM and panoramic view starting screen.

[Steering Linkage] Turning at a large angle to enter AVM. When turning on left/right turn signal light, 3D view of rear left/right of vehicle will be displayed.

[Auto Zoom View] Enter enlarged view automatically based on obstacle distance.

[Door Open Indication] Prompt the status of moon roof, doors and back door.

[Lane Guideline Display] When entering AVM, load the static/dynamic lane guideline and wheel track line.

[Parking Radar Display] Display corresponding radar distance information (red, yellow, green areas).

[Transparent Body] Change the transparency of vehicle model.

[License Plate Number Setting] Set and display the corresponding license plate number information on vehicle model.

[Restore Default Setting] Restore default settings.

Parking Radar System

Parking radar system is a radar detection device, adopts radar sensors (4 sensors or 6 sensors) to detect if there are obstacles in front of and behind the vehicle and distance from obstacles. The driver is prompted by the audio system display, sound alarm, etc., so as to assist the driver to park safely and easily.

OMT28-4116

With vehicle in READY state, when vehicle is in stationary state and not in P, click " P⁄△ " button on quick menu to turn on parking radar system; When shift lever is not in R, click " P⁄△ " button again to exit parking radar system.

Note: When parking radar system is operating and vehicle speed is higher than 15 km/h, it exits parking radar system; when vehicle speed is less than 15 km/h, it is necessary to click " P⁄△ " button again to reactivate the system.

READ
Parking radar button is not standard. Please refer to the actual vehicle configuration.

Usage methods

Method 1: With vehicle in READY state, move shift lever to R position to activate parking radar system; When a radar sensor detects an obstacle, audio system displays distance from obstacle (red, yellow, green areas) accompanied by alarm sound.

Method 2 (if equipped): With vehicle in READY state, when vehicle is in stationary state and not in P, click " P⁄△ " button on quick menu to activate parking radar system; When a radar sensor detects an obstacle, audio system displays distance from obstacle (red, yellow, green areas) accompanied by alarm sound.

Note: When radar sensor is malfunctioning, parking radar system will sound for 2 seconds when it is turned on. When parking brake is applied or the shift lever is changed to P, the radar sensor malfunction warning sound will be shielded.

READ

- Monitoring distance is the shortest vertical distance between obstacle and radar sensor.
- When parking brake is applied with radar activated, audio system will only display arc information, and audio system prompt does not sound.
- For models with 6 sensors, regardless of whether the parking radar system is activated before moving shift lever to R position, parking radar system still operates when shifting to other positions (except for P gear).

CAUTION

- For obstacles out of detection range, radar sensors will not alarm.
- When vehicle is moving, be aware that the reverse radar sensors on the other side may get close to other obstacles.

Function limit

■ Parking radar system may not work normally in the following conditions:

1. When vehicle is on a steep slope.
2. When driving in jelly-like snow or rain.
3. Low objects such as rocks, etc. cannot be detected.
4. Objects higher than bumper cannot be detected.
5. Thin objects such as wires, fences and ropes, etc. cannot be detected.
6. When vehicle is equipped with a high frequency radio or antenna is in use.
7. When radar sensor surfaces are frozen, they will not detect any obstacle.
8. When radar sensors are covered by dirt, snow or mud, they may not detect obstacles.
9. Objects that easily absorb ultrasonic waves (such as soft snow, cotton, sponge) cannot be detected.
10. When there is large noise near the vehicle, (such as vehicle horns, motorcycle engines, air brakes of large vehicles, or other loud noises producing ultrasonic waves).
11. If multiple radar sensors detect obstacles, the distances between each radar sensor and each obstacle are displayed on audio system simultaneously, and system sounds according to nearest obstacle.

Cleaning radar sensor

OMT28-4117

When washing vehicle, use a soft cloth or water (low water pressure) to wash off foreign matter such as snow, mud, and dust on the surface of radar sensor.

High pressure water flow such as water guns or large external forces may damage the radar sensors. Do not pinch or impact the radar sensors, otherwise the sensors will not work normally.

5-9. Auto Parking Assist System

Auto Parking Assist System (If Equipped)

The auto parking assist system is divided into automatic parking and tracking reverse. The system adopts radar sensors and cameras to detect parking position, draw a parking map, plan the parking path dynamically in real-time, and assist users to automatically park vehicle in or out of the target parking space.

Auto parking assist system switch

OMT28-4133

Method 1: The shortcut menu screen can be displayed by sliding the screen down in the audio screen. Click the "P" button to turn on the auto parking assist system.

Method 2: Click the "Parking Assist" button on audio system APP screen to turn on the auto parking assist system.

Parking setting

OMT28-4281

Click "⚙" button on parking screen, voice prompts and precaution setting items pop up.

After the voice prompt is turned off, the system voice prompt is turned off.

After the precautions are off, the precautions screen will not pop up.

Notice for usage

Before using the auto parking assist system, be sure to read the following completely to understand the usage restrictions. All contents below do not cover all circumstances that may affect system normal operation. System function may fail to bring the expected effect due to other reasons. Driver must always take full responsibility for vehicle control anytime, avoiding the safety accidents.

■ In the following conditions, the radar may not work properly:

1. Trailer towing lever and towing hook.
2. Thinner or wedge object.
3. Objects with angular and sharp edges.
4. Other situations affecting target recognition.
5. Wire fences, fluffy snow, potholes in ground.
6. Objects (such as fences) with fine surface or structure.
7. Radar malfunctions or defacements may result in radar inoperation or misidentification.
8. Sensor cannot accurately detect the objects that above the detection range.
9. The system does not detect pedestrians, children, or animals around the vehicle every time.
10. Ambient noise at the same frequency as the radar may also cause radar misidentification.
11. Objects which surfaces do not reflect detection signals and people who wear clothes made of this kind material.
12. Overhead or protruding objects (such as protruding part of wall or load).

■ In the following conditions, the camera may not work properly:

1. The camera is dirty, damaged or covered.
2. There are obstacles in or near the parking space.
3. There are round and square columns near the parking space.
4. The ambient light is too bright (for example, the camera is exposed to direct sunlight).
5. The ambient light is too dim (for example, no lights in the underground parking lot or at night).
6. The left/right outside rear view mirrors or the cameras in the front and rear of vehicle are damaged, resulting in inoperation or misaligning of camera.
7. Unconventional parking spaces (such as trapezoidal parking spaces with inconsistent front and rear widths, curved parking spaces in parking garages).
8. The ambient brightness varies greatly and is inconsistent (such as mottled tree shadows, reflective floor paint parking spaces).
9. The parking line is not clear or the color contrast between the parking line and the parking space is not obvious (such as floor tile parking spaces, parking lines are worn).
10. The system may not be able to judge and exclude parking spaces with no parking markings, cone barrels, parking restriction signs and ground lock, or special parking spaces (such as handicapped parking spaces).
11. The system may not be able to judge parking spaces with obstacles (such as pedestrian, bicycle, tricycle, shopping trolley, baby carriage, low barrier etc.).

■ Auto parking assist system may not be able to operate normally in following situations:

1. Parking track is out of range.
2. ESP is turned off.
3. The vehicle is involved in a collision during the parking process.
4. During the parking process, the user actively touches the accelerator pedal.
5. During the parking process, the user actively controls the steering wheel.
6. The emergency braking function is activated during the parking process.
7. During the parking process, the user turns on turn signal light to intervene the light mode.
8. If the loaded object protrudes from the vehicle, do not use the system.
9. If snow chains or spare wheel are installed, do not use the system.
10. During the parking process, the user actively shifts gears (move shift paddle).

11. Four doors, hood and back door are not closed, seat belt is not fastened, any mirror does not deploy.
12. The user actively activates the electronic parking brake system during the auto parking assist system operation.
13. During parking or cruising, four doors, hood and back door are opened and does not resume within 30 seconds.
14. The operating environment for parking is not satisfied (for example, the slope exceeds 8° and the light intensity is weak).
15. Weather conditions (for example: heavy rain, snow, fog, extreme hot or cold temperatures) interfere with sensor operation.
16. Anti-lock braking system, traction control system or electronic stability program system is activated during parking.
17. The system may not work properly when the space next to the parking space that the user intends to memorize is tight or near the end of the road.
18. Sensors cannot recognize road surfaces with height differences, and never use it at cliff edges, high platforms, sidewalks adjacent to streets, and other locations.
19. Related system controllers (for example: brake system, steering system, tire pressure system, electronic stability program system, etc.) have a fault.
20. Reflections on the ground (e.g., water on the ground) can affect the system perception ability and may cause the system to brake incorrectly.
21. Auto parking assist system fails (for example: controller, ultrasonic radar and camera fault) or a collision occurs.
22. There are objects in or around the parking space that are difficult to detect by sensors, especially objects with small cross sections (e.g., thin branches, suspended objects, charging piles, fire hydrants, etc.).
23. The vehicle is driving on curves, steep slopes, and roads with potholes (e. g. gullies, sewers, cliff edges, high platforms, raised curbs, sidewalks, slippery road surfaces, etc.).
24. Before using the auto parking assist system, check if all radars and cameras are dirty (e.g. sludge, snow and ice), and environmental conditions (such as rain, unclarity due to wear of parking lines, and reflections from stagnant water in parking space) may affect the performance of the auto parking assist system.
25. The system is unable to recognize the glass, and the user should take over the vehicle in advance when there is a large area of glass in the parking or reversing process that causes the system to be unable to judge.
26. The material of the curb is not stone or the curb cannot be detected. If parked improperly, the tires and wheels may be damaged by the curb.
27. Vehicles other than passenger vehicles, such as forklifts, trolleys, shopping carts, may not be recognized by the system. User must take over the vehicle in advance to avoid collisions.

28. During the parking, after braking for an obstacle, if the obstacle is removed within 30 seconds, the vehicle continues to drive to complete parking. If the obstacle is not removed more than 30 seconds, the system will automatically exit.
29. The recognition ability and range of sensors are limited, and they are unable to identify obstacles that are suspended, small in size, and small in width. When there are similar objects in the parking environment, please pay attention to observation and be prepared to intervene and take over the vehicle at any time to avoid collisions.
30. The above restrictions do not cover all circumstances that affect the normal operation of automatic parking. Auto parking assist system is an assist driving function and cannot completely replace the user's driving behavior. During the parking, users shall always be vigilant, pay close attention to various dangerous situations around, and ensure safe driving, otherwise it may cause accidents, and even lead to serious property losses, personal damage and even death.

⚠ CAUTION

- Auto parking assist system does not take into account the changes in identified target parking space, which may lead to parking failure.
- For safety, before activating auto parking assist system, user must wear seat belt, and make sure that four doors, hood and back door are closed.
- When using auto parking assist system, vehicle may cross or strike a curb when steering, so user must be ready to apply brake at any time, otherwise, wheel or vehicle may be damaged.
- Object recognition is limited by laws of ultrasonic measurement physics and camera vision algorithm, which has limited ability to identify people, animals and various obstacles around the vehicle. At the same time, external sound source or light and shadow may interfere the system, resulting in system missing or wrong recognition. Therefore, before confirming target parking slot, user is responsible to focus on surrounding environment of the vehicle and confirm availability of the target parking slot.

⚠ WARNING

- In some narrow parking scenes (e.g., corner or parking spaces at corner), the performance of the sensor is limited and there may be a certain risk of collision.
- The auto parking assist system may not always detect objects in the parking space and parking route. Please maintain observation of the environment during parking and confirm that it is safe and appropriate.
- The auto parking assist system has the function of automatic braking to avoid obstacles, but due to the limitations of sensors, users need to be ready to brake at all times to avoid vehicles, pedestrians, and objects.
- Obstacles at or above the height of the vehicle outside rear view mirror cannot be detected completely and effectively. Please maintain observation of the environment during parking and confirm that it is safe and appropriate.
- Modification of vehicles or maintenance of vehicles in a maintenance agency not authorized by authorized service station may affect the auto parking assist system, which is prone to scratches or collisions during the implementation of the auto parking assist system.
- The auto parking assist system is only a means of assist driving, rather than a consistently correct and fully automatic function, and cannot achieve full autonomous driving ability. Therefore, users must maintain a focus on observing and judging the vehicle and environment.
- Blind spot is detected by auto parking assist system. There may be no alarm, false alarm or delayed alarm in the event of risk, and users are prohibited from over-relying on system alarm information. In case of danger, the user shall control the braking of the vehicle in time to ensure driving safety and avoid accidents such as accidental injury.
- Many unforeseen situations can affect the ability of auto parking assist systems to park vehicles. Please keep this in mind and remember that the auto parking assist system may not be able to operate the vehicle correctly as a result. Pay attention when parking the vehicle and be prepared to immediately take over the control of the vehicle.
- Auto parking assist system is an assist driving function and cannot completely replace the user's driving behavior. During using, the user shall always pay attention to the vehicle surroundings, especially vehicles, bicycles, pedestrians (especially children), small animals or other thin, sharp, low, hanging, low obstacles that suddenly approach own vehicle. When it is judged that scratches or collisions may occur, gently depress the brake pedal to take over the vehicle in time to avoid accidents such as accidental injury.

Auto Parking

Auto parking helps user drive in or out parking space recognized by system. The system can help user search and confirm a target parking space. Also, user can select a parking space on audio system. After confirming the target parking space, system will park vehicle automatically under user's supervision. The types of spaces for parking in supported by the system include vertical parking spaces, diagonal parking spaces, and horizontal parking spaces, while the types of spaces for parking out supported by the system are only horizontal parking spaces.

⚠ CAUTION

- Auto parking does not support mechanical stereoscopic parking spaces.
- Auto parking can not determine whether the parking space is legal and safe (for example: handicapped parking spaces, with the front of vehicle facing required parking spaces), you need to decide by yourself.
- During parking, the user can interrupt the parking by intervening in the steering wheel, shifting gears (move shift paddle), and lightly depressing the accelerator pedal. Since these interruption modes can trigger emergency braking, it is recommended to apply brake first and then interrupt when the speed is higher and there is no safety risk.

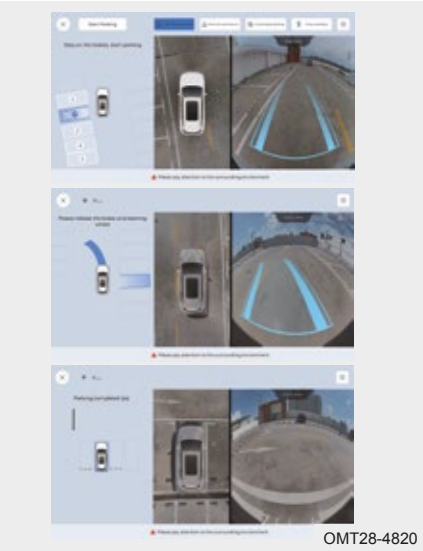
Auto parking in

OMT28-4810

Select "Auto parking" on parking screen. On the automatic parking screen, select "Auto parking in" to enter the auto parking in screen. The audio system prompts you to move forward and search for a parking space.

OMT28-4814

When the system detects an available parking space, the audio system prompts that the auto parking in function is available, please stop the vehicle. If multiple available parking spaces appear, users can select the target parking space to park in according to your needs.


OMT28-4820

After the system takes over the parking operation, follow the system instructions to enter the auto parking in process.

After parking completed, the system automatically turns on electronic parking brake system, and the gear position is switched to P. At this point, the user takes over the vehicle operation.

READ

- The system recommends a parking space with a "P" logo, and users can also choose the parking space they want to park in from the audio system.
- During the process of searching for parking spaces, the vehicle speed should be not higher than 25 km/h, and the lateral distance between the driving path and alternative parking space is maintained between 0.5 - 1.8 m.
- During the process of searching for parking spaces, ensure that the angle between the vehicle and the parking space line is not larger than 15°. If the angle is too large, the parking space may not be recognized.
- When vehicle speed is higher than 30 km/h, the auto parking assist system can not be turned on; if it is entered in auto parking assist system, the system will exit directly.

Auto parking out

OMT28-4810

Select "Auto parking" on the parking screen. On the automatic parking screen, select "Auto parking out" to enter the auto parking out screen. Follow the system prompts to operate.

OMT28-4832

Select the parking direction by moving turn signal light lever. After the system takes over the parking operation, follow the system instructions to enter the automatic parking out process.

After parking completed, the system automatically turns on electronic parking brake system, and the gear position is switched to P. At this point, the user takes over the vehicle operation.

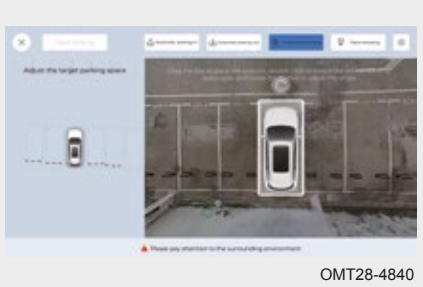
⚠ WARNING
Auto parking out only supports horizontal parking spaces. To avoid accidents, do not use it in other scenarios.

Auto selecting parking space

OMT28-4810

Select "Auto parking" on the parking screen. On the automatic parking screen, select "Auto selecting parking space" to enter the auto selecting parking space screen.

Double click " " to switch the parking direction, drag " " to select a parking position, control " " to finely adjust the angle. Users need to ensure the availability of the selected location.


OMT28-4840

After the target parking space is confirmed and the system takes over the parking operation, follow the system instructions to enter the auto parking in process.

After parking completed, the system automatically turns on electronic parking brake system, and the gear position is switched to P. At this point, the user takes over the vehicle operation.

READ

When using auto selecting parking space, ensure that the vehicle is stationary, otherwise the function will be unavailable.

Tracking Reverse

The tracking reverse will record the driving route before reversing, and can automatically reverse to the original position without the need for the driver to control the steering wheel.

OMT28-4780

Select "Tracking reverse" on the parking screen. When the conditions of the tracking reverse are met, the audio system will prompt the user "-Tracking reverse function is available, please stop". After applying brake, the system will control the vehicle and prompt "-Please release the brake and steering wheel". At this time, the system will control the vehicle to return to the memory route at a speed not higher than 5 km/h.

After parking completed, the system automatically turns on electronic parking brake system, and the gear position is switched to P. At this point, the user takes over the vehicle operation.

READ

- After the tracking reverse is activated, the tracking reverse screen in the audio system displays the reverse distance, which can support up to 50 m.
- The tracking reverse is mainly used for reversing in narrow alleys, and is also suitable for reversing on wide roads according to the original track.
- After turning on the tracking reverse function, if the vehicle has not traveled a certain distance after being powered on, the tracking reverse function is not available.
- When the vehicle speed is not higher than 15 km/h, the user drives the vehicle forward, and the tracking reverse automatically records the most recent route of 50 m.

CAUTION

- When encountering non-fixed obstacles such as pedestrians and vehicles during the reversing process, and there is a risk of collision, the user shall always pay attention to the vehicle surroundings and be ready to take over the vehicle, avoiding safety accidents.
- There is a safe distance limit when the system controls the vehicle. When you use tracking reverse, in order to ensure the normal use of the function, please make sure that the distance between the vehicle and the surroundings on both sides is at least 30 cm.

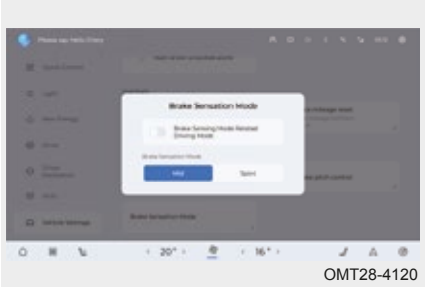
5-10. Braking Force Control System

Integrated Braking Force Control System

Integrated braking force control system is an advanced decoupling electro-hydraulic brake system, which can provide the vehicle with power as "it needs" according to the driver's braking requirement, enhancing vehicle stability and comfort.

Braking feeling

Integrated braking force control system is equipped with two kinds of braking feeling (comfort/sport), which is used to adjust brake pedal feeling. The relationship curve between brake pedal depth and vehicle deceleration is different in different modes, and the driver can select preferred style of braking feeling.



OMT28-4120

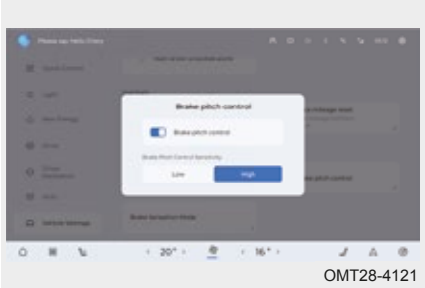
With vehicle in READY state, turn on Brake Sensation Mode Related Driving Mode through Audio System - Vehicle Settings, and brake sensation mode can be set separately (Mid/Sport) after turning off.

READ

Braking feeling can be associated with driving mode. After association, the braking feeling is Mid in the vehicle normal mode/ECO mode, while the braking feeling is Sport in vehicle sport mode; After disassociation, braking feeling can be set to Mid/Sport separately.

Comfort Stop (CST)

When vehicle decelerates and stops in non-emergency situations, integrated braking force control system reduces the suspension tilt and impact at the moment of stopping by controlling braking pressure of four brakes, so as to provide the driver with the feeling of smooth stopping.



OMT28-4121

With vehicle in READY status, turn on Brake pitch control and set sensitivity (low/high) through Audio System - Vehicle Center - Vehicle Settings.

Electronic Stability Control System

Electronic stability control system keeps vehicle stability when oversteering or understeering. When oversteering or understeering is detected, system applies braking to one or more wheels to enhance control of vehicle stability and ensure the lateral stability of vehicle driving.

OMT28-4132

With vehicle in READY status, click " OFF " button on quick menu to turn on/off electronic stability control system.

READ

- Electronic stability control system cannot be turned off during operation.
- Electronic stability control system may give an alarm abnormally after replacing with the non-full size spare tire. After using the normal size tire and driving for 1 km, it will automatically return to normal.

Electronic stability program system indicator

When turning off, " OFF " yellow indicator on instrument cluster remains on.

During operation, " " yellow indicator on instrument cluster blinks.

When there is a fault, " " yellow indicator on instrument cluster remains on.

WARNING

- When ESP is malfunctioning, please go to the authorized service station for inspection and repair as soon as possible.
- Even when ESP is working, high speed driving, sharp turns or poor road conditions can cause accidents.
- ESP function does not completely ensure that you can take over vehicle if it has lost control due to various extreme situations. Even with ESP, always follow laws and regulations to avoid accidents.
- The function of driver assistance relies on ESP for safety. If ESP is turned off, many functions of driver assistance will not be available, temporary malfunction light may appear on the instrument cluster to indicate that the function is not available (not driver assistance system failure). In order to continue to use the driver assistance function, turn on ESP function again, the driver assistance function will recover.

Function limit

■ Under the following conditions, ESP needs to be turned off:

1. When driving with tire chains.
2. When starting vehicle on power tester.
3. When driving on roads with deep snow or loose gravel.

READ

To improve vehicle traction when driving on sand or gravel, it is recommended to turn ESP off.

Hill Descent Control (HDC) System

HDC system can help vehicle drive on steep roads safely under controlled conditions. After HDC is turned on, when vehicle is driving down on a steep slope, speed control range is 10 - 35 km/h. When initial speed is lower than the minimum speed, vehicle will control at the minimum speed by default. The current control vehicle speed can be increased or decreased in a given speed range by depressing accelerator or brake pedal.

OMT28-4133

When vehicle speed is no more than 60 km/h, click " " button on quick menu to turn on/off hill descent control system.

CAUTION

- Before entering steep road, set hill descent control system so that driver can operate steering wheel without distraction.
- When hill descent control system is working, the ABS system will start automatically if there is a tire lock.
- When hill descent control system is working, if any wheel loses contact with ground, the braking force will be distributed to the wheel with higher adhesion coefficient.
- Hill descent control system actively applies braking force through the operation of ESP. There will be a hydraulic operation sound when working, which is a normal phenomenon. When the ESP fails, the descent control system cannot be turned on. Please go to authorized service station for inspection and repair as soon as possible.

WARNING

The driver must control vehicle and operate as needed during the whole driving process to avoid danger.

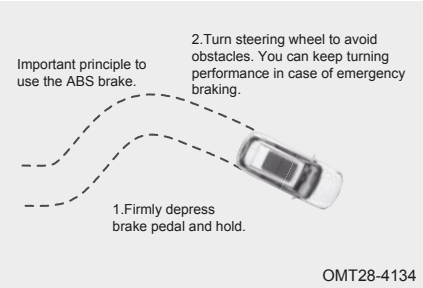
Hill descent control system indicator

When it is activated, " " green indicator on instrument cluster remains on.

When there is a fault, " " yellow indicator on instrument cluster remains on.

Anti-lock Brake System (ABS)

ABS can prevent wheel from being locked in excessive braking or braking on a slippery road, avoiding vehicle sideways slippage or vehicle drifting and keeping vehicle stability.



ABS does not function during normal braking and operates only (-brake pedal pulsates with noise, ensuring brake performance and steering performance, if the space is enough, the vehicle can also avoid obstacles) during sudden braking. Never release brake pedal in this case.

⚠ WARNING

- Always drive carefully and make sure to decelerate during turning.
- When ABS is malfunctioning, please go to the authorized service station for inspection and repair as soon as possible.
- Although anti-lock brake system can ensure the best braking effect, braking distance will vary largely due to road conditions.
- Also, anti-lock brake system cannot eliminate risks arising from close-following driving, driving through water, turning quickly or driving on poor road surfaces and cannot avoid accidents caused by inattentive or inappropriate driving.
- ABS cannot ensure that braking distance can be shortened in any situations. When vehicle is equipped with tire chains, on sand or snow covered roads, vehicles with ABS may require a longer braking distance compared to vehicles without ABS.

Anti-lock brake system indicator

When there is a fault, " " yellow indicator on instrument cluster remains on.

⚠ WARNING

When ABS malfunction indicator and brake system malfunction indicator remain on at the same time, park your vehicle in a safety place far away from major traffic and contact the authorized service station for inspection and repair immediately.

Function limit

■ ABS will make operation sound in following conditions:

1. Rebounding sound of brake pedal.
2. Impacting sound between suspension and vehicle body due to emergency braking.
3. Operation sound of motor, solenoid valve and return pump in hydraulic unit.
4. Operation sound of solenoid valve when electronic brake force distribution system is intervened in braking.
5. Buzz will be heard for a short time after vehicle is powered on or engine is started, indicating system self-test is performed.

■ Always maintain a safe distance from vehicle ahead in the following situations:

1. When driving on rough roads.
2. When driving on roads with potholes or uneven surfaces.
3. When driving with tire chains.
4. When driving on dirt, gravel or snow-covered roads.

⚠ CAUTION

Tire size, specification and tread pattern wear will seriously affect ABS performance. Replacement tires should have same size, load capacity and structure as original one. When a tire is faulty, it is recommended to replace with an original brand at a the authorized service station.

⚠ WARNING

- When driving on rainy days, properly control the vehicle speed, because if the wheel spins or slips, ABS system will lose control of vehicle.
- Although ABS system can help to control vehicle, make sure to drive carefully, maintain a moderate speed and keep safe distance from preceding vehicles. There are certain limitations in vehicle stability and steering wheel operation effect even ABS system operates.

Extended Function

Brake Force Distribution (EBD) system

EBD system automatically adjusts braking force distribution ratio of front and rear axles according to axial load transfer difference caused by braking to improve braking efficiency. In addition, EBD system works together with ABS system to improve braking stability. Also, when braking in curve, brake force of inside and outside wheel can be adjusted to improve braking stability.

Traction Control System (TCS)

During starting off or rapidly acceleration, driving wheels may slip. On slippery roads such as snowy or icy road, direction could get out of control and cause a dangerous situation. When TCS detects that driven wheel speed is lower than drive wheel speed (a feature of slip) using sensors, it sends a signal to adjust ignition timing, reduce throttle opening, downshift or brake wheels so that wheel will no longer slip.

Uphill Assist System (HAC)

HAC system can prevent vehicle from moving backward when starting off on uphill. After vehicle is stationary, HAC system adopts longitudinal acceleration sensor to determine if the vehicle is on a slope. When vehicle starts from stationary state on a slope to drive or reverse upwards, HAC system automatically operates. When starting off, after driver releases brake pedal, system maintains previous braking pressure for 2 to 3 seconds to hold the vehicle. As increasing of drive torque, brake pressure reduces gradually, avoiding accidents caused by moving backward when starting off on a slope.

Brake Assist System (BAS)

Generates an increased level of braking force after the brake pedal is depressed when the system detects a panic stop situation.

Brake Override System (BOS)

When the accelerator and brake pedals are depressed at the same time, the engine output may be restrained.

Emergency Brake Assist (EBA) system

EBA system is used to shorten the braking distance in emergency braking. In an emergency, driver usually brakes in time, but generally does not apply the maximum braking force, thus lengthening braking distance. In this case, EBA system will operate: When driver depresses brake pedal rapidly in an emergency with insufficient force, EBA system quickly increases brake pressure to maximum level, making anti-lock brake system to short braking distance more quickly and effectively.

5-11. Plug-in Hybrid Electric Vehicle System (PHEV)

PHEV can be driven by fuel energy and electricity energy, which combines the advantages of electric vehicle and fuel vehicle, there is no need to worry about driving mileage of electric vehicle and high fuel consumption of fuel vehicle. It satisfies economy, energy-saving and environmental friendly.

Power Battery

Basic function of power battery

The main method of charging power battery is to plug in the external power gun for charging, and power battery can also be charged by motor when braking, sliding or starting engine.

The vehicle has intelligent recharging function. When the function is triggered, 12 V battery will be charged by power battery. Therefore, when the vehicle is started again after being placed for a period of time, SOC or pure electric driving mileage displayed on instrument cluster will decrease, which is a normal phenomenon.

■ Since the performance of power battery will decline in low temperature environment, the following treatment methods will help you to use the vehicle better:

1. If ambient temperature is lower than -10℃, it is recommended to park vehicle in a warm house or a garage with room temperature.
2. If there is no warm house or garage with room temperature, the vehicle has charging and heating functions of plug-in charging gun. If charging gun is connected, it is recommended to select travel reservation function half an hour before departure, which can increase power battery temperature to the best state and turn on air conditioning in advance, so that you can have a better driving experience.

■ The following methods will help power battery to be in the best state:

1. It is recommended to charge the power battery fully with a charging device at least once every month.
2. When SOC is less than 20% during driving, avoid sudden acceleration and high-speed driving, and charge it as soon as possible.
3. When the vehicle is not used for a long time, park it in a place where the ambient temperature is lower than 45 ℃ and there is no ponding, and try to avoid direct sunlight.
4. When the vehicle is not used for a long time, SOC displayed on instrument cluster may be inaccurate. Do not judge the remaining power of power battery based on SOC, and charge battery fully before driving.
5. When the vehicle is not used for a long time, the power battery should be charged and maintain the SOC at 50%-70%. Failure to do so may cause excessive discharge of the power battery and decrease the power battery

performance, and vehicle malfunction and damage caused by this will not be guaranteed.

6. For a new vehicle, when the power battery is in normal condition, vehicle driving mileage may fluctuate due to driving habits (such as frequent acceleration and deceleration), road conditions (such as driving on a large and long slope), temperature (such as low temperature) and whether electric equipment (such as air conditioning) is turned on, which is a normal phenomenon.
7. Power battery is a special chemical product, which needs to be used and maintained properly, so proper daily use and maintenance is very important for performance maintenance. At the same time, power battery will decline naturally due to chemical characteristics. Therefore, for vehicles that have been used for a period of time, when trip mileage decreases after battery is fully charged, it is recommended to go to authorized service station for inspection. If authorized service station checks that the total capacity of power battery is in normal range, the decrease of trip mileage may be caused by external reasons such as driving habits, temperature etc.

Power battery recovery

■ Recover and disposal range

Power battery whose residual capacity and charge and discharge performance after using cannot guarantee the vehicle normal driving, or is not used again after it is removed due to other reasons.

■ Recover and disposal process

The power battery is installed on the vehicle chassis, which consists of lithium battery cells. Disposal at will can cause pollution and harm to the environment.

According to relevant regulations, vehicle owner is obliged to hand over used power battery to recycling service stations. It is strictly forbidden to hand over used power battery to other units or individuals. The vehicle owner shall be responsible for environmental pollution or safety accidents caused by unauthorized removal or disassembly of the power battery.

Be sure to dispose according to the following information or requirements. For details on the recycling and disposal of power battery, please go to authorized service station.

1. The temporary recycling service station for used power battery is the local authorized service station.
2. The disassembly of power battery must be performed by professional serviceman with certification qualification of power battery supplier.
3. The power battery belongs to the 9th category of dangerous goods and must be transported by vehicles with the 9th category of dangerous goods transportation qualification.

4. The removed power battery should be stored in a normal temperature, dry environment, away from flammable materials, heat sources, water sources and other hazards.

⚠ WARNING
• Do not dispose of power battery by yourself. • Do not sell, transfer or modify power battery. • When power battery needs to be repaired, removed, replaced and disposed, always go to authorized service station.

Usage precautions for power battery

Power battery belongs to high voltage energy-storage device and dangerous goods. It is necessary to go to authorized service station to have professional serviceman install and maintain power battery and observe related safety regulations strictly; Non-professional serviceman and improper operation and use may cause serious results such as electric shock, combustion, explosion etc. Non-professional serviceman are prohibited to install, repair power battery and abuse it beyond specified range. Power battery damage and other losses caused by using it without observing requirements or beyond specified range will not be guaranteed. Pay attention to the following:

1. Anti-shock and anti-collision

   The battery cells of power battery are connected in series and equipped with management system and various sensor devices, so be careful when driving on uneven roads to prevent power battery from bumping.

2. Heat insulation in any environment

   Keeping power battery in the best operating temperature range can greatly prolong the service life of battery and improve safety performance, so try to park vehicle in heat insulation and ventilated places.

3. Moisture-proof and water-proof

   Power battery is a high voltage energy-storage device with many high voltage control circuits and battery cells. The liquid entering power battery may cause short circuit, electricity leakage and corrosion of battery cells, electric circuits and connectors. Make sure that power battery will not be soaked by various liquids and moist air will not enter the power battery.

New Energy

OMT28-1011

Energy consumption list: Query the data of total mileage/total driving mileage/recent 50 km/since reset.

Energy Flow: Display current energy flow condition of vehicle.

Charging/discharging management: Set charge reservation/external discharge.

Energy management: Set battery protection mode, energy recovery intensity, pure electric mileage display and driving distance display.

More: Set appointment trip, ECO mode and disclaimer.

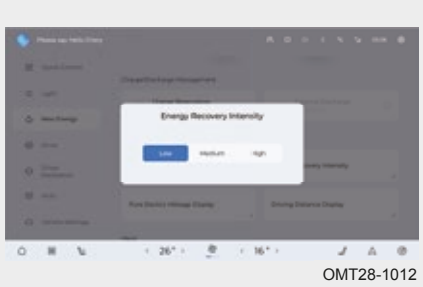
Energy Flow Condition	Description
Pure electric drive	Only motor drives the vehicle, the engine is not working.
Extended range mode	Engine charges the power battery, and motor drives the vehicle to drive.
Parallel drive	Engine and motor drive vehicle at the same time.
Engine direct drive	Engine drives vehicle directly.
Generating electricity when driving	Engine charges power battery when engine drives the vehicle.
Generating electricity when parking	Engine charges power battery when parking.
Feedback brake	Motor recovers braking energy and charges power battery.

⚠ WARNING

The pedestrian protection sound can only be turned off when there is no other road user within a short distance and the surrounding environment clearly does not require a prompt sound. As long as pedestrian is likely to appear around the vehicle, pedestrian protection sound needs to be turned on.

Energy Recovery Intensity

When vehicle is coasting, the system will convert the mechanical energy of motor into electrical energy to recover energy and charge the power battery, thus reducing energy consumption.



OMT28-1012

With vehicle in READY state, set energy recovery intensity (Low/medium/high) through Audio System - Vehicle Center - New Energy.

Energy Recovery	Function
Energy recovery intensity is low	The vehicle coasts for a long distance and driving comfort is better.
Energy recovery intensity is medium	It is suitable for most driving habits because it combines driving comfort and energy recovery efficiency.
Energy recovery intensity is high	Vehicle deceleration is highest and it can recover more energy.

READ

- Under conditions of a higher SOC or low ambient temperature, there may be difference in the driving experience of energy recovery.
- Energy recovery intensity is set as low or medium for a better balance of driving comfort and economy. Energy recovery intensity is set as high, which may cause a dragging feeling, so it is recommended for high speed driving.

Operating Mode

Power mode

OMT28-1013

With vehicle in READY state, click power mode button (EV/HEV) on quick menu to switch the power mode; The corresponding mode indicator on instrument cluster comes on to prompt you that power mode is switched successfully.

OMT28-1014

With vehicle in READY state, set power mode (HEV/EV/EV+) through Audio System - Vehicle Center - Driving; The corresponding mode indicator on instrument cluster comes on to prompt you that power mode is switched successfully.

OMT28-1015

With vehicle in READY state, press EV/HEV button to switch the power mode; The corresponding mode indicator on instrument cluster comes on to prompt you that power mode is switched successfully.

Power Mode		Description
EV mode	EV	The vehicle is driven by pure electricity and the engine does not start.
	EV+	Increase the depth of discharge to provide a longer pure electric driving mileage than EV mode. It is recommended to use this mode only in an emergency to reduce the deep discharge of the battery, which is helpful for improving the maintenance of battery.
HEV mode	HEV	The vehicle is driven by hybrid power, and the engine can start or stop at any time to participate in driving or power generation according to requirements of working conditions.

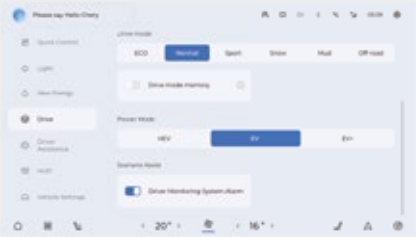
READ

- When the power battery level is higher, the vehicle will automatically switch to electric mode (EV mode) if it is in READY state. It is recommended that you prioritize the use of electric mode (EV mode).
- With vehicle in READY state, P gear and HEV mode, when the power battery level is below a certain value, depressing the accelerator pedal can trigger the forced parking power generation function.
- When vehicle runs continuously in electric mode, pure electric driving mileage decreases with the decrease of battery level. When power battery level is too low, it will switch to HEV mode automatically.
- In some conditions (such as low battery level), it may be impossible to switch from HEV mode to electric mode, and "Current Conditions Not Met, Mode Cannot Be Switched" will be displayed on instrument cluster.
- If vehicle is used in electric mode for a long period of time, the lubrication condition of engine may deteriorate due to infrequent use, therefore, the engine will be automatically started for self-maintenance at regular intervals. Once the maintenance is completed, the engine will automatically shut down.

Drive mode

OMT28-1013

With vehicle in READY state, click drive mode button (ECO/Standard/Sport) on quick menu to switch the driving mode; The corresponding mode indicator on instrument cluster comes on to prompt you that drive mode is switched successfully.


OMT28-1016

Turn vehicle power to ON mode and the vehicle is stationary or drives safely. Set Drive mode (ECO/Standard/Sport) through Audio System - Vehicle Center - Drive; And the corresponding mode indicator on instrument cluster will come on and prompt you that drive mode is switched successfully.

OMT28-1017

With vehicle in READY state, turn the drive mode knob to cycle through the drive modes; The corresponding mode indicator on instrument cluster comes on to prompt you that drive mode is switched successfully.

OMT28-1018

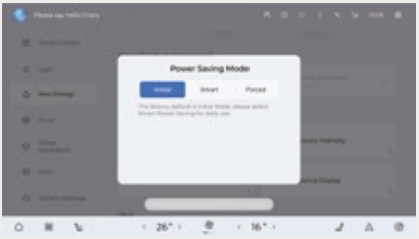
With vehicle in READY state, turn the drive mode knob to pop up the drive mode screen in audio system, then manually select the drive mode; The corresponding mode indicator on instrument cluster comes on to prompt you that drive mode is switched successfully.

Drive Mode	Description
Normal mode	Combine vehicle power and economy, which is suitable for all kinds of roads.
Eco mode	Improve the fuel economy of the vehicle, which is suitable for the flat and hard roads such as urban roads and paved roads.
Sport mode	Improve vehicle power and realizes higher response speed and driving experience. It is suitable for wide and flat roads with few vehicles (such as motorway).

READ

The adaptive cruise control system in Eco mode provides a gentle acceleration, and the adaptive cruise control system in sport mode provides a faster acceleration.

Power protection mode



OMT28-1019

With vehicle in READY state, set power protection mode (Initial/Smart/Forced) through Audio System - Vehicle Center - New Energy.

It is recommended to select the smart power protection mode, which can achieve a better balance of economy and power.

Power Protection Mode	Description	Common Usage Scenarios
Initial mode	The maximum battery power can be discharged to achieve the maximum pure electric driving mileage.	Suitable for users who drive daily and have charging conditions.
Smart power protection mode	Prioritize the fuel economy, intelligently select the best charging time while driving, and reserve energy for pure electric or high-power driving.	Suitable for various usage scenarios, and this mode is recommended.
Forced battery protection mode	Prioritize the battery level holding to get as close as possible to the target battery level, so as to reserve energy for pure electric or high-power driving. Fuel economy will deteriorate in this mode.	Suitable for camping and other usage scenarios that require external discharging.

READ

- In non-forced battery protection mode, when vehicle is powered off and then powered on again, it will enter the battery level mode memorized before powering off.
- In forced battery protection mode, different target battery levels can be set based on specific needs, at the same time, you can select whether to memorize the forced battery protection settings. If "Memorized" is selected, it is still the forced power saving next time the power is turned on; If "Not memorized" is selected, it will switch to Smart power saving next time the power is turned on.

Operating mode linkage

Power Mode		Drive Mode	Power Protection Mode		
			Initial mode	Smart power protection mode	Forced battery protection mode
EV mode	EV	Normal mode	√	√	√
		Eco mode	√	√	√
	EV+	Eco mode	√	√	√
HEV mode	HEV	Normal mode	√	√	√
		Eco mode	√	√	√
		Sport mode	√	√	√

Electric mode supports all power saving modes, electric mode (EV mode) does not support the sport mode, and electric mode (EV+ mode) does not support the normal mode or sport mode; If sport mode is selected in electric mode, the power mode will automatically switch to HEV mode even if there is no operation in the power mode.

HEV mode supports all driving modes and power saving mode, and switches to electric mode by switching operation; If the switching conditions are not met, it will remain in the HEV mode, and "Current Conditions Not Met, Mode Cannot Be Switched" will be displayed on instrument cluster.

Pure electric driving mileage

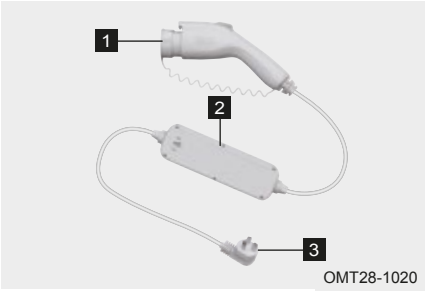
■ Pure electric driving mileage may be affected by the following factors:

1. Driving habits: Frequent acceleration and deceleration or intense driving will result in shorter mileage compared to constant speed driving.
2. Usage of equipment such as air conditioning: Turning on the air conditioning for cooling or heating will result in shorter mileage compared to turning off.
3. Road conditions: Bumpy roads or long uphill roads will result in shorter mileage compared to flat and dry road conditions.
4. Temperature: Available power or driving mileage will decrease as the temperature decreases, and low temperature environments will result in shorter mileage compared to room temperature environments.
5. During actual usage, driving mileage will also show different variations due to weather, roads, congestion and other factors.

Charging Device

External wire harness charging port assembly

External wire harness charging port assembly is a charging device equipped with the vehicle. Connect the vehicle to a socket (220V/20A special AC circuit and three-hole socket) that meets the local national standard to charge the vehicle. Using special AC circuit can prevent short circuit or line trip protection due to high power when charging power battery. If special AC circuit is not used, the normal operation of other devices on the line may be effected.



1 Charging gun

2 Control box

3 Charging plug (Due to market differences, the charging plug style is subject to the actual vehicle)

Dear users, in order for you to reasonably use the on-board AC slow charging gun for safe charging, the following tips are hereby given. Please read them carefully and use them as required.

- Please use the national standard single-phase power supply socket with the specification of AC250V16A, and use copper core conductor with a wire diameter no less than 2.5 mm ² as the socket wiring, and it must be well grounded;
- The front end of power supply socket must be equipped with a leakage protection air switch. The specifications of the leakage protection air switch are a single-phase rated current of 20 A and a leakage protection threshold of 30 mA;
- It is strictly forbidden to use non-standard power supply equipment such as old socket, universal socket, adapter, adapter cable, modified socket, and grounding Device;
- If the surface of AC slow charging gun or power supply socket is damaged, rusted, blackened, melted, deformed or other abnormalities, please do not charge;
- It is strictly forbidden to soak the entire power supply plug or AC slow charging gun in water. It is strictly forbidden to charge outdoors in rainy and snowy weather or flammable, explosive and other dangerous environments. Do not clean the vehicle while charging;
- When inserting and unplugging the charging plug, please hold the plug or handle, do not pull the wire, and ensure that the plug and jack are inserted in place;

- It is strictly forbidden to unplug the vehicle plug or power supply plug during charging. If there is an emergency, please manually disconnect the leakage protection air switch to cut off the power;
- If charging is stopped when charging does not automatically end, after the power supply socket is manually disconnected or leakage protection air switch on socket cuts off the power supply automatically, manually remove the charging gun.
- When collecting the AC slow charging gun, it is strictly forbidden to throw it away, which will cause product damage. The dust cover must be installed in place after use;
- During charging, if the temperature of the power supply port rises abnormally, please check if the power supply socket is aging and replace the power supply socket in time.

⚠ WARNING

- It must be well grounded during use.
- Never step on, crush, drag or bend the cable.
- When charging is stopped, unplug the charging gun first and then power supply plug.
- Never use adapter cable or adapter, and never plug and unplug with power on.
- Do not disassemble and maintain without permission, otherwise the results are at your own risk.
- When not in use, insert vehicle plug dust cover completely.
- Never expose the product to flammable gas to avoid danger.
- Make sure that charging port is dry and free of foreign matters to avoid short circuit that may cause fire.
- This product is only used when the power supply is equipped with RCD short-circuit protector.
- Never destroy the product violently, drop it or place heavy objects on the product surface.
- When using this product, confirm that the plug is tightly inserted and the indicator is normal.
- This product is only used for applicable model, and should not be used in other vehicles to avoid damage to the vehicle.
- When starting vehicle, it is necessary to confirm that charging gun has been unplugged completely, otherwise charging device and vehicle may be damaged.
- Never put this product in water, liquid or snow and rain. Avoid plugging or unplugging the plug with wet hands to avoid personal injuries.
- The operating temperature is -30℃-+ 50℃. Never put the product near high-temperature objects or expose it to sunlight.
- Be sure to use genuine charging cable. If other charging cables are used, the power battery may not be charged normally and cause malfunction.
- If this product cannot charge normally, please go to authorized service station for inspection and repair.

Control box indicators

Operating/ Malfunctioning Condition	Power Indicator (Green)	Charging Indicator (Red)	Malfunction Indicator (Red)	Charging Completion Indicator (Green)
Initial state	Remain on	Flash once	Flash once	Flash once
Waiting for charging mode	Remain on	Turn off	Turn off	Turn off
Normal charging mode	Remain on	Remain on	Turn off	Turn off
Charging completed	Remain on	Turn off	Turn off	Remain on
Self-checking	Remain on	Turn off	Flash	Turn off
Communication malfunction	Remain on	Remain on	Flash	Turn off
Input voltage overvoltage/ undervoltage	Remain on	Turn off	Remain on	Turn off
Grounded malfunction	Remain on	Turn off	Remain on	Flash
Overcurrent malfunction	Remain on	Flash	Remain on	Turn off
Leakage malfunction	Remain on	Turn off	Flash	Flash
Over temperature protection	Remain on	Remain on	Remain on	Remain on

⚠ CAUTION
Do not attempt to remove or repair control box. If above malfunctions occur, please go to authorized service station.

Troubleshooting common malfunctions

■ Unable to charge

1. Observe status of indicator and analyze it according to malfunction status.
2. Check if it is grounded well.
3. Check if voltage of power supply is normal.
4. Check if connection of vehicle is normal.

■ Intermittent charging

1. Observe status of indicator and analyze it according to malfunction status.
2. Check if 220 V AC is stable.
3. Check if temperature is too high.

■ Power on trip during charging

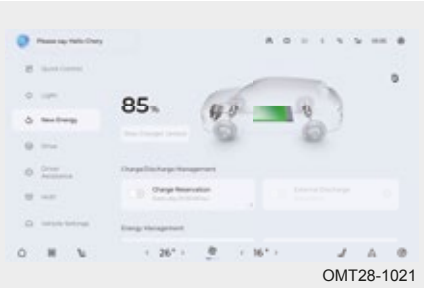
1. Check if it is grounded well.
2. Check if device is short circuit.
3. Check if total power of all electric equipment is too high.

■ Malfunction occurs each time power on when charging

Unplug three-pin plug and charging gun, then insert and unplug them again. If malfunction still occurs, please go to authorized service station immediately.

Charging Method

Charging management



OMT28-1021

With vehicle in READY state, turn on/off appointment charging through Audio System - Vehicle Center - New Energy.

READ

Charge Reservation is only suitable for AC charging, including portable AC charging devices and private charging piles, and needs to be realized with the charging gun connected. The charging piles that use card swiping or code scanning are not available.

Inspection before charging

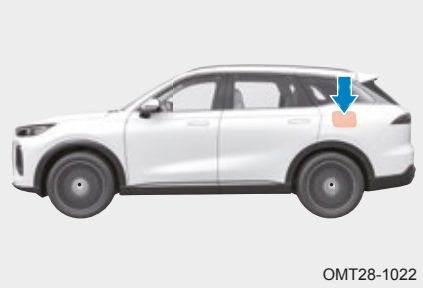
■ If any of the following conditions occur, charging is prohibited, otherwise it may cause short circuit or electric shock, resulting in personal injury.

1. When the connection of discharging device is loose, do not perform charging.
2. Make sure that there is no water or foreign matter in the charging port, and the metal terminals are not rusted or corroded.
3. Make sure that the charging device is free from shell breakage, cable wear, rusty plug and other abnormal conditions.

READ

- The vehicle cannot be charged while the software is being upgraded.
- The vehicle must be in a parked state before charging.
- Do not forcibly open the charging port cover if it is not unlocked.
- Please carefully read and follow the usage instructions and precautions related to the charging device.
- If vehicle is charged in a high or low temperature environment, charging power will be reduced and charging time will be prolonged.
- Both AC and DC charging can be performed in any power mode. However, for safety, it is recommended to turn off the vehicle before charging.
- When the temperature of power battery is low, it may not charge at full power during the initial stages of charging. As the battery temperature increases during charging, the charging power will increase.

AC slow charging



Step 1: Park vehicle in charging area, shift the shift lever to P, and apply the parking brake;

Step 2: Turn off appointment charging through Audio System - Vehicle Center - New Energy to switch vehicle to power off state;

Step 3: Push center rear of the charging port cover to open it;

OMT28-1023

Step 4: Open the back door and take out the charging device, then insert the three-pin plug into a standard power socket (only using on-board charging gun is applicable to this step). If AC charging pile is used for charging, please skip to step 5 directly;

Step 5: Unplug dust covers of charging port and charging gun, and insert charging gun into charging port until a slight sound is heard;

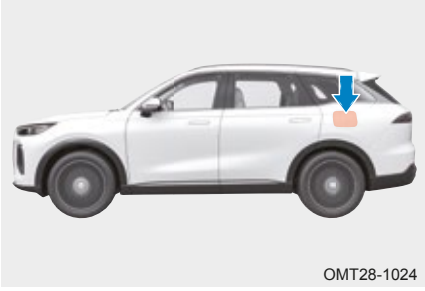
Step 6: After charging is completed, press and hold the upper button on charging gun to unplug the charging gun from charging port;

Step 7: Close dust covers of charging port and charging gun, and close charging port cover.

READ

- AC charging gun must be equipped with leakage protection and temperature monitoring devices, with a current limit of 230 V/10 A/50 Hz.
- For a better power experience during towing, it is recommended to charge the vehicle in advance before towing so that the SOC is 50% or more.

DC fast charging


OMT28-1024

Step 1: Park vehicle in charging area, shift the shift lever to P, and apply the parking brake;

Step 2: Turn off appointment charging through Audio System - Vehicle Center - New Energy to switch vehicle to power off state;

Step 3: Push center rear of the charging port cover to open it;

OMT28-1025

Step 4: Remove special charging gun from charging pile, unplug dust cover of charging port, and insert charging gun into charging port until a slight sound is heard;

Step 5: After charging is completed, press and hold the upper button on charging gun to unplug the charging gun from charging port;

Step 6: Close dust covers of charging port and charging gun, and close charging port cover.

Appointment charging

OMT28-1026

Step 1: Park vehicle in charging area, shift the shift lever to P, and apply the parking brake;

Step 2: Turn on appointment charging (set the start time and charging duration) through Audio System - Vehicle Center - New Energy, and switch vehicle to power off state;

Step 3: Push center rear of the charging port cover to open it;

OMT28-1027

Step 4: Unplug dust covers of AC charging port and charging gun, and insert charging gun into charging port until a slight sound is heard. After the appointed time is reached, charging will be started;

Step 5: After charging is completed, press and hold the upper button on charging gun to unplug the charging gun from charging port;

Step 6: Close dust covers of charging port and charging gun, and close charging port cover.

Charging indicator

OMT28-1028

The indicator light strip is located inside the charging port cover.

Remains on in white: Under dim light conditions, charging port cover is open, and no charging gun is inserted (turns off after vehicle enters sleep state).

Remains on in red: Fault indication.

Remains on in yellow: Charging gun is connected, but charging has not started (turns off after vehicle enters sleep state).

Flashes in green: It is being charged.

Remains on in green: Charging is completed and stopped, and charging gun is not unplugged.

⚠ CAUTION

- After DC fast charging is completed, unplug the charging gun in time.
- After charging with a portable AC charging device is completed, unplug the charging gun end first, and then unplug the connector at power supply end.
- With vehicle powered off, if front compartment cover is not fully closed after being opened, charge now, charge reservation, and appointment trip functions will not operate properly.
- It is recommended to use portable AC charging device (220 V, 50 Hz, 8 A) provided with vehicle or AC charging pile (220 V, 50 Hz, 32 A) with recommended specification. Please refer to charging pile manual for specific technical parameters.
- During charging, ensure that vehicle is properly connected to the power supply end, and do not unplug the charging gun.
- During charging, the charging gun will be locked automatically. With charging not completed/stopped: If vehicle is in the armed state, press the unlock button on smart key twice continuously to unlock the charging gun and stop charging; if vehicle is in the disarming state, stop the charging power output or click Slow Charger Unlock on the New Energy screen to unlock the charging gun. After charging is completed: If vehicle is in the disarming state, charging gun will unlock automatically; if vehicle is in the armed state, charging gun will remain be locked, and can only be unlocked after disarming. The charging gun can only be unplugged after it is unlocked. Never operate it forcibly.

⚠ WARNING

It is strictly forbidden to use AC/DC adapter for charging, as it will cause damage to the vehicle and personal injury.

AC Charging Socket Electronic Lock

The vehicle AC charging socket is equipped with an electronic lock function, which prevents the charging gun from being plugged in and pulled out with electricity, and avoids charging safety problems.

■ Locking of electronic lock

Use 32A AC charging pile that meets the national standard for charging. After the charging gun is inserted in place and after the electronic lock is automatically locked, the vehicle will start charging.

⚠ WARNING

After the electronic lock is locked, if you need to remove the charging gun, please unlock the electronic lock before pulling out the gun; Do not pull the gun forcibly, so as not to damage the electronic lock or charging gun and other charging equipment.

■ Unlocking of electronic lock

Normal electronic lock unlocking is divided into the following two ways:

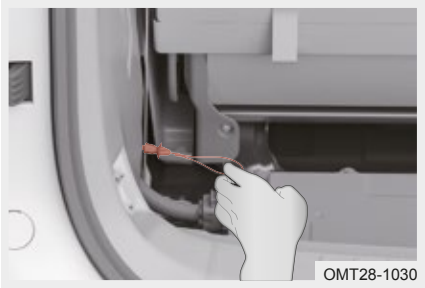
1. Press the lock button on smart key first, then press the unlock button on it to unlock the electronic lock, and gently press the mechanical lock button on the charging gun to pull out the charging gun.
2. Without using the smart key, hold the charging gun by your hand and press the button on the charging gun with your thumb. When you hear the electronic lock unlocking sound, first lift your thumb, and then quickly press the mechanical lock button on the charging gun again to pull out the charging gun.

READ

- If the charging gun is not pulled out after the electronic lock is unlocked, the electronic lock will be automatically relocked after several seconds.
- If the vehicle is in the unlocked state and the electronic lock is in the locked state, it is necessary to close the door and lock the vehicle before performing above electronic lock unlocking operation.

If the above unlocking method is invalid, emergency unlocking can be performed by cutting off the power supply of the charging device (for example, click stop charging on APP interface, turn off the power supply of the charging pile, press the emergency stop switch of charging pile).

Emergency Unlocking of Electronic Lock (Only for AC Charging)



When abnormal lock fault occurs in electronic lock of the charging gun or discharging gun, the charging gun and discharging gun can be manually unlocked with electronic lock cable.

Step 1: Make sure that the vehicle is not charged/discharged at present according to charging information displayed on instrument cluster;

Step 2: Open back door, lift the luggage compartment carpet and take out storage box;

Step 3: Pull the electronic lock cable to manually unlock the charging gun and discharging gun.

⚠ WARNING

- The electronic lock cable can only be used when charging gun or discharging gun cannot be unlocked from charging port by conventional methods. Continuous use may cause damage to electronic lock cable or charging device.
- Do not try to unlock charging gun while pulling electronic lock cable. Be sure to pull electronic lock cable before trying to unplug charging gun from charging port. Failure to do so may cause electric shock and serious injuries.
- Do not perform this operation when charging vehicle or any orange high voltage cable is exposed; Failure to do so may cause electric shock and serious injuries or vehicle damage; If you are not sure how to perform operation safely, please contact the authorized service station immediately.

Charging Precautions

Charging precautions on rainy days

1. When charging in rain, please take care to protect the charging device from water ingress.
2. It is strictly prohibited to charge outdoors in extreme weather conditions such as heavy rain, typhoons, hail, etc., that exceed national standards, as this may result in charging not being able to be carried out, and even cause damage to the vehicle or charging device.
3. When charging is required after a rain shower, please confirm whether there is water entering the charging port at first. Do not charge when there are

obvious water stains in the charging port, as this may result in failure to charge, in severe cases, damage to the vehicle or charging device.

Precautions for end of charging

■ Manually stop charging

1. Stop charging at first, and ensure that the electronic lock is unlocked.
2. Hold the charging gun, and press and hold the button on charging gun to unplug it.
3. For AC charging, do not forcibly unplug the charging gun when electronic lock is locked, as this may damage the charging port.
4. For DC charging, never forcibly unplug the charging gun before stopping charging, as this may damage the charging port and pose a risk of electric shock.
5. After charging is completed, it is necessary to ensure that charging gun has been unplugged completely before starting vehicle, otherwise charging device and vehicle may be damaged.
6. After unplugging the charging gun, please ensure that the charging port protective cover and charging port cover are in closed condition, so as to prevent water or foreign objects from entering the charging port and affecting the normal use.

■ Automatically stop charging

1. After charging is completed, please unlock first, and then unplug the charging plug.
2. After charging is completed, it is necessary to ensure that charging gun has been unplugged completely before starting vehicle, otherwise charging device and vehicle may be damaged.
3. After unplugging the charging gun, please ensure that the charging port protective cover and charging port cover are in closed condition, so as to prevent water or foreign objects from entering the charging port and affecting the normal use.

The charging performance of vehicle is affected when the battery temperature is too low or too high

1. If the charging port cover or charging gun is frozen due to weather or other reasons, do not open the charging port cover or unplug the charging gun forcibly.
2. When charging at low temperature, the battery thermal management system will be in operation, but the charging time will be extended and the heating power consumption will increase, which is normal.
3. In northern regions with low temperature, it is recommended that users perform charging in a heated room.

4. In northern regions with low temperature, it is recommended that you charge immediately after using the vehicle, as the battery temperature will be relatively high at this time, resulting in better charging performance.
5. In southern regions with high temperature, it is recommended that users charge in a cool and ventilated place, and do not charge in direct sunlight or in air.

Safety Warning for Charging

1. Never use unqualified products.
2. Use special charging device for electric vehicles that meets relevant national standards.
3. Before driving, please ensure that the charging device is unplugged and the charging port cover is closed.
4. Do not modify, remove or repair the charging device and related ports to avoid charging malfunction and causing fire.
5. After an external charging of vehicle, the radiator fan and air conditioning compressor may automatically turn on and operate for battery cooling, which is normal.
6. It is strictly prohibited to operate with wet hands or touch the exposed metal of charging port or charging stand, as this may cause electric shock and personal injury.
7. Please charge in a relatively safe environment (e. g. avoid hazardous chemicals, fire sources, heat sources, lightning, flammable and explosive environments).
8. To avoid damaging the vehicle, do not shake the charging gun when charging, as this may damage the charging port of vehicle. During charging, do not perform repair on the vehicle.
9. It is forbidden for minors to perform charging operations or touch and use charging device. Charging gun is a high voltage electrical device. Do not let minors approach it when charging.
10. During charging, if vehicle or charging device is abnormal (e.g., odor, smoke, etc.), please stop charging immediately and contact the authorized service station.
11. If you want to use any medical device in vehicle (such as cardiovascular defibrillator implanted in the body), confirm with the manufacturer whether charging effects normal operation of the device before use, otherwise it may cause abnormal operation of device and series personal injuries.

External Discharging Device (If Equipped)

The external discharging function uses the new energy vehicle as a power supply. Through the external discharging device (220 V, 16 A) provided with vehicle, it can draw power and discharge externally, meeting the voltage requirements of general household appliances (220 V). It can be used for outdoor camping, barbecue, cooking, and other scenarios, satisfying your power needs outdoors.

OMT28-1041

With vehicle in READY state, turn External Discharge to ON/OFF on New Energy screen. Before unplugging the discharging gun, it is necessary to turn External Discharge to OFF.

External Discharging Method

Inspection before external discharging

■ If any of the following conditions occur, external discharging operation is prohibited, otherwise it may cause short circuit or electric shock, resulting in personal injury.

1. External discharging operation is prohibited if the connection of the external discharging device is loose.
2. Make sure that there is no water or foreign matter in the AC charging port, and the metal terminals are not rusted or corroded.
3. Make sure that the external discharging device is free from shell breakage, cable wear, rusty plug and other abnormal conditions.

External discharging operation

OMT28-1042

Step 1: Park vehicle in a safe area, shift the shift lever to P, and apply the parking brake;

Step 2: Push center rear of the charging port cover to open it;

Step 3: Unplug dust covers of AC charging port and discharging gun, and insert discharging gun into AC charging port until a slight sound is heard;

OMT28-1043

Step 4: Turn on external discharging through Audio System - Vehicle Center - New Energy, switch the power supply to any mode, disarm the vehicle while ensuring sufficient battery and fuel levels;

Step 5: Press the switch button on power strip and wait for red indicator to remain on, which indicates that the external discharging device is successfully connected; after the external discharging device is successfully connected, the vehicle starts to discharge, and the vehicle displays the discharge information;

Step 6: After external discharging is completed, disconnect the external electrical appliance; after vehicle switches to READY, turn off external discharging through Audio System - Vehicle Center - New Energy; Press and hold the upper button of the discharging gun to unplug the discharging gun from AC charging port.

Discharging indicator

OMT28-1044

The indicator light strip is located inside the charging port cover.

Remains on in white: Under dim light conditions, charging port cover is open, and no discharging gun is inserted.

Remains on in red: Fault indication.

Flashes in blue: It is being discharged.

Remains on in blue: Waiting for discharge.

READ

- When inserting DC charging gun, the external discharging function is not available.
- Before external discharging, please make sure that battery and fuel are sufficient, otherwise the external discharging function may not operate properly.
- During external discharging, the cumulative power of the external electrical appliances cannot exceed 6.6 kW, otherwise the external discharging function will stop operating.
- With vehicle in READY state, if power battery is low during external discharging, the engine will automatically start to charge the power battery, which is a normal phenomenon.
- When vehicle is powered off and connected to external electrical appliances without output for a long time, the static power consumption of vehicle will increase. It is recommended that you unplug the discharging gun when not using the external electrical appliances.

WARNING

- Store external discharging device in a cool and dry place when not using it.
- Avoid vehicle crushing, falling, and stepping on external discharging device on purpose when using.
- Never contact metal terminals of the vehicle charging port and power strip during discharging.
- Never fall the external discharging device or pull the cable directly to move the external discharging device. Handle it gently when moving it.
- During external discharging, never place external electrical appliances in luggage compartment, under the front of vehicle or near tire.
- During external discharging, if there are abnormal conditions (e.g., odor, smoke, etc.), please stop using the external discharging function immediately.
- Never use the external discharging device under any damage conditions such as disconnection, breakage, cable wear, loose connection, exposed metal surface, etc.

Discharging Precautions

1. Ensure that the standard plug matches the specification of the product's power strip before use.
2. Never contact metal terminals of the discharging power strip or vehicle charging port when discharging.
3. During use, never drag the wire forcibly to avoid tension or squeezing.
4. When gun head and socket are separated and not in use temporarily, they should be covered with protective covers or properly protected.
5. Do not use the power strip if its surface is damaged, rusty, broken, or the connection is loose.
6. If gun head is dirty or damp, please cut off the power supply first, and then use a dry and clean cloth to wipe the gun head, and ensure that the discharging gun head is clean.
7. Before use, please ensure that there are no abnormalities such as damage on the surface of discharging gun, cable, and discharging power strip in the discharging device.

Safety Warning for Discharging

1. Never use unqualified products.
2. Use special charging device for electric vehicles that meets relevant national standards.
3. Before driving, please ensure that the discharging device is unplugged and the charging port cover is closed.
4. Do not modify, remove or repair the charging device and related ports to avoid charging malfunction and causing fire.
5. After an external discharging of vehicle, the radiator fan and air conditioning compressor may automatically turn on and operate for battery cooling, which is normal.
6. It is strictly prohibited to operate with wet hands or touch the exposed metal of charging port or charging stand, as this may cause electric shock and personal injury.
7. Please discharge in a relatively safe environment (e. g. avoid hazardous chemicals, fire sources, heat sources, lightning, flammable and explosive environments).
8. To avoid damaging the vehicle, do not shake the discharging gun when discharging, as this may damage the charging port of vehicle. During discharging, do not perform repair on the vehicle.
9. It is forbidden for minors to perform discharging operations or touch and use discharging device. Discharging gun is a high voltage electrical device. Do not let minors approach it when discharging.

10. During discharging, if vehicle or discharging device is abnormal (e.g., odor, smoke, etc.), please stop discharging immediately and contact the authorized service station.

Low-speed Pedestrian Warning Sound

Because the noise of electric vehicles is relatively low when driving at low speed, it is difficult for pedestrians nearby to perceive it. In order to improve driving safety, this function can send alarm sound when the vehicle speed is less than 30 km/h to remind pedestrians nearby to perceive it.

- When the vehicle is driving with vehicle speed below 30 km/h, the warning sound will increase with the increase of the vehicle speed.
- When the vehicle is not in Park (P) and is stationary, the system also can send warning sound.

6-1. Emergency Call Function

ECALL (If Equipped)..... 274

Hazard Light..... 274

Reflective Vest..... 275

Warning Triangle..... 275

Spare Tools..... 275

6-2. Vehicle Emergency Handling

Flat Tire 276

Engine Coolant Temperature is Too High ... 278

6-3. Towing

Towing..... 279

Weight Limit 280

Towing Hook..... 281

Safety Chain..... 282

Towing Light..... 283

Tow truck Brake 283

Impact on Mileage..... 283

Towing Hint 283

Towing Vehicle..... 285

Emergency Towing Vehicle 286

Installing Towing Eyelet..... 287

6-4. Fuse

Fuse Box 288

Checking Fuse..... 289

Replacing Fuse..... 289

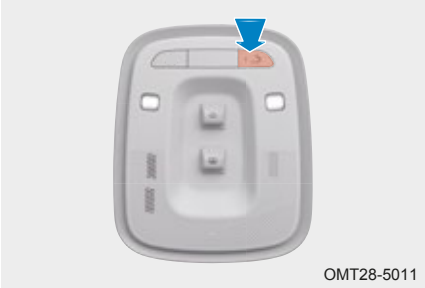
6-5. If Battery is Depleted

Removing Battery 291

Jump-starting 292

6-1. Emergency Call Function

ECALL (If Equipped)


OMT28-5011

ECALL is a kind of emergency call function. When vehicle is involved in a certain level of impact (airbag inflated) or when driver or passenger is in an emergency and rescue is required, emergency information can be sent to service center by operating button manually, then the center will track vehicle location and promptly offer rescue according to received information.

READ

- Information communicated to the PSAP includes: vehicle type, number of seated passengers detected in the vehicle, GPS coordinates, and the VIN.
- Emergency call services are not available in all countries or regions.
- Emergency call only operates over a mobile network with an adequate signal.

Hazard Light

OMT28-5020

In case of vehicle failure or traffic accident etc., please press the hazard light switch to turn on the hazard light (turn signal light flashes), so as to avoid the secondary accident.

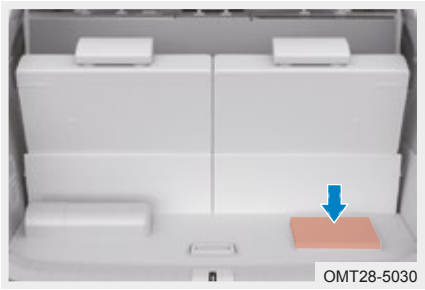
READ

- The hazard lights are automatically activated when the airbag is operating.
- The hazard lights can still work when the vehicle power is turned to OFF mode.

Emergency braking alarm function

When brake pedal is depressed in emergency and deceleration is greater at medium and high speed, turn signal lights flash quickly. When brake pedal is released, hazard light switch is pressed or vehicle power is switched to OFF mode, turn signal lights stop flashing.

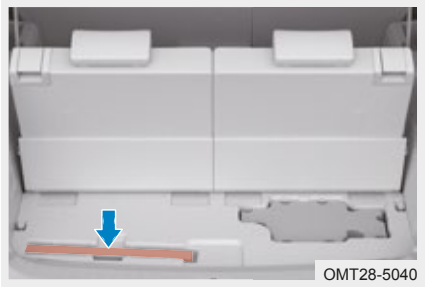
Reflective Vest


OMT28-5030

Reflective vest is located in the luggage compartment.

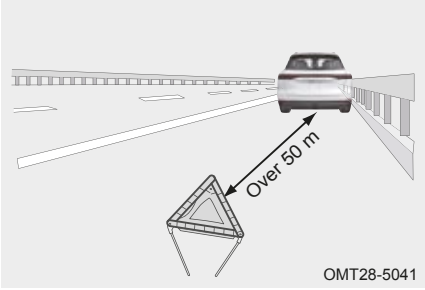
In case of vehicle failure or traffic accident etc., wear the reflective vest with reflective strip facing outwards. It can warn other vehicles to avoid secondary accidents.

Warning Triangle


OMT28-5040

Warning triangle is located in the luggage compartment.

In case of vehicle failure or traffic accident etc., the reflective performance of warning triangle can warn other vehicles to avoid secondary accidents.



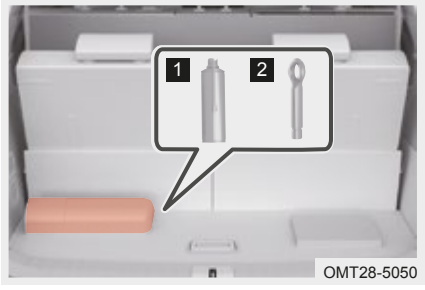
OMT28-5041

On a normal road, place the warning triangle at a distance of more than 50 m behind the vehicle.

On the highway, place the warning triangle at a distance of more than 150 m behind the vehicle.

In rain or when steering, place the warning triangle at a distance of over 150 m behind the vehicle.

Spare Tools



OMT28-5050

1 Automatic inflation tire repair liquid

2 Towing eyelet

6-2. Vehicle Emergency Handling

Flat Tire

If a tire goes flat during driving, slow down gradually, grip the steering wheel with two hands and keep driving straightly. Stop vehicle to a safe place away from the traffic road.

1. Preparations before using automatic inflation tire repair liquid.

Step 1: Stop vehicles on solid, level ground;

Step 2: Apply the parking brake and shift the shift lever to P;

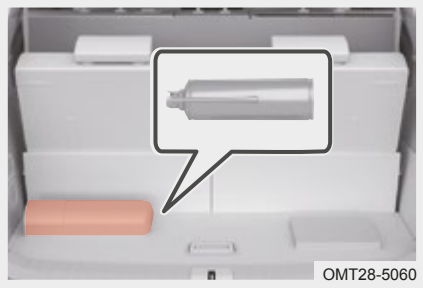
Step 3: Switch vehicle to power off state, and turn on hazard light;

Step 4: Have everyone get out of vehicle, pull over and stay away from traffic;

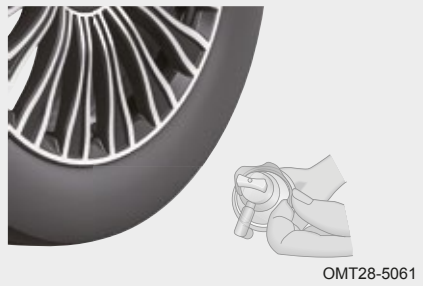
Step 5: Wear reflective vest, and place the warning triangle at a distance of 50 m - 150 m behind the vehicle (depending on actual condition).

⚠ CAUTION
Do not continue driving with a flat tire. Driving even a short distance can damage the tire beyond repair.

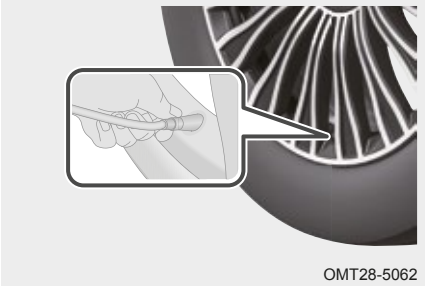
2. Use the automatic inflation tire repair liquid.


OMT28-5060

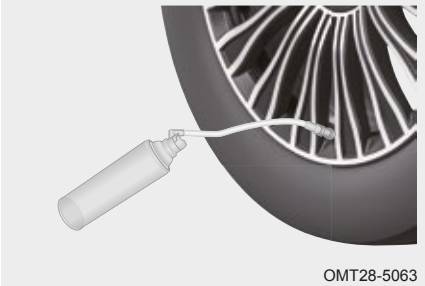
Step 1: Open back door, take out the automatic inflation tire repair liquid;


OMT28-5061

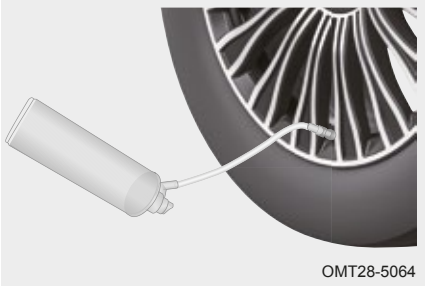
Step 2: Shake the automatic tire filler well before use, and then tear off the safety belt of the junction valve;


OMT28-5062

Step 3: Tighten the junction valve of the automatic inflation tire repair liquid to the tire valve;


OMT28-5063

Step 4: Turn the red valve clockwise and place the bottle upside down to start inflating the tire;


OMT28-5064

Step 5: After the automatic inflation tire repair liquid is filled, close the valve counterclockwise and screw out the junction valve, drive for 10 km or more immediately to complete the repair, then go to authorized service station or professional tire repair shop for repair or replacement as soon as possible.

Note: After using the automatic inflation tire repair liquid, the vehicle will be supported to be driven continuously for 500 km or more. For the first 10 km, please drive at a speed of less than 80 km/h. After 10 km, drive the vehicle at normal speed. It is recommended to go to authorized service station or professional tire repair shop for repair or replacement as soon as possible.

READ

- Before using the automatic inflation tire repair liquid, please check the validity period indicated on the automatic inflation tire repair liquid tank to ensure that it is used within the validity period.
- The automatic inflation tire repair liquid is a disposable consumable (for one wheel only), and you can buy it at authorized service station.

WARNING

- Avoid the automatic inflation tire repair liquid contacting with the skin or eyes and keep it out of the reach of children.
- If you continue to drive the vehicle in the case of tire puncture and air leakage, it is easy to cause tire blowout, endangering personal safety.
- The automatic inflation tire repair liquid is used for repairing tread puncture repair, other parts such as shoulder, sidewall and valve nozzle damage are not in the scope of repair.
- When it is required to pull out the puncture object before repairing, make sure to move the vehicle slightly so that the puncture hole is facing downward at 6 o'clock position before filling the tire with automatic inflation tire repair liquid.
- If the automatic inflation tire repair liquid splashes onto the tire or rim during use, wash it with clean water or wipe it with cloth; if the liquid accidentally gets into your eyes, please wash with clean water and seek medical attention immediately.
- When the product is used in ambient temperature (-40 ℃ - 0 ℃), please warm up the product to 0 °C or more at the heater in the vehicle to increase the filling efficiency of the automatic inflation tire repair liquid.
- It is effective to repair the puncture diameter of 6 mm or less, in which the puncture object can be pulled out for repair; when the puncture diameter is more than 6 mm, please contact authorized service station immediately.
- After using the automatic inflation tire repair liquid, drive the vehicle for 10 km or more immediately without stopping, and go to authorized service station or professional tire repair shop for repair or replacement as soon as possible.
- The storage temperature of automatic inflation tire repair liquid is -40 °C - 70 °C. It is forbidden to store in the vehicle under direct sunlight; and it is forbidden to contact with open fire; please be sure to store it in the tool box securely according to the requirements, do not put it in the cabin.

Engine Coolant Temperature is Too High

If the engine coolant temperature is high during driving, and engine coolant temperature gauge approaches H area or " " red indicator on instrument

cluster remains on, please stop vehicle to a safe place away from the traffic road.

Step 1: Stop vehicles on solid, level ground;

Step 2: Apply the parking brake and shift the shift lever to P;

Step 3: Turn off A/C system (water dripping from air conditioning after use is normal);

Step 4: Switch vehicle to power off state after idling for several minutes, turn on hazard light;

Step 5: Before opening the hood, check whether there is steam or coolant overflow or leakage. Only open the hood when there is no steam or coolant overflow or leakage, otherwise, burns may occur;

Step 6: Check the coolant level, if the cause cannot be determined, please contact authorized service station for inspection and repair.

CAUTION

- If engine overheats frequently, please contact authorized service station for inspection and repair immediately.
- If the coolant level is low, pure water can be used temporarily, please go to authorized service station to replace coolant as soon as possible.

6-3. Towing

Towing

Follow instructions to tow the vehicle. Driver and passenger safety depends on proper equipment and safe driving habits. Towing will affect handling, braking, durability, performance and economy.

Do not overload vehicle or tow truck. For details, please consult a maintenance professional.

READ

When towing a tow truck, do not use the following safety systems (these may automatically turn off if original tow truck hook is used):

- Blind Spot Monitor (BSM) system
- Rear Cross Traffic Alert (RCTA) system
- Parking assist system (rear)

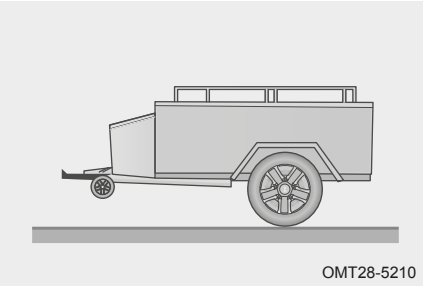
⚠ CAUTION

- Do not tow a tow truck for the first 1,000 km (600 miles) of your vehicle. Failure to do so will damage engine, transmission, differential, wheel bearing and other power system components.
- Damage caused by towing tow truck is not covered by the warranty.

Weight Limit

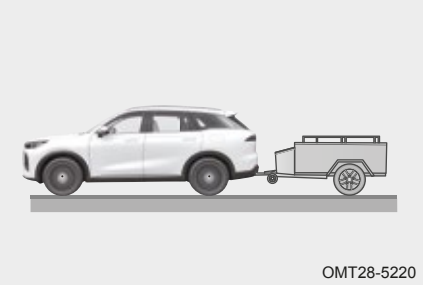
The total weight of tow truck, the total weight of the vehicle and the weight of tow truck head must be within the limits specified in towing load table of tow truck.

■ Total weight of tow truck:



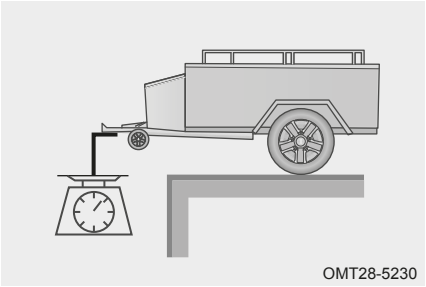
The sum of tow truck and its load weight.

■ Total weight of vehicle:



The total weight of tow truck and towing vehicle includes tow truck hook, vehicle passenger, and vehicle load.

■ Weight of tow truck head:


OMT28-5230

The weight applied to tow truck tongue. Change the weight by changing weight distribution when loading tow truck.

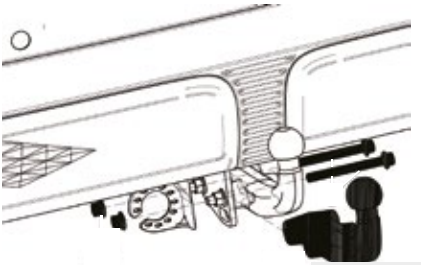
⚠ CAUTION

Be aware of the weight difference in towing load when towing at high altitudes. At altitudes above 1,000 m (3,280 ft 10 in), it is important to reduce the towing load by 10% under total weight heading in the maximum tow truck towing load table for every 1,000 m (3,280 ft 10 in) increase in height. If the specified maximum total towing weight is exceeded, engine and other power system components may be damaged.

Towing Hook

Use a suitable towing hook when towing a tow truck. It is recommended to use the original towing hook. To ensure a smooth tow, the original hole drilled by vehicle manufacturer is used. For more information, please consult a maintenance professional.

tow truck hook mounting point


OMT28-5200

1: Vertical load: maximum 75kg

2: Maximum allowable rear overhang: 1184.243mm

3: Horizontal traction 1600kg.

READ

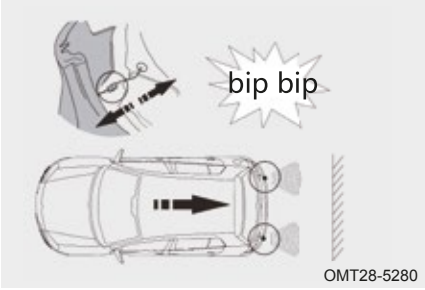
For your driving safety, it is not recommended to perform towing operations when the ambient temperature is 40°C or higher.

⚠ WARNING
When towing, be sure to attach safety chains. The chain passes under the tow truck tow frame and is attached to the tow truck hole to ensure the safe loading of the tow truck.

Installation of tow truck hook

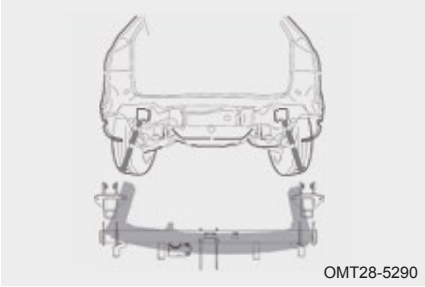
OMT28-5270

1. Remove the rear bumper and collision beam.



OMT28-5280

2. Removing wiring harness.


OMT28-5290

3. First install the left and right mounting bracket components, and then install the tow truck hook beam assembl

Safety Chain

If the tow truck pulls away unexpectedly, a safety chain must be used as a precaution. It should pass under tow truck tongue and be secured to the hook. Allow enough slack for the vehicle to turn completely.

⚠ WARNING

Before driving, make sure that the safety chain is securely attached to tow truck and the vehicle. Towing is dangerous when safety chain is not securely attached to tow truck and the vehicle. If coupler or hook ball is damaged, the tow truck may move into the other lane and cause a collision.

Towing Light

Do not automatically connect the tow truck lighting system directly to lighting system on the vehicle. This can damage electrical system and lighting system. Please consult a maintenance professional to connect lighting system.

Tow truck Brake

Check the maximum weight limit specified by towing load table, if tow truck weight exceeds the total weight of tow truck (tow truck without brake), tow truck brake is required. If the tow truck is equipped with brake, make sure that it meets specifications.

⚠ WARNING

Do not connect hydraulic tow truck brake system to brake system of the vehicle. Connecting hydraulic tow truck brake system directly to brake system of the vehicle is dangerous and can result in insufficient braking or even personal injury.

Impact on Mileage

Towing tow truck will add weight and drag to the towing vehicle. As a result, mileage will be drastically reduced. Although trip planning function adjusts estimates based on towing mode, the actual energy consumption will still vary. Therefore, distance and charging destination need to be planned accordingly.

Towing Hint

Before driving

- Make sure that your vehicle is in near normal condition when connecting a loaded or empty tow truck. Do not drive the vehicle if the front position of the vehicle is abnormally tilted up or down. Check if the front weight of the vehicle is correct, suspension parts are worn, and the tow truck is overloaded. Contact professional maintenance personnel to check the vehicle.
- Make sure that tow truck cargo is secured to prevent movement.
- Make sure that rear view mirrors comply with all national regulations. Check it out.

- Before driving, check the operations of vehicle and tow truck towing and connection between vehicle and tow truck. After driving a short distance, stop the vehicle and check all lights and connections.

Driving

- Vehicle handling varies depending on the type of tow truck being towed, so practice turning, reversing, and stopping in areas with smooth traffic.
- Take some time to get used to extra weight and length.
- Do not exceed 100 km/h when towing the tow truck. If the maximum speed for a towing tow truck is less than 100 km/h by local law, do not exceed the specified speed.

⚠ CAUTION

If speed of the vehicle that tows tow truck exceeds 100 km/h , the vehicle may be damaged.

- Shift to a low gear when going uphill to reduce the possibility of overloading and overheating of engine.
- When going downhill, always pay attention to the speed, and use brake if necessary. Depressing brake pedal for a long time may cause the brake to overheat and lose power.

Parking

Avoid parking a vehicle with a tow truck on a slope. Otherwise, follow the instructions below.

■ Parking on a slope

1. Apply parking brake and brake.
2. Check if someone is blocking wheels of the vehicle and tow truck when applying braking.
3. After blocking wheels, slowly release parking brake and brake so that the wood block bears the load.
4. Firmly apply the parking brake.
5. Shift the shift lever to P position.

■ Starting on a slope

1. Start the vehicle.
2. Release parking brake and slowly pull away from wheel block for a short distance.
3. Park the vehicle on the nearest level, apply parking brake, and lift wheel block.

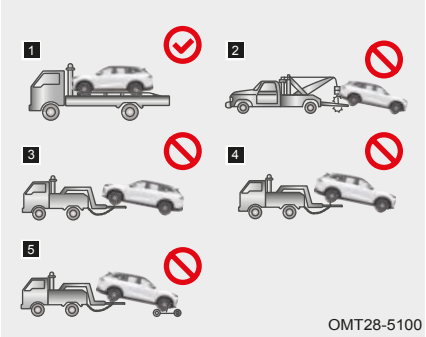
Towing Vehicle

If the vehicle needs to be towed, it is recommended to contact authorized service station or professional towing services department, or ask for help from the roadside rescue service organization you have joined.

⚠ WARNING

- Damage caused by transportation is not covered by the warranty.
- To transport the vehicle, follow the instructions below strictly.
- Do not tow your vehicle only with ropes or chains by other vehicles.

Using platform trailer



Please use 1 platform rescue vehicle to load your vehicle.

Vehicle towing precautions are as follow:

- Tow with four wheels off ground. Do not use the rescue method 2 3 4 5 shown in the figure.
- Before towing, shift the gear position to N, turn on hazard light, and close the doors.
- During towing, nobody is allowed to seat in the accident vehicle.

⚠ CAUTION

Do not move the vehicle with forklift when vehicle is broken down.

⚠ WARNING

- No person or object is allowed behind the trailer when the vehicle is pulled onto the platform rescue vehicle, otherwise it may cause personal injury or death.
- The vehicle can only be towed away from the site if there is no safety risk. If the vehicle power battery pack has deformation, leakage, smoke, etc., the safety risk should be solved first.

Emergency Towing Vehicle

If flatbed truck is not available during towing, your vehicle may be temporarily towed using a towing hook. This should only be attempted on hard surfaced road for short distances at low speed.

When using towing hook, driver must be in towed vehicle to operate steering wheel and brake pedal, and vehicle's wheels, drive train, axle, steering system and braking system must be in good condition.

Before emergency towing of vehicle, switch vehicle power to ACC/ON mode, release parking brake, and shift the shift lever to N.

⚠ CAUTION

- Do not perform emergency towing for long periods of time.
- Never tow a vehicle heavier than this vehicle, otherwise the vehicle may be damaged.
- Secure a towing cable, chain or lever to the vehicle towing eyelet.
- Both drivers must be familiar with the towing process, otherwise they cannot carry out towing work.
- Tow vehicle as straightly ahead as possible, do not tow vehicle from side to avoid damaging vehicle.
- If engine is not started, assist system will not work, therefore, braking and steering will be more difficult than usual. Operate carefully.
- For towing of A/T models, strongly recommends that you seek help from professional serviceman or at a authorized service station.
- If towed vehicle still cannot move, do not forcibly continue towing to avoid secondary damage to vehicle. Strongly recommends that you seek help from professional serviceman or at a authorized service station.

⚠ WARNING

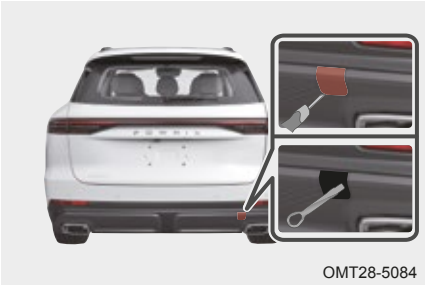
- To avoid personal injury, people other than driver should stay away from the vehicle when it is towed.
- When towing vehicle, avoid sudden starting or erratic driving maneuvers, doing so would apply excessive force on the towing eyelet, cable, chain or lever. The towing eyelet, cable, chain or lever may break and cause vehicle damage or serious personal injury.

Installing Towing Eyelet

Front towing eyelet

Use a flathead screwdriver with its tip wrapped with tape to remove the front towing eyelet hole cover, screw towing eyelet into installation hole, then tighten it firmly with wheel bolt wrench.

Rear towing eyelet



Use a flathead screwdriver with its tip wrapped with tape to remove the rear towing eyelet hole cover, screw towing eyelet into installation hole, then tighten it firmly with wheel bolt wrench.

⚠ CAUTION

- Only use specified towing eyelet. Otherwise, vehicle may be damaged.
- Drive the vehicle slowly and smoothly when towing. Impact due to excessive tension may damage the vehicle.
- Towing rope or towing bar can be installed only when towing eyelet is installed in place.

⚠ WARNING

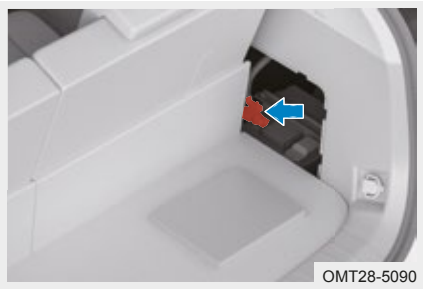
Make sure that towing eyelet is installed securely. Otherwise, the towing eyelet may come loose when towing, which may cause an accident, resulting in death or serious injury.

6-4. Fuse

Fuse Box

Fuses are used to protect electrical components and circuits to avoid short circuit or overload. If fuse is blown, the protected components and systems will not work properly.

Front compartment fuse box


OMT28-5090

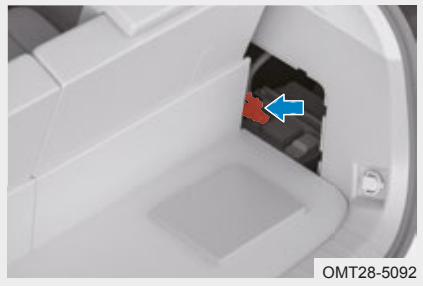
Step 1: Click " OFF " button on shortcut menu, switch vehicle to power off state;

Step 2: Open the back door, remove right luggage compartment protector, and disconnect battery (12 V) negative cable;

OMT28-5091

Step 3: Remove front compartment fuse box cover to inspect or replace fuse.

Instrument panel fuse box


OMT28-5092

Step 1: Click " OFF " button on shortcut menu, switch vehicle to power off state;

Step 2: Open the back door, remove right luggage compartment protector, and disconnect battery (12 V) negative cable;

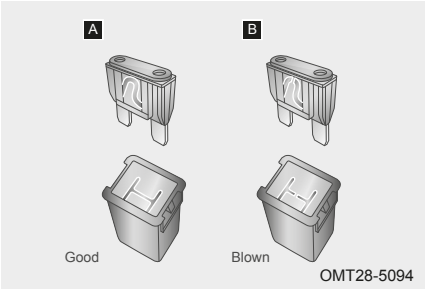
OMT28-5093

Step 3: Remove instrument panel lower left protector to inspect or replace fuse.

READ

- Check suspected fuses according to the fuse and relay layout.
- The fuse box must be clean, keep it away from dampness when opening, as moisture may damage the electrical system.
- To prevent damage, be careful when removing/installing the instrument panel lower left protector. Please contact authorized service station as necessary.

Checking Fuse

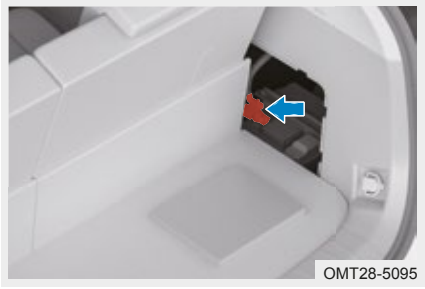


OMT28-5094

A Good fuse.

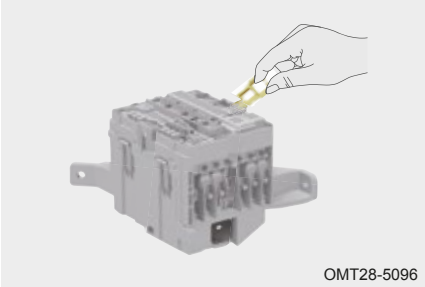
B Blown fuse.

Replacing Fuse


OMT28-5095

Step 1: Click " OFF " button on shortcut menu, switch vehicle to power off state;

Step 2: Open the back door, remove right luggage compartment protector, and disconnect battery (12 V) negative cable;



Step 3: Check fuses according to the fuse and relay layout, remove the suspected fuse out by a fuse remover;

Step 4: Check if the fuse is blown. If you are not sure whether the fuse has blown, replace the suspected fuse with spare fuse that has the same amperage rating. You can see the amperage rating on the schematic diagram inside the fuse box cover.

READ

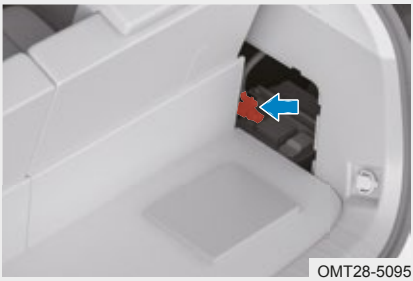
If the spare fuse is unavailable, you can use a fuse with same specification from other unimportant electrical appliances in case of emergency. It is better to purchase a set of spare fuses and put them in vehicle for emergency use.

CAUTION

- Do not modify fuse or fuse box, otherwise, this may cause serious damage to electrical appliances, or even fire.
- Only install a fuse that has the same amperage rating as used one. Never replace a fuse with a wire, even as a temporary replacement. Otherwise, this may cause serious damage to electrical appliances, or even fire.

6-5. If Battery is Depleted

Removing Battery


OMT28-5095

The following steps must be followed when removing and installing the battery:

1. Turn off all the electrical appliances, and power off the vehicle;
2. Open the luggage compartment, remove the right protector;
3. Remove the negative (-) battery terminal cable;
4. Remove the positive (+) battery terminal cable;
5. Remove the battery holder and the battery;
6. Install a new battery that has same specification as used one. Install the new battery properly in the reverse order of removal.

ENVIRONMENTAL PROTECTION

The used battery contains sulfuric acid and lead and should not be disposed at will. Please handle according to the local laws and regulations or discard at a local qualified waste disposal station.

CAUTION

Be careful to avoid the metal tool contacting both electrodes of the battery at the same time or touching the positive electrode and the vehicle body at the same time.

WARNING

- Do not leave battery within the reach of children.
- Do not smoke, use matches, cigarette lighters or open flames near the battery.
- Always wear gloves and safety glasses during operation, as battery acid is strongly corrosive. Do not lean on the battery.
- If acid spills on your skin or clothes, the liquid must be neutralized with alkaline water (soap), and then wash it with clean water. Get emergency medical attention immediately if necessary.

Jump-starting

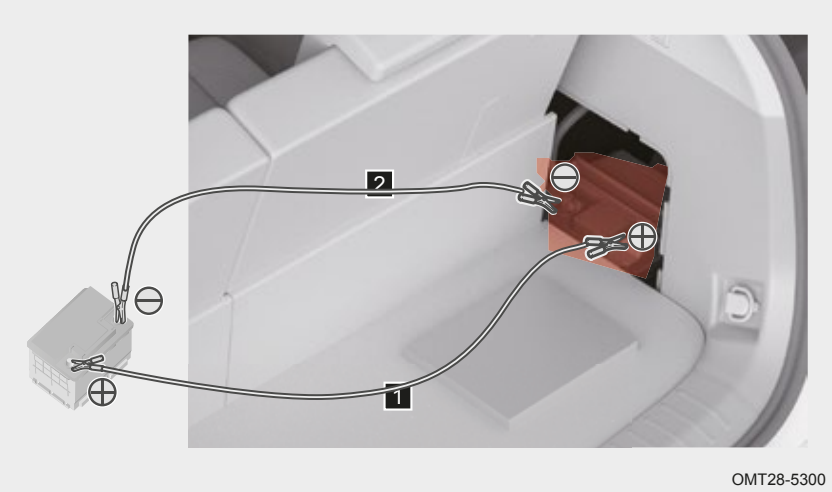
To avoid vehicle damage or personal injury due to improper operation, if you are unsure about how to follow the procedure, We strongly recommends that you seek help from professional serviceman or at an authorized service station.

⚠ CAUTION
Battery voltage used for jump starting should be 12 - 13 V. Do not jump start unless you are sure that the battery voltage is correct.

⚠ WARNING
• The specified jumper cables should be used. • Do not use cigarette lighters or allow open flame near the battery.

■ Jump-starting procedures

1. Turn off all unnecessary electrical appliances. If booster battery is installed in another vehicle, make sure of no contact between vehicles.
2. Connect cables in order shown in illustration below.



1 Connect positive (+) terminal of discharged battery to positive (+) terminal of supporting vehicle battery with positive cable.

2 Connect one end of negative cable to negative (-) terminal of supporting vehicle battery, and then connect the other end of the cable to unpainted metallic part of discharged engine to secure the jumper cable.

3. Start engine in normal way. After starting, run it for several minutes by lightly depressing accelerator pedal.

4. Disconnect cables in reverse order of connecting (negative cable first and then the positive cable).

⚠ CAUTION

- During connecting, do not shift to D position to ensure that the vehicle is in the parking state.
- Do not lean on the battery when connecting.
- Never allow the clamps of the jumper cables to contact with each other or touch other metal parts of the vehicle.
- Do not connect cable to or near any part that moves when engine cranks.
- If the first starting attempt is not successful, check that if clamps on jumper cables are tight and restart the engine in normal way. If it still cannot start, please contact the authorized service station for inspection and repair as soon as possible.

7-1. Repair and Maintenance

Repair and Maintenance ... 296

Authorized Service Station is at Your Service 296

Reading Vehicle Identification Code Information..... 297

Safety Check..... 297

7-2. Normal Maintenance

Normal Maintenance 298

Power Battery..... 299

Checking Oil Level 303

Checking Transmission Fluid Level 304

Checking Brake Fluid Level 304

Checking Coolant Level 305

Checking Radiator and Condenser 306

Checking Tires..... 306

Tire Rotation..... 308

Checking Battery..... 309

Checking Air Conditioning Filter 309

Checking Windshield Washer Fluid 310

Checking Wiper Blades..... 310

7-3. Regular Maintenance

First Maintenance Information..... 312

Maintenance Schedule 313

Technical Data..... 321

7-1. Repair and Maintenance

Repair and Maintenance

There are two types of repair and maintenance: One is normal maintenance, which can be done by the customers; the other is scheduled maintenance, inspection and repair, which needs to be completed by authorized service station.

For the details of regular maintenance, inspection and repair methods, please refer to "Regular Maintenance" in this section; Regular maintenance can be helpful for you to find and eliminate potential dangers in time to prevent malfunctions. Scheduled maintenance of your vehicle is essential. Please strictly follow the maintenance schedule of "User Manual" to perform maintenance, ensuring that your vehicle maintains the best performance and good operating conditions, thus effectively extending the service life of the vehicle.

Please use the recommended fluid, or your vehicle may be damaged.

Authorized Service Station is at Your Service

Authorized service station

Only OEM parts and materials can extend your vehicle's service life. We only supplies OEM parts to authorized service station located worldwide. Therefore, only OEM parts from authorized service station can be used.

Authorized service station offers a professional service. For vehicle service, please remember that your authorized service station knows your vehicle best, and has the professional technicians and OEM parts to complete the job to the highest standard.

ENVIRONMENTAL PROTECTION

Used engine oil, brake fluid, coolant, steering fluid (if equipped), batteries and tires should only be disposed of by qualified waste disposal agencies or after consultation with manufacturers, and should not be taken out with household waste or disposed of into the communal drainage system.

Service arrangements

When go to authorized service station for vehicle service, make sure to carry all required documents. Not all the work to be performed is covered by the warranty. For detailed expenses, consult your service advisor. Keep a service record on your vehicle. Usually, this record can provide valuable reference information.

Prepare a list sheet covering vehicle malfunctions and specific service items. If you have had an accident or any item serviced is not included in the service records, let your service advisor know.

If you list many service items and you must fetch your vehicle on the day, communicate with your advisor to rank the items by priority.

Reading Vehicle Identification Code Information

The vehicle Identification code information can be readout by installing the malfunction diagnosis device, used for inspections and maintenance.

Do not install electrical components other than the diagnosis device to the connector. Doing so may cause unexpected problems to occur, such as having a bad effect on electronics or damaging the battery.

Safety Check

It is better to perform a safety check before driving vehicle, which will improve your driving safety and enjoyment.

⚠ WARNING
While inspecting vehicle, do not start the vehicle.

Daily check
Check whether paint surface is scratched, light shade is damaged, body is tilted, wheel bolts are missed or loosened, water/oil leakage of chassis occurs, door/hood/back door/glass is damaged.
Check that engine oil level, brake fluid level, coolant level, steering fluid level (if equipped) and windshield washer fluid level is normal.
Check cold tire pressure and conditions (such as: wear, swelling, aging cracks, mechanical damages, etc.). Also check the spare tire.
Check whether seat belt buckles fasten securely. Make sure belts are not worn or frayed.
Check whether lighting of lights is normal.
Check whether meter indicators are normal.

Monthly check
Clean vehicle surface, inside of engine hood (dust on surface of radiator and condenser, and remaining oil of engine body), vehicle interior and luggage compartment.
Check assembly, pipes, hoses and tanks for leaks; Check whether battery and cable are corroded and loosened; Check whether circuits are damaged, loosened or disconnected; Check that no water/oil leakage has occurred.
Check whether air condition is operating properly.

Check whether parking brake is operating properly.
Check whether spare fuses and spare tools (such as: jack, wheel bolt wrench, etc.) are equipped.

READ

Used engine oil, brake fluid, coolant, batteries and tires can be disposed only by qualified waste disposal agencies, or consult supporting manufacturers for disposal of them. It is not permitted to dispose of them with household waste or discharge them into public drainage system.

7-2. Normal Maintenance

Normal Maintenance

Be sure to follow the correct maintenance procedures provided in this section if you perform do-it-yourself maintenance.

This section only lists the simple maintenance instructions which can be performed by customers. However, there are still many items that have to be maintained by qualified technicians with special tools.

CAUTION

- Check for any tools or cloths that may have been left behind before closing the hood.
- Do not drive vehicle with the air filter removed, otherwise, excessive engine wear could occur.
- Correctly add fluid to the appropriate level. If some fluid splashes onto the vehicle, be sure to immediately wash it off with a wet cloth, to avoid damage to the painted surface.

WARNING

- If the engine is very hot, do not open the coolant reservoir cap to prevent scalding injury.
- When the engine is running, keep hands, clothing and tools away from engine drive belts and cooling fan.
- Do not smoke near fuel filler or battery, otherwise, it may cause sparks or open flames, resulting in a fire.
- There is a high voltage in the electronic ignition system. Do not touch these components while the engine is running or the vehicle power is turned on.
- Right after driving, engine, radiator, exhaust manifold and cylinder head will be very hot, so never touch them. Prevent any loose clothing from getting caught in the fan and causing personal injury because the cooling fan may automatically start and run at any time.

Power Battery

Basic function of power battery

The power battery is the power and energy source of vehicle and can be charged and discharged repeatedly. The power battery is charged by an external power supply, and can also be charged by means of energy recovery when braking or coasting.

The vehicle has intelligent recharging function. When the function is triggered, 12 V battery will be charged by power battery. If the vehicle is placed in a high-temperature environment, it is also possible to trigger the power battery cooling request during intelligent recharging process, which will activate the A/C to cool the power battery to avoid damage to the power battery. Therefore, when the vehicle is started again after being placed for a period of time, SOC or pure electric driving mileage displayed on instrument cluster will decrease, which is a normal phenomenon.

Power battery is a special chemical product, which needs to be used and maintained properly, so proper daily use and maintenance is very important for performance maintenance. At the same time, power battery will decline naturally due to chemical characteristics. Therefore, for vehicles that have been used for a period of time, when trip mileage decreases after battery is fully charged, it is recommended to go to the authorized service station for inspection.

The optimal ambient temperature and charging temperature range of the power battery is 25 ± 5℃. When the temperature is too high or too low, the battery will limit the output power, and the pure electric driving mileage will be shortened. It is recommended that you use the vehicle in an environment above -20 ℃; If it is in a special circumstance, it is recommended to switch the vehicle to HEV mode and use the engine to help drive the vehicle.

When the power battery is low, it is recommended to charge immediately or switch power mode from EV to HEV, and it is not recommended to charge after power battery is depleted, otherwise service life will be affected. In oder to ensure the normal operation of hybrid transmission, when power battery is low, the power mode will switch form EV to HEV automatically.

Do not use electric appliances for a long time when the vehicle is not started. When it prompts that power battery is low, insert charging gun to charge in time, or use engine to charge when vehicle is in READY mode, otherwise, it may lead to power loss of power battery and failure to start vehicle; In this case, insert charging gun to recharge it before restarting; If vehicle still cannot be started, please contact authorized service station.

The power battery is located under the body floor, and please drive carefully and prevent it from bumping when the vehicle passes over bumpy roads or is driven on bumpy roads. If driving on a rough road or wading road (over 15 cm deep), please slow down.

■ Due to the influence of chemical characteristics of power battery itself and for the purpose of better protecting the power battery, it is normal if the following conditions exist:

1. The power performance of the vehicle will be weakened when the power battery is in low charge.
2. When driving in high or low temperatures, there may be an increase in power consumption and a reduction in driving range.
3. The charge and discharge performance of power battery at high or low temperature will be weakened, and the charging time will become longer, which is a normal phenomenon.
4. When the power battery is nearly fully charged, it will automatically switch to trickle charging mode, which may extend the final charging time. There may be deviations in the estimated charging time displayed on the large screen and instrument cluster of the vehicle.

■ Since the performance of power battery will decline in low temperature environment, the following treatment methods will help you to use the vehicle better:

1. If ambient temperature is lower than -10℃, it is recommended to park vehicle in a warm house or a garage with room temperature.
2. If there is no warm house or garage with room temperature, the vehicle has charging and heating functions of plug-in charging gun. If charging gun is connected, it is recommended to select travel reservation function half an hour before departure (travel reservation function can be set in head unit system and APP), which can increase power battery temperature to the best state and turn on air conditioning in advance, so that you can have a better driving experience.

■ In order to prevent damage to the power battery, the performance of the power battery will be reduced in high/low temperature environments. If the ambient temperature is too high or too low, the charging and discharging power will be affected.

■ When the vehicle is not used for a long time, the following methods will help power battery to be in the best state:

1. When the vehicle is not used for a long time and SOC is less than 20%, charge it as soon as possible.
2. When the vehicle is not used for a long time, park it in a place where the ambient temperature is lower than 45 ℃ and there is no ponding, and try to avoid direct sunlight.
3. When the vehicle is not used for a long time, SOC displayed on instrument cluster may be inaccurate. Do not judge the remaining power of power battery based on SOC, and charge battery fully before driving.

4. When the vehicle is not used for a long time, charge 12 V battery for 15 - 30 minutes once a month (with the vehicle in READY state, keep charging for 15 - 30 minutes).
5. When the vehicle is not used for a long time, power battery system should be fully charged once a month and then discharged to maintain the SOC at about 50%; Failure to do so may cause excessive discharge of power battery.

⚠ WARNING

- Once the vehicle is powered on, the high voltage circuit will be in a conducting state. Non-professional personnels are strictly prohibited from conducting any electrical maintenance or repairs on the vehicle while the power is on.
- Non-professional personnels are strictly prohibited to open the power battery. The units or individuals should be responsible for environmental pollution or safety accidents caused by removal or disassembly of the battery without permission.
- If the power battery fails, the battery is depleted. Even with 12 V external power supply, the vehicle cannot be jump started. please contact the authorized service station in time, never repair it without authorization.

Power battery recovery

■ Recover and disposal range

Power battery whose residual capacity and charge and discharge performance after using cannot guarantee the vehicle normal driving, or is not used again after it is removed due to other reasons.

■ Recover and disposal process

The power battery is installed on the vehicle chassis, which consists of lithium battery cells. Disposal at will can cause pollution and harm to the environment.

According to relevant regulations, vehicle owner is obliged to hand over used power battery to recycling service stations. It is strictly forbidden to hand over used power battery to other units or individuals. The vehicle owner shall be responsible for environmental pollution or safety accidents caused by unauthorized removal or disassembly of the power battery.

Be sure to dispose according to the following information or requirements. For details on the recycling and disposal of power battery, please contact the authorized service station.

1. The temporary recycling service station for vehicle used power battery is the local authorized service station.
2. The disassembly of power battery must be performed by professional serviceman with certification qualification of power battery supplier.

3. The power battery belongs to the 9th category of dangerous goods and must be transported by vehicles with the 9th category of dangerous goods transportation qualification.
4. The removed power battery should be stored in a normal temperature, dry environment, away from flammable materials, heat sources, water sources and other hazards.

⚠ WARNING

- Do not dispose of power battery by yourself.
- Do not sell, transfer or modify power battery.
- When power battery needs to be repaired, removed, replaced and disposed, always contact the authorized service station.

Usage precautions for power battery

Power battery belongs to high voltage energy-storage device and dangerous goods. It is necessary to contact the authorized service station for installation and maintenance of power battery by professional serviceman who must observe related safety regulations strictly; Non-professional serviceman and improper operation and use may cause serious results such as electric shock, combustion, explosion etc. Non-professional serviceman are prohibited to install, repair power battery and abuse it beyond specified range. Power battery damage and other losses caused by using it without observing requirements or beyond specified range will not be guaranteed. Pay attention to the following:

1. Anti-shock and anti-collision

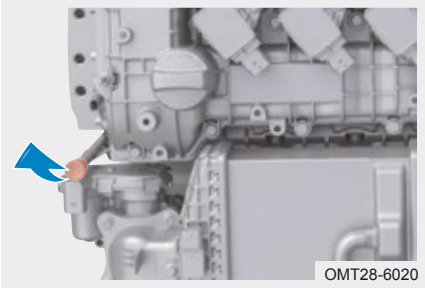
   The battery cells of power battery are connected in series and equipped with management system and various sensor devices, so be careful when driving on uneven roads to prevent power battery from bumping.
2. Heat insulation in any environment

   Keeping power battery in the best operating temperature range can greatly prolong the service life of battery and improve safety performance, so try to park vehicle in heat insulation and ventilated places.
3. Moisture-proof and water-proof

   Power battery is a high voltage energy-storage device with many high voltage control circuits and battery cells. The liquid entering power battery may cause short circuit, electricity leakage and corrosion of battery cells, electric circuits and connectors. Make sure that power battery will not be soaked by various liquids and moist air will not enter the power battery.

Checking Oil Level

Checking engine oil


OMT28-6020

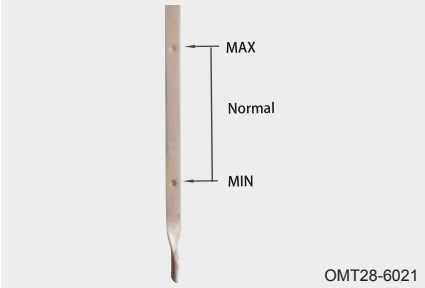
With the engine stalling and cooled down, check the oil level with the dipstick.

Step 1: Warm up the engine and then stop the vehicle on a level ground. Wait for approximately 5 minutes after turning off engine;

Step 2: Open the engine hood, pull the dipstick out and wipe it with a clean cloth;

Step 3: Insert the dipstick to the bottom uniformly and slowly;

Step 4: Leave the vehicle as is for approximately 3 seconds, pull the dipstick out again and check if oil level is correct.

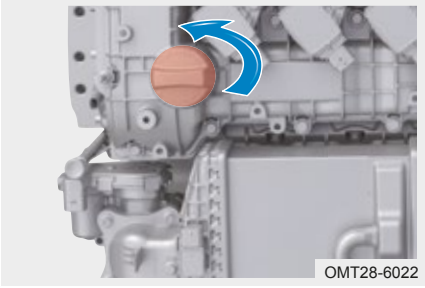


OMT28-6021

Put a cloth under the dipstick to avoid oil spilling onto engine or vehicle body.

Do not check the oil level immediately after the engine warms up, and wait until the oil returns into the bottom of engine.

Adding engine oil


OMT28-6022

Step 1: Turn the engine oil filler cap counterclockwise to open it;

Step 2: Use the funnel to add a small amount of engine oil several times and check the oil level with a dipstick again;

Step 3: When the level reaches within the correct range, turn the engine oil filler cap clockwise to tighten it.

ENVIRONMENTAL PROTECTION

Do not discard the waste engine oil and filter in household waste, down the drain or spill on to the ground. Otherwise, it will cause serious environmental pollution. Please handle it according to the local regulations regarding to environmental protection.

CAUTION

- Do not overfill oil, or it may cause damage to engine.
- If the engine oil is replaced, the oil filter must be replaced.
- Only recommended engine oil can be used. Otherwise, all the direct or indirect loss incurred are at customer's own risk.
- If oil is accidentally spilled on the surface of the engine during filling of oil, clean the spilled oil with canvas and other tools before tightening the engine oil filler cap.
- The engine oil filler cap cannot be inverted after removal, to prevent misjudgment caused by oil back flow or the oil flowing through seal ring will overflow automatically after reassembly, resulting in an illusion of oil leakage from the engine oil filler cap.

Checking Transmission Fluid Level

Checking, adding and replacing of transmission fluid should be done by professionals. Please contact the authorized service station.

Checking Brake Fluid Level

OMT28-6030

Brake fluid level should be between the "MIN" and "MAX" marks. If the level is at or below the "MIN" mark, add brake fluid and contact the authorized service station for inspection and repair immediately.

READ

The brake fluid reservoir shapes are different depending on the configuration. Please refer to the actual vehicle configuration.

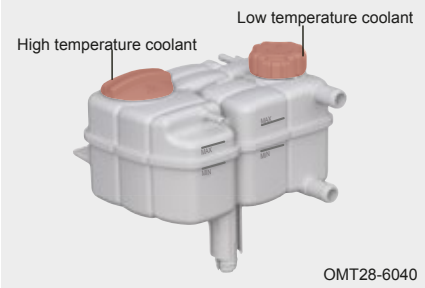
⚠ CAUTION

- As the brake fluid is highly absorbent, do not leave the brake fluid reservoir cap open for a long period of time.
- Only recommended brake fluid can be used. Otherwise, all the direct or indirect loss incurred are at customer's own risk.
- If some brake fluid splashes onto the painted surface of vehicle body, be sure to clean it with a wet sponge or wash it off with water to avoid corroding the parts or painted surface.

⚠ WARNING

Never allow brake fluid to contact your skin or eyes. If the brake fluid splashes into your eyes, or on your skin, flush the area immediately with a great quantity of water. Get emergency medical attention immediately if necessary.

Checking Coolant Level



When engine is cold, the coolant level should be between the "MIN" and "MAX" marks. If the level is at or below the "MIN" mark, add coolant and contact the authorized service station for inspection and repair immediately.

⚠ CAUTION

- If coolant level falls rapidly, check radiator, water hose and water pump for leakage.
- Do not use poor quality coolant, because the engine becomes excessively hot as running and inferior coolant cannot provide sufficient cooling and corrosion protection.
- Only recommended coolant can be used. Otherwise, all the direct or indirect loss incurred are at user's own risk.

⚠ WARNING

- The coolant is poisonous, so pay extreme caution not to spray the fluid on any part of the vehicle, human body or ground when adding coolant. If the coolant accidentally gets on your skin or eyes, please wash the affected area with a great quantity of water and consult a doctor immediately.
- When engine is hot, the cooling system will be under high pressure. In this case, do not open the coolant reservoir cap, otherwise, the escaping steam may cause scalding injury.

Checking Radiator and Condenser

After the vehicle runs for a period of time, the front surface of condenser and radiator could be blocked with some insects, leaves and other objects, which could affect the performance of air conditioning and cooling system, resulting in air conditioning operating improperly and cooling system overheating. It is necessary to clean radiator and condenser at that time.

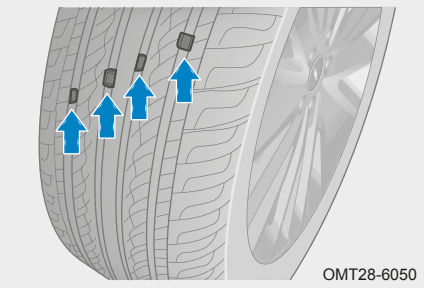
Radiator: It is recommended to clean the radiator surface every year. With engine turned off and cooled down, use compressed air or water to clean the radiator fins and blow off the insects and leaves, etc. Air and water pressure should not exceed 150 kPa. Otherwise, the radiator fins could be damaged.

Condenser: Clean the condenser by blowing air from rear to front through the radiator when the engine is turned off and cools down.

⚠ CAUTION

- The material of radiator fins has good thermal conductivity, which is used to cool the coolant. Do not brush the fins, or it may cause damage to the fins, affecting the cooling effect.
- Do not spray water on the hot radiator while the engine is hot, otherwise, the generated high temperature steam may result in personal injury. Clean the radiator only when the engine is turned off and cools down.

Checking Tires

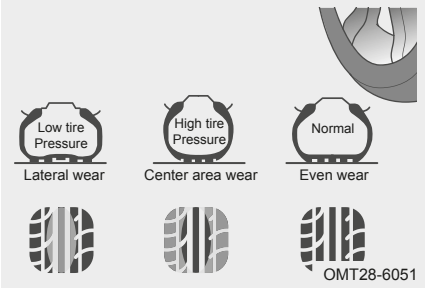


Check the tire tread by tread wear mark. When tread wear reaches its limit, tread will be in the same plane as the wear band. If such condition occurs, the tire performance and safety will be seriously impacted, and replacement is necessary.

ENVIRONMENTAL PROTECTION
Always discard a used tire carefully. It should be handled according to the local regulations regarding to environmental protection.

■ Observe the following precautions. Failure to do so may lead to an accident, resulting in death or serious injury:

1. Do not use tires that were used on another vehicle.
2. Do not mix tires with remarkably different tread wear.
3. Do not use tires if you do not know how they were used previously.
4. Do not mix tires from different manufacturers, of different models or tread patterns.
5. Do not mix differently constructed tires (such as radial, bias-belted or bias-ply tires).
6. Speedometer can be affected by the tire size. If the tire size (diameter) is different from the genuine one, it will not display accurate speed, and may result in accidents, such accidents loss are not covered by the warranty.



Incorrect tire inflation pressure will lead to excessive fuel consumption, shorten the tire service life and reduce the vehicle stability. Therefore, you should drive the vehicle with proper tire pressure (For provisions about the tire inflation pressure, please refer to the tire pressure label on driver side B pillar). When cold tire inflation pressure is higher than specified value or economic tire pressure is used, driving comfort will be reduced accordingly. Please adjust it according to your needs.

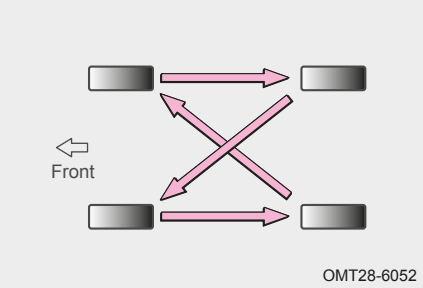
■ Be sure to keep proper tire inflation pressure. Otherwise, the following conditions may occur and result in death or serious injury:

1. Excessive wear.
2. Poor handling.
3. Uneven wear.
4. Poor sealing of the tire bead.
5. Wheel deformation or tire separation.
6. Possibility of blowouts resulting from overheated tires.
7. A greater possibility of tire damage caused by poor road conditions.

CAUTION

- It is normal that the tire inflation pressure increases after driving for a period of time.
- If the tire needs to be inflated frequently, please go to authorized service station for inspection and repair as soon as possible.
- If a tire often leaks or cannot be properly repaired due to a cut or other damages, it should be replaced.
- Use a tire pressure gauge to check cold tire inflation pressure. Visual inspection of a tire may cause inaccurate estimation on inflation pressure.
- If air leakage occurs while driving, do not continue to drive. Driving even a short distance can damage a tire beyond repair.
- Be sure to install tire valve caps properly. Otherwise, dirt could get into the valve core and cause blockage. If the caps are lost, install new ones as soon as possible.

Tire Rotation



To equalize tire wear and extend tire service life, we recommend that you should rotate your tires regularly. It is recommended to rotate your tires every 10,000 km. Tire rotation cycle may vary according to driver driving habits and road surface conditions.

READ

It is recommended to check and adjust the four-wheel alignment during the first maintenance. Perform inspection and adjustment every 20,000 km (this is normal maintenance item which is not covered by warranty).

WARNING

Observe the following precautions. Failure to do so may affect handling performance, which may lead to an accident, resulting in death or serious injury:

- Speedometer is affected by tire size. If the tire size (diameter) is different from the genuine one, it will not display accurate speed, and may result in accidents, such accidents loss are not covered by the warranty;
- Do not mix tires from different manufacturers, of different models or tread patterns;
- Do not mix tires with remarkably different tread wear;
- Do not mix differently constructed tires (radial, bias-belted or bias-ply tires);
- Do not use tires that were used on another vehicle;
- Do not use tires if you do not know how they were used previously.

Checking Battery

Check and make sure that the battery terminals are not corroded and that there are no loose connections, outside cracks, or loose hold-down clamps.

Your vehicle is equipped with maintenance free battery. The new battery should have the same specifications with the genuine one during replacement. We recommend that you should go to a authorized service station for battery replacement.

Checking Air Conditioning Filter

Air conditioning filter can prevent outside dust from entering vehicle through air conditioning outlets when driving for a long period of time, and it may be blocked after being used for a long time. If operational efficiency of air conditioning decreases significantly, check filter element and replace it as necessary.

READ

- The replacement of air conditioning filter should be performed by professionals, please contact authorized service station.
- Using air conditioning with filter removed may result in degradation of dustproof performance, affecting efficiency of air conditioning.
- A/C system for some models can achieve PM2.5 protection, please check with your actual vehicle.
- A/C system for some models can achieve N95 protection, please check with your actual vehicle.

Checking Windshield Washer Fluid

If no washer fluid can be sprayed from washer nozzles, stop operating washers and check if it is necessary to add washer fluid. If it cannot operate properly after adding washer fluid, please go to authorized service station for inspection and repair.

⚠ CAUTION

- Never add antifreeze in the windshield washer fluid, because antifreeze will damage the body painted surface.
- Do not use water as washer fluid when temperature is below zero. Otherwise, water will be frozen, causing damage to washer.
- The capacity of washer fluid reservoir is 4.5 L. When the washer fluid level is low, low washer fluid level warning light will come on and a faults message will appear on the instrument cluster (if equipped), please refer to the actual vehicle.

Checking Wiper Blades

Check the roughness of wiper blade by sliding on its edge using your finger. Wiper blade will not work effectively, if it is too rough.

⚠ CAUTION

- Do not use the wiper blades to remove frost or ice covered on the windshield.
- If there are any chips on the windscreen from gravel, please repair quickly.
- In winter, make sure that the wiper blades are not frozen to the glass before operating them to avoid damaging the wiper blades.
- Butter, silicone and fuel may cause the wiper blades to operate improperly, and it is recommended to clean the wiper blades with washer fluid.
- When the blades are lifted for maintenance, the center connector position of the blades should be properly picked up, it is required to enter maintenance mode for some models (for details, please refer to "Wiper System").

Maintaining wiper blades

- Do not use high-pressure water jet to directly wash the wiper blades while washing the vehicle, or the wiper blades could be deformed.
- In order to prevent the formation of build up that obscures view, it is recommended to clean wiper blades using glass detergent regularly once a week.
- For safety, it is advised to replace the wiper blades once or twice a year, the wiper blades can be purchased at authorized service station.

- After washing the vehicle in the automatic car washer, apply pure water to rinse the windshield and blades, to remove the remaining wax layer.
- Do not operate wipers when windshield is dry. Doing so may scratch glass, resulting in permanent damage to wiper blades.
- Do not clean the windshield with fuel, nail polish remover, paint thinner or similar liquid, which can damage the wiper blades.
- Avoid using glass plating agent and hydrophobic agent on the front and rear windshield glass. The hydrophobic layer will fall off slowly after using, resulting in uneven friction of windshield and abnormal noise of wiper shaking.
- When the windshield surface is frosted or frozen, or when dry soil, insect, sticker or other solid particles are attached to the windshield surface, clean them with a wet cloth in time. Do not use a dry cloth or remove them with wiper blades directly, otherwise it will damage the glass and wiper blades.

Using wipers

- Do not swing the wiper arm manually, otherwise it may damage the wiper.
- When there is snow, leaves, branch and other objects, they should be cleaned before operating the wiper.
- Washer fluid should be added as soon as is needed, please use the windshield washer fluid as specified in this manual, and do not use tap water instead.
- In cold weather, always check if the wiper blades are frozen on the windshield before using. If they are frozen on the windshield, always unfreeze before using. Use air conditioning heating and ventilation device to warm up. Do not pour hot water directly to blades, otherwise, windshield may break or wiper blades may deform.

7-3. Regular Maintenance

First Maintenance Information

Maintenance information for the first 10,000 km (within 12 months after purchasing vehicle) (for general area)				
Date: _____ Mileage: _____				
Type of jobs	1	Check lubrication system, cooling system and fuel system for leakage.	Y☐	N☐
	2	Replace engine oil and oil filter.	Y☐	N☐
	3	Check transmission fluid level and color. Add if necessary.	Y☐	N☐
	4	Check coolant level. Add coolant or adjust concentration if necessary.	Y☐	N☐
	5	Check transmission for leakage.	Y☐	N☐
	6	Check steering tie rod boot for damage.	Y☐	N☐
	7	Check propeller shaft constant velocity universal joint boot for damage.	Y☐	N☐
	8	Check brake fluid for leakage and brake pipes for damage.	Y☐	N☐
	9	Check if brake sub cylinders work normally.	Y☐	N☐
	10	Check if tire inflation pressure is as specified.	Y☐	N☐
	11	Check belt tension of alternator and A/C compressor. Adjust tension if necessary.	Y☐	N☐
	12	Check hood hinge and tab.	Y☐	N☐
	13	Check A/C system for leakage.	Y☐	N☐
	14	Check installation condition for steering universal joint boot and check for damage.	Y☐	N☐
	15	Check if gears of transmission shift smoothly.	Y☐	N☐
	16	Check coupling bolts between chassis and vehicle body for looseness.	Y☐	N☐
	17	Check seat belts for correct operation.	Y☐	N☐
	18	Check engine working condition, electronic injection parameters and emission while idling.	Y☐	N☐
	19	Check if mechanisms function properly by testing driving.	Y☐	N☐

	20	Check that there is no obvious rusting or deformation on the power battery surface.	Y☐	N☐
	21	Check that the fixing bolt of power battery is free of crack, rusting and falling off.	Y☐	N☐
	22	Check waterproof vent valve of power battery for looseness and deformation, and vent hole for blockage.	Y☐	N☐
	23	Check power battery connector for dust, water, deterioration and deformation, replace as necessary.	Y☐	N☐
	24	Check that the appearance is intact and there are no cuts and other damages for low voltage wire harness connector; the connection is normal without looseness, falling off, water, etc.	Y☐	N☐
	25	Check that the high voltage circuit connector is connected properly without looseness, rusting, crack, etc.; the wire harness is tightened without shaking.	Y☐	N☐

Maintenance Schedule

The maintenance schedule lists vehicle maintenance items that need to be carried out. Please go to authorized service station for maintenance according to mileage in maintenance schedule.

For general area, regular maintenance interval is every 1 year or 10,000 km (-total mileage) or 10,000 km (HEV mileage), whichever comes first.

If your vehicle is often used in severe driving conditions, you should follow the maintenance requirement each 5,000 km or 6 months (whichever comes first).

I: Inspect, adjust, clean or replace if necessary; R: Replace.

For general driving conditions*											
Maintenance Item	Months	12	24	36	48	60	72	84	96	108	120
	km × 1,000	10	20	30	40	50	60	70	80	90	100
For severe driving conditions*											
Maintenance Item	Months	6	12	18	24	30	36	42	48	54	60
	km × 1,000	5	10	15	20	25	30	35	40	45	50
Meter Indicating System		I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Video and Entertainment System		I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Diagnostic Tester Inspection		I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Front Wiper Blades		I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Rear Wiper Blades		I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Wiper System		I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Cooling Effect		I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Air Conditioning System		I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Air Conditioning Filter		Replace A/C filter for each maintenance									
Coolant Level		I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Freezing Point of Coolant		I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Coolant		It is recommended to replace every 2 years or 40,000 km (whichever comes first).									
Brake Fluid		It is recommended to replace every 2 years or 40,000 km (whichever comes first).									
Brake Fluid Level		I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Water Content of Brake Fluid		I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Engine Oil and Oil Filter		It is recommended to replace every 1 years or 10,000 km (whichever comes first).									
Engine Oil Level		I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I

For general driving conditions*											
Mainte-nance Item	Months	12	24	36	48	60	72	84	96	108	120
	km × 1,000	10	20	30	40	50	60	70	80	90	100
For severe driving conditions*											
Mainte-nance Item	Months	6	12	18	24	30	36	42	48	54	60
	km × 1,000	5	10	15	20	25	30	35	40	45	50
Transmission Fluid and External Filter Assembly		It is recommended to replace every 4 years or 40,000 km (whichever comes first).									
Transmission Fluid Level		I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Fuel Filter		External fuel filter: Replace every 30,000 km; Internal fuel filter: The integrated fuel pump is maintenance free type(troubleshoot the cause of failure)									
Battery Voltage		I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Shock Absorber		I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Propeller Shaft and Boot		I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Torque of Chassis Bolt		I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Steering Gear		I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Steering Column		I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Steering Link, Ball and Boot		I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Tire Appearance		I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Tire Pattern		I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Tire Inflation Pressure		I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Spare Tire Inflation Pressure		I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Torque of Wheel Bolt		I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Tire Rotation		It is recommended to rotate your tires every 10,000 km (the optimal adjustment range is 5,000 - 7,000 km).									

For general driving conditions*											
Mainte-nance Item	Months	12	24	36	48	60	72	84	96	108	120
	km × 1,000	10	20	30	40	50	60	70	80	90	100
For severe driving conditions*											
Mainte-nance Item	Months	6	12	18	24	30	36	42	48	54	60
	km × 1,000	5	10	15	20	25	30	35	40	45	50
Spark Plug		Replace every 30,000 km (Fuel mileage).									
Brake Plate		I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Brake Disc		I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Air Filter		It is recommended to replace every 1 years or 10,000 km (whichever comes first).									
Drive Belt		I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Engine Oil Pan and Drain Bolts		I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Transmission Housing Body		I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Related Fluid Line (-such as steering, brake, fuel etc.) and Wire Harness		I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
There is no obvious rusting or deformation on the power battery surface		I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
The fixing bolt of power battery is free of crack, rusting and falling off		I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Waterproof vent valve of power battery is not loose, deformed, and vent hole is not blocked		I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Power battery connector is free of dust, water, aging and deformation		I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I

For general driving conditions*											
Mainte-nance Item	Months	12	24	36	48	60	72	84	96	108	120
	km × 1,000	10	20	30	40	50	60	70	80	90	100
For severe driving conditions*											
Mainte-nance Item	Months	6	12	18	24	30	36	42	48	54	60
	km × 1,000	5	10	15	20	25	30	35	40	45	50
The appearance is intact and there are no cuts and other damages for low voltage wire harness connector; the connection is normal without looseness, falling off, water, etc		I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
The high voltage circuit connector is connected properly without looseness, rusting, crack, etc.; the wire harness is tightened without shaking		I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Charcoal Canister Filter (If Equipped)	Replace every 3 years or 60,000 km (whichever comes first).										
Rear Drive Motor (If Equipped)	Maintenance-free (except for the cause of failure).										
Battery	Maintenance-free (except for the cause of failure).										
Throttle Valve	It is recommended to clean every 15,000 km.										
Four-wheel Alignment	Check four-wheel alignment every 20,000 km and adjust if necessary.										
Fuel Vapor Rubber Pipe	It is recommended to replace every 10 years or 500,000 km (whichever comes first).										

For general driving conditions*											
Mainte-nance Item	Months	12	24	36	48	60	72	84	96	108	120
	km × 1,000	10	20	30	40	50	60	70	80	90	100
For severe driving conditions*											
Mainte-nance Item	Months	6	12	18	24	30	36	42	48	54	60
	km × 1,000	5	10	15	20	25	30	35	40	45	50
Refueling Hose of Fuel		It is recommended to replace every 5 years or 200,000 km for products made of ordinary rubber (such as NBR+PVC/CSM, etc.) (whichever comes first); It is recommended to replace every 10 years or 500,000 km for products made of fluororubber (whichever comes first). It is recommended to replace the above hoses timely which may cause performance defect such as crack.									
*: We recommend that you ask your authorized service station for the actual maintenance schedule applied to your vehicle.											

READ

- The frequency of scheduled inspection and maintenance services in the table is minimal. However, it may be necessary that they be performed more frequently depending on road conditions, weather, atmospheric conditions and vehicle usage. These conditions may differ from one country to another. Therefore, there may be special requirement in your country. We recommend that you ask your authorized service station for the actual maintenance schedule applied to your vehicle.
- Continue periodic maintenance beyond 100,000 km or 120 months by returning to the third column of the maintenance schedule and adding 100,000 km or 120 months to the column headings.
- For special area, there may be special maintenance specifications. We recommend that you ask your authorized service station for the actual maintenance specifications applied to your vehicle.

⚠ CAUTION

- The engine oil and oil filter should be replaced more frequently if the vehicle is driven under severe conditions mentioned in the following examples*.
- It should be checked every 5,000 km or 6 months (whichever comes first) if the vehicle is driven under severe conditions mentioned in the following examples*.
- The lubricant should be replaced every 5,000 km or 6 months (whichever comes first) if the vehicle is driven in the following areas.
  - High humidity areas.
  - Mountainous areas.
  - Extremely cold and hot areas.
  - Drive on rough roads (bumpy roads, gravel roads, snow, etc.) for a long time.
  - Drive on mountain roads, uphill/downhill for a long time.
  - Drive the vehicle for a short distance frequently.
  - In many cases, drive in high temperature (higher than 32℃), heavy traffic urban road.
  - When used as a police car, taxi, commercial vehicle, trailer, etc.

⚠ CAUTION

- The air filter and air conditioning filter should be replaced more frequently if the vehicle is driven under severe conditions mentioned in the following examples*.

*Examples of severe driving conditions:

- Drive in extremely cold and hot weather (only for engine oil, engine oil level, steering and suspension system).
- Drive the vehicle for a short distance frequently (only for engine oil, engine oil level, disc brake pads and discs/front and rear axle boots and axle shaft joint portions, brake lining and drums).
- Drive on dusty roads (only for air cleaner element, disc brake pads and discs/front and rear axle boots and axle shaft joint portions, brake lining and drums, air filter element for the climate control system).
- Drive on rough and/or muddy roads (only for disc brake pads and discs/front and rear axle boots and axle shaft joint portions, brake lining and drums, air filter element for the climate control system).
- Drive in areas where road salt or other corrosive materials are used (only for fuel system, lines and connections, disc brake pads and discs/front and rear axle boots and axle shaft joint portions, brake lining and drums, inspect brake lines and check operations of parking and service brake system, steering and suspension system).
- In the coastal areas (only for fuel system, lines and connections, disc brake pads and discs/front and rear axle boots and axle shaft joint portions, brake lining and drums, inspect brake lines and check operations of parking and service brake system, steering and suspension system).
- If the vehicle is involved in a traffic accident, soaking in water, bumping, or alarming, please go to authorized service station for inspection and repair in time.
- Never overcharge/discharge and change the setting parameters of power battery system without authorization.
- A/C temperature setting in the vehicle should be appropriate, and the A/C operating time should not be too long.
- Prevent the power battery system from entering water when washing the vehicle.
- The vehicle should avoid wading in too deep water. If the vehicle wades in the water, it should drive slowly to prevent water from splashing into the power battery box.
- The vehicle cannot be started when the battery power is too low.
- Before driving, check the remaining charge (SOC value) of the power battery. Please charge and then drive the vehicle if necessary according to the mileage to be driven to prevent power failure and the vehicle stopping in the middle. During driving, if SOC is lower than 30%, rapid acceleration

⚠ CAUTION

and high-speed driving should be avoided, and the vehicle should be driven to the nearest charging pile for charging as soon as possible.

- When using in high-temperature weather in summer, it is recommended to keep the vehicle stationary for 30 minutes before charging (if it needs to be charged), and then keep the vehicle stationary for 30 minutes after charging to prevent the high temperature alarm caused by the continuous use of battery system and the accumulation of heat, which will affect the service life of battery system.
- When using in low-temperature weather in winter, it is recommended to charge the vehicle immediately after using to prevent the temperature of power battery system from dropping below 0° C, which will affect the service life of battery and use safety during charging.

Technical Data

Fluid Name	Specification	After-sale Maintenance
Oil (SQRH4J15)	FUCHS C5 0W-20	4.5 ± 0.2 L (replace the oil and oil filter at the same time)
Transmission Fluid (351HHB)	FUCHS DHT5105	4 L
Rear Drive Motor (If Equipped)	Castrol 805C EV	1.4 ± 0.05 L
High Temperature Coolant (2WD)	Organic Acid Technology (OAT)	8.5 ± 0.5 L
High Temperature Coolant (4WD)	Organic Acid Technology (OAT)	8.5 ± 0.5 L
Low Temperature Coolant (2WD, Short Range)	Organic Acid Technology (OAT)	7 ± 0.5 L
Low Temperature Coolant (2WD, Long Range)	Organic Acid Technology (OAT)	8 ± 0.5 L
Low Temperature Coolant (4WD)	Organic Acid Technology (OAT)	6 ± 0.5 L
Brake Fluid	DOT4	The level of brake fluid reservoir is between MIN and MAX
Spark Plug	3707AAG	/

⚠ CAUTION

- Filling amount is equal to discharging amount when there is no oil leakage for automatic transmission, please go to authorized service station for details.
- Only genuine parts and fluids can be used, otherwise your claim rights will be affected.
- For engine oil and transmission fluid, only use brands and specifications recommended by authorized service station.
- The above filling amount is only for reference. The specific fluid amount should be based on the actual vehicle measurement.

SPECIFICATION

8-1. Label Location

Vehicle Identification Number (VIN) 324

Vehicle Product Label 324

Engine Number..... 325

Rear Drive Motor number..... 325

Microwave Window 325

8-2. Vehicle Specifications

Vehicle Dimensions 326

Vehicle Type..... 327

Vehicle Weight..... 327

Vehicle Performance 328

Drive Motor 329

Engine Performance..... 329

Fuel System 330

Suspension System..... 331

Power Battery..... 331

Battery..... 331

Wheel Alignment..... 332

Wheels and Tires 332

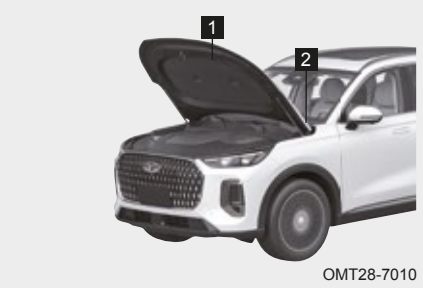
Light Bulb Specification..... 333

Vehicle Components That Are Not Included in the Vehicle Size 334

8-1. Label Location

Vehicle Identification Number (VIN)

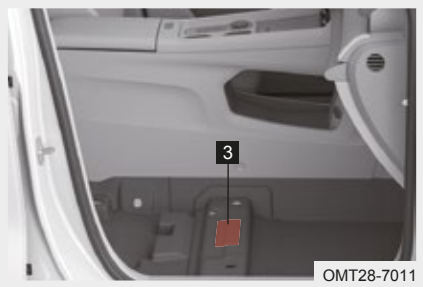
Vehicle identification number on actual vehicle



OMT28-7010

1 Vehicle Identification Number label is located at the upper part of the front compartment cover (as shown in the illustration).

2 Vehicle Identification Number label is located on upper left of driver side instrument panel (as shown in the illustration), and can be seen from the outside through the front windshield.



OMT28-7011

3 Vehicle Identification Number is stamped under the front passenger seat (as shown in the illustration).

⚠ CAUTION

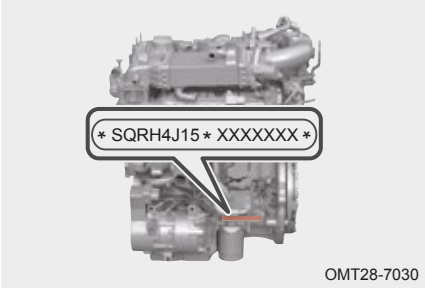
It is forbidden to cover, paint, weld, cut, drill or remove vehicle identification number and areas around it.

Vehicle Product Label

OMT28-7020

Vehicle product label is located on right quarter outer panel (as shown in the illustration).

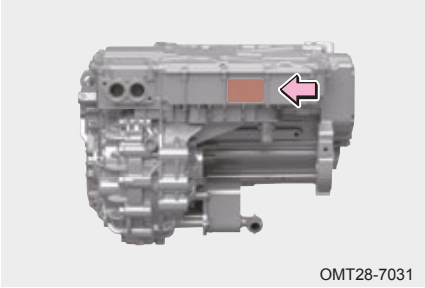
Engine Number



OMT28-7030

Engine number is located on engine block (as shown in the illustration).

Rear Drive Motor number


OMT28-7031

Rear Drive Motor number is located as shown in the illustration.

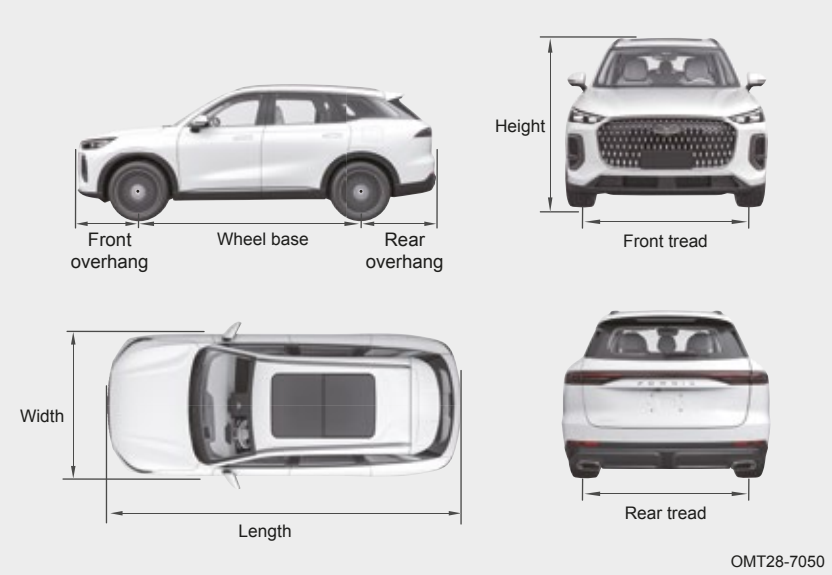
Microwave Window

OMT28-7040

The microwave window is located on the inner side of the front windshield to the back of inside rear view mirror, where is for wireless RF signal transmission and installation of automotive electronic identification.

8-2. Vehicle Specifications

Vehicle Dimensions



Overall Size	Length (mm)	4,810
	Width (mm)	1,925
	Height (mm)	1,741
Wheel Base (mm)		2,800
Tread	Front (mm)	1,638
	Rear (mm)	1,638
Overhang	Front (mm)	915
	Rear (mm)	1,095

Vehicle Type

Vehicle Type	4 × 2 / 4 × 4 front-wheel drive, front-wheel steering, transverse front-engine, 2-compartment, 5-door, 7-seat, integral body, left-hand drive
Engine Model	SQRH4J15
Engine Type	Vertical, 4-cylinder in-line, watercooled, 4-stroke, double overhead camshaft, turbocharging, intercooler
Fuel Supply Type	Direct injection
Transmission Model	351HHB

Vehicle Weight

Vehicle Curb Weight (kg)		1994	2233
Vehicle Curb Axle Weight	Front Axle (kg)	1099	1137
	Rear Axle (kg)	895	1096
Manufacturer Maximum Total Weight (Excluding Towing Vehicle) (kg)		2580	2786
Manufacturer Maximum Total Weight (Including Towing Vehicle) (kg)		2680	2886
Manufacturer Maximum Total Axle Weight (-Excluding Towing Vehicle)	Front Axle (kg)	1238	1257
	Rear Axle (kg)	1342	1529
Manufacturer Maximum Total Axle Weight (-Including Towing Vehicle)	Front Axle (kg)	1199	1218
	Rear Axle (kg)	1481	1668
Seating Capacity (Including Driver) (Person)		7	

⚠ WARNING
Please follow the vehicle load specified in the instruction manual and do not exceed the allowable total weight. Otherwise, the brake and handling performance of the vehicle may change and may cause an personal injury and accident.

Vehicle Performance

Passing Performance	Minimum Ground Clearance (mm)		147
	Minimum Turning Diameter (m)	Left Turn (m)	11.1
		Right Turn (m)	11.1
	Approach Angle (°)		19
	Departure Angle (°)		19
Power Performance	Maximum Vehicle Speed for PHEV (km/h)		180
	Maximum Vehicle Speed for Pure Electric Vehicle (km/h)		140
	Maximum Gradeability for PHEV (%)		40

Drive Motor

Type	Permanent magnet synchronous motor	Permanent magnet synchronous motor	Permanent magnet synchronous motor
Cooling Method	Oil cooling	Oil cooling	Oil cooling
Rated Voltage (V)	350	345	345
Rated Power (kw)	69	45	50
Peek Power (kw)	175	75	90
Peak Torque (N·m)	310	170	220
Peak Speed (rpm)	17200	6300	13000

Engine Performance

Engine Mode	SQRH4J15
Cylinder Bore Diameter (mm)	72
Piston Stroke (mm)	92
Displacement (mL)	1,499
Compression Ratio	14.5
Maximum Net Power (kW)	105
Maximum Net Power Speed (r/min)	5,200
Maximum Net Torque (N•m)	215
Maximum Net Torque Speed (r/min)	2,500

Fuel System

Fuel Type*1	Unleaded gasoline with an octane number of 91 or higher
	Unleaded gasoline with an octane number of 92 or higher
	Unleaded gasoline with an octane number of 95 or higher (unleaded super gasoline)
	E22-E100
Fuel Tank Type	Plastic fuel tank
Fuel Tank Total Capacity	70L
Fuel Pump	Electric fuel pump

*1: Please use the fuel recommended by authorized dealers.

READ

Vehicle with catalytic converters can only use unleaded gasoline. In order to avoid the accident of filling wrong fuel type, the fuel filler pipe adopts a neck-type fuel filler port design, and only the standard unleaded gasoline fuel gun can be used for fueling operation.

CAUTION

- Use only the fuel type we recommend.
- The use of off-specification gasoline may cause damage to the engine and such damage is not covered under warranty.
- Using leaded gasoline will cause three-way catalytic converter to lose its effectiveness and emission control system to function improperly.
- If you accidentally fill leaded gasoline to the oil tank and start the engine (-even if only a small amount is filled), it will cause permanent damage to the catalytic converter. Therefore, if you accidentally fill leaded gasoline, please go to authorized service station for inspection and repair immediately.

Suspension System

Front Suspension	Macpherson type independent suspension, unadjustable height, with anti-roll stabilizer bar, cone coiled spring, double adjustable shock absorber
Rear Suspension	Multi-link type independent suspension, unadjustable height, with anti-roll stabilizer bar, cone coiled spring, double adjustable shock absorber

Power Battery

Power Battery Assembly Model	113ADB	113ADS
Power Battery Type	Power Type	Energy Type
Nominal Capacity (Ah)	55	107
Nominal Voltage (V)	353.28, 1C	322.08, 1C
Monomer Rated Voltage (V)	3.68, 1C	3.66, 1C
Monomer Rated Capacity (Ah)	55	107
Assembly Weight (Kg)	134	228
Peek Discharging Power (25℃) (kw)	154 (50% SOC, 10 s)	218.9 (50% SOC, 10 s)
Charging Operating Temperature Range (℃)	-20 ～ 55℃	-20 ～ 55℃
Discharging Operating Temperature Range (℃)	-35 ～ 60℃	-30 ～ 55℃
Assembly Combined Type	1P96S	1P88S
Drive Mode	2WD	AWD

Battery

Battery Model	AGM H3

Wheel Alignment

Front Wheel	Front Wheel Camber	-30′ ± 45′	
	Kingpin Caster Angle	6°21′ ± 45′	
	Kingpin Inclination Angle	12°52′ ± 45′	
	Front Wheel Toe-in	5′ ± 5′ (one side)	
Rear Wheel	Rear Wheel Camber	-40′ ± 30′	-42′ ± 45′
	Rear Wheel Toe-in	6′ ± 5′ (one side)	

Wheels and Tires

Tire Model		235/55R19; 245/50R20
Rim Model		19×7.5J; 20×7.5J
Cold Tire Inflation Pressure (kPa) (Unladen)	Front Wheel	230
	Rear Wheel	230
Tightening Torque of Wheel bolts		M14: 180 ± 18 N·m
Wheel dynamic balance requirements for vehicle with a maximum design speed of more than 100 km/h		Paste balance block side ⩽ 10 g

READ

The tire inflation pressures listed in the table apply to cold tires. The pressure increases slightly when the tire is heated, but it is unnecessary to lower the pressure.

CAUTION

- Tire inflation pressure should be checked at least once a month, and tire pressure is especially important at high speeds.
- In order to facilitate you to find the specified value for inflation pressure, there is adhesive sticker label on the driver doorsill, which is marked with the specified value for cold tire inflation pressure.

Light Bulb Specification

Light Bulb Name	Nominal Light Source (Type/Model)	Replacement Advice
Headlights	LED	Replaced by authorized service station
Front Fog Light	LED	Replaced by authorized service station
Rear Fog Light	LED	Replaced by authorized service station
Daytime Running Light	LED	Replaced by authorized service station
Front Position Light	LED	Replaced by authorized service station
Rear Position Light	LED	Replaced by authorized service station
Brake Light	LED	Replaced by authorized service station
High Mounted Stop Light	LED	Replaced by authorized service station
Back-up Light	LED	Replaced by authorized service station
Front Turn Signal Light	LED	Replaced by authorized service station
Side Turn Signal Light	LED	Replaced by authorized service station
Rear Turn Signal Light	LED	Replaced by authorized service station
License Plate Light	LED	Replaced by authorized service station

Note: The light bulb specifications are for reference only. Please refer to the actual vehicle configuration.

Vehicle Components That Are Not Included in the Vehicle Size

Components not included in vehicle length size

The following devices do not have laden function and their sizes are not more than 50 mm beyond the vehicle front end or rear end, and fillet radius of edge and corner is no less than 5 mm:

— Wiper and washer

— Outer identification, including registered trademark, manufacturer name, origin, model name and type, engine emission, transmission type, driving type and other distinguishing identification of the vehicle

— Lights and light signal device

— Anti-collision rubber block and equivalent

— External sunshade device

— Customs sealing device and its protective device

— Device used to fixed raincloth and its protective device

— Locking device, hinge, handle, controller, switch

— Step plate (or ladder), vehicle climbing step plate and handle on top of bumper used for cleaning windows.

— Rear emblem plate with LOGO

— Removable trailer or towing device

— Exhaust tail pipe

Components not included in the vehicle width measurements:

— Indirect view device

— School bus stop plate in inoperative state

The following devices do not have laden function and their one side size exceeds the side of vehicle for no more than 50 mm, and fillet radius of edge and corner is no less than 5 mm:

— Outer identification, including registered trademark, manufacturer name, origin, model name and type, engine emission, transmission type, driving type and other distinguishing identification of the vehicle

— Lights and light signal device

— Anti-collision rubber block and equivalent

— Customs sealing device and its protective device

— Device used to fixed raincloth and its protective device

— Local water drain slot: Refers to the water drain slot used to guide rain flow above driver door (or window) and passenger door, both sides of front windshield

— Flexible protruding part of splash proof system

— Retractable step plate, entering / exiting slope of bus, lifting platform and equivalent that is in the retract state

— Locking device, hinge, handle, controller, switch

— Tire failure signal device

— Tire pressure indicator

— Deformed part of tire wall directly above contact point between tire and ground

— Reversing assistance device

— Exhaust tail pipe

Components not included in the vehicle height measurements:

Soft part of antenna

Device without laden function:

— Intake duct

— Indirect view device

— Current collecting device of electric vehicle (including its fixing device)

— Vehicle rear air guide device is removable or folding, and its deployed and retracted length is no more than 2,000 mm and 200 mm respectively.

— Tailboard, entering / exiting slope and equivalent with a horizontal length not exceeding 300 mm in retract state

— Tail ladder

A

A/C Cooling 117
A/C Setting 112
AC Charging Socket Electronic Lock 264
Active Speed Limit (ASL) (If Equipped) 201
Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) System (If Equipped) 195
Adjusting Steering Wheel..... 37
After Starting Engine 15
Air Conditioning Heating 117
Air Conditioning Operation 113
Air Conditioning System..... 110
Air Outlets Airflow Control 120
Airbag 184
Anti-lock Brake System (ABS) ... 241
Appointment Upgrade Operation..... 134
Audio Button 107
Audio Headrest (If Equipped)..... 52
Audio System..... 101
Audio View 101
Authorized Service Station is at Your Service 296
Auto Hold System (AUTO HOLD)..... 172
Auto Parking Assist System (If Equipped) 227
Auto Parking Assist System..... 227
Auto Parking 233
Automatic Emergency Braking (AEB) System/Front Collision Warning (FCW) System (If Equipped) 213
Automatic Transmission..... 175

B

Back Door Emergency Opening. 162
Back Door 158
Backup Power Supply (12 V)..... 156
Battery 331
Before Driving Vehicle 166
Before Starting Engine 14
Blind Spot Detection Assist System (If Equipped) 207
Blind Spot Detection Assist System 207
Brake System..... 170
Braking Force Control System ... 237

C

Charging Device..... 255
Charging Method..... 259
Charging Precautions..... 265
Checking Air Conditioning Filter . 309
Checking Battery 309
Checking Brake Fluid Level..... 304
Checking Coolant Level..... 305
Checking Fuse 289
Checking Oil Level..... 303
Checking Tires 306
Checking Transmission Fluid Level 304
Checking Windshield Washer Fluid..... 310
Checking Wiper Blades 310
Child Lock 92
Column Shift Switch 176
Constant Temperature Cabin Function (If Equipped)..... 119
Correct Sitting Posture 51
Countermeasures for Abnormal Problems during Upgrading 137
Cruise Control System (CCS) 194
Cybersecurity Notice for Scrapping or Resale 23
Cybersecurity Notice 23
Cybersecurity Support Service Update or Termination Notice..... 23

D

Delivery Card 5
Delivery Inspection Certificate 11
Discharging Precautions..... 271
Door Mechanical Switch 91
Door Opening Warning (DOW) System (If Equipped) 209
Door Unlocking/Locking..... 90
Doors..... 90
Drive Mode 178
Drive Motor 329

Driver Monitoring System..... 220
Driving on Road Covered with Ice and Snow..... 21
Driving Recorder (If Equipped)... 123
Driving Recorder USB (If Equipped) 155
Driving Recorder 123
Driving Safety Assist System..... 210
Driving Through Water..... 19

E

Easy Seat Access/Exit Function (If Equipped)..... 63
Effective Range 83
Electric Expansion of Luggage Compartment Space (If Equipped) 59
Electric Fuel Tank Cap..... 163
Electric Parking Brake System (EPB) 170
Electric Power Steering System (EPS) 168
Electronic Stability Control System 238
Emergency Lane Keeping (ELK) (If Equipped)..... 205
Emergency Towing Vehicle 286
Emergency Unlocking of Electronic Lock (Only for AC Charging)..... 265
Energy Recovery Intensity 248
Engine Coolant Temperature is Too High 278
Engine Number 325
Engine Performance 329
Exhaust System Inspection 17
Extended Function..... 242
Exterior Lighting 45
External Discharging Device..... 268
External Discharging Method..... 268

F

"Face to face" Advisory Service Card..... 7
First Maintenance Information ... 312
Flat Tire..... 276
Fogging Instructions for Light..... 50
Follow Me Home Function..... 48
Foot Brake..... 173
FOTA Upgrade 130
Fragrance setting..... 122
Fragrance System (If Equipped) 121
Fragrance System 121
Front A/C..... 110
Front Backup Power Supply 156
Front Compartment Cover..... 157
Front Passenger Seat Recline Function (If Equipped)..... 61
Front Seat 53
Front USB 156
Fuel System..... 330
Fuel Tank Cap 163
Fuse Box..... 288
Fuse 288

H

Head Restraint 52
Head Up Display (HUD) (If Equipped) 210
Headlight Leveling Adjusting 48
Hill Descent Control (HDC) System 240
Horn 36
How to Read This Manual 2
How to Save Fuel and Extend Life of Vehicle 13

I

Immobilizer System..... 88
Impact on Mileage 283
Index 2
Inside Rear View Mirror 38
Inspection and Preparation Before Driving 166
Installing Towing Eyelet 287
Instrument Cluster Overview 27
Instrument Cluster 27
Integrated Braking Force Control System..... 237
Intelligent Avoidance System (IES) (If Equipped)..... 219
Intelligent Cruise Control System 216

Intelligent High Beam Assist (IHC) (If Equipped) 50
Intelligent Mode (If Equipped) 119
Intelligent Timely All-wheel-drive System (AWD) 177
Intelligent Timely All-wheel-drive System (If Equipped)..... 177
Interior Lighting 47
Introduction of product functions 138

J

Jump-starting 292

K

Key Information 81
Keyless Entry 85

L

Label Location..... 324
Lane Assist System (If Equipped) 202
Lane Assist System..... 202
Lane Departure Prevention (LDP) (If Equipped) 204
Lane Departure Warning (LDW) System 202
Light Bulb Specification 333
Lighting System..... 45

M

Maintenance Schedule 313
Manual Back Door 158
Method for Entering Vehicle Upgrade 131
Microwave Window 325
Moon Roof Jam Protection Function 99
Moon Roof Remote Control Function 99

N

Network Security Notification..... 137
New Energy 247
New Vehicle Break-in 12
New Vehicle Inspection.....4, 11
Normal Maintenance 298

O

Off-road Driving Precautions 18
Off-road Driving..... 18
Opening/Closing Front Compartment Cover..... 157
Operating Mode..... 249
Operation for Upgrade Now..... 132
Operation/Malfunction Indicator ... 28
OTA Upgrade (If Equipped) 130
Outside Rear View Mirror Memory Function (If Equipped) .. 40
Outside Rear View Mirror..... 38

P

Panoramic Moon Roof (If Equipped) 97
Panoramic Moon Roof..... 97
Panoramic View Monitor System (AVM)..... 221
Parking Assist System..... 221
Parking on Slope 16
Parking Operations 15
Parking Radar System..... 225
Phone-link 107
Pictorial Index 2
Plug-in Hybrid Electric Vehicle System (PHEV) 244
Power Back Door (If Equipped).. 158
Power Battery 244, 331
Power Windows..... 93
Precautions Before Driving Vehicle 14
Precautions When Driving in Rainy Condition 19

R

Reading Vehicle Identification Code Information 297
Rear Collision Warning (RCW) System (If Equipped) 209
Rear Cross Traffic Alert (RCTA) System (If Equipped)... 210
Rear Drive Motor number..... 325
Rear USB 156
Rear View Mirror Automatic Adjustment When Reversing (If Equipped)..... 41
Rear View Mirror..... 38
Refrigeration/Warming Function of Armrest Box 120
Regular Maintenance 312
Remote Control System (If Equipped) 138
Remote Control System..... 138
Remote Starting for Smart Key 89
Removing Battery 291
Repair and Maintenance..... 296
Replacing fragrance 122
Replacing Fuse 289
Replacing Wiper Blade 44

S

Safety Chain 282
Safety Check 14, 297
Safety Warning for Charging..... 267
Safety Warning for Discharging.. 271
Seat Belt Pretensioner (If Equipped) 68
Seat Belt 63
Seat Heating Function (If Equipped) 61
Seat Massage Function (If Equipped) 59
Seat Memory Function (If Equipped) 62
Seat Ventilation Function (If Equipped) 62
Seat..... 51
Second Row Air Conditioning (If Equipped)..... 111
Second Row Manual Seat (7-seat)..... 55
Second Row Power Seat (7-seat)..... 57
Setting 126
Shortcut Menu..... 102
Smart Key Vehicle Locating..... 89
Smart Key 81
Smart Vehicle Locating Function .. 49
Speed Limit Assist System (SLA) 193
Speed Limit Assist System (SLA) (If Equipped)..... 193
Speed Limit System 194
Steering System 168
Steering Wheel Heating (If Equipped) 36
Steering Wheel..... 36
Storage Space 153
Sun Visors and Vanity Mirrors.... 157
Suspension System 331
Symbols in the Manual 3

T

Table of Contents.....2
Technical Data 321
Third Row Air Conditioning (If Equipped) 112
Third Row Manual Seat (7-seat)... 58
Third Row Power Seat (7-seat).... 58
Tire Chains 21
Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS)..... 211
Tire Rotation 308
Top Tether 71
Tow truck Brake..... 283
Towing Hint..... 283
Towing Hook 281
Towing Light..... 283
Towing 279
Tracking Reverse..... 236
Traffic Jam Assist (TJA) System /Integrated Cruise Assist (ICA) System (If Equipped)..... 216
Transmission 175

U

Upgrade Result Prompt 136
USB Port 155

User Registration Certificate.....4

V

Vehicle Arming 87
Vehicle Center..... 102
Vehicle Components That Are Not Included in the Vehicle Size 334
Vehicle Dimensions..... 326
Vehicle Emergency Handling..... 276
Vehicle Identification Number (VIN) 324
Vehicle Performance 328
Vehicle Power-off..... 167
Vehicle Power-on..... 166
Vehicle Product Label..... 324
Vehicle Specifications..... 326
Vehicle Type 327
Vehicle Weight 327
Voice Recognition Function (If Equipped) 107

W

Weight Limit..... 280
Wheel Alignment 332
Wheels and Tires..... 332
When Driving on Slippery Road Surfaces.....19
When Driving 15
Window Jam Protection Function (If Equipped).....95
Window Remote Control Function 95
Windows 93
Winter Driving Precautions.....20
Winter Driving Tips.....20
Wiper Operation 42
Wiper System.....42
Wireless Charging (CWC) (If Equipped) 126
Wireless Charging 126

Emergency Response Guide

RESCUE INFORMATION

1-1. Product Information

Vehicle Basic Information 2

Plug-in Hybrid Electric Vehicle System Information.....3

Disconnecting Battery (12 V) 6

High Voltage Power Release Method.....6

Emergency Unlocking of Electronic Lock (Only for AC Charging) 7

1-2. Rescue Program Information

Protection Device Required for Rescuer.....7

Parking Operations.....8

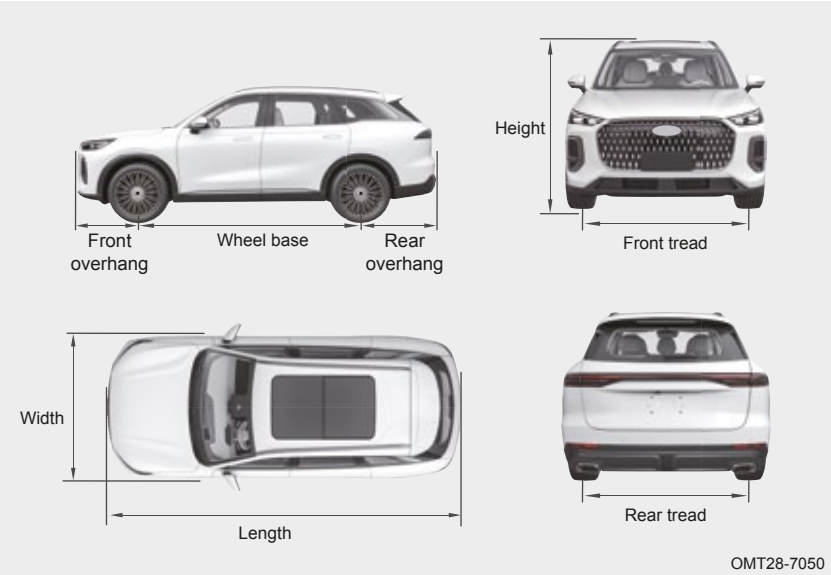
Back Door Emergency Opening.....8

Emergency Rescue 9

Towing Vehicle..... 12

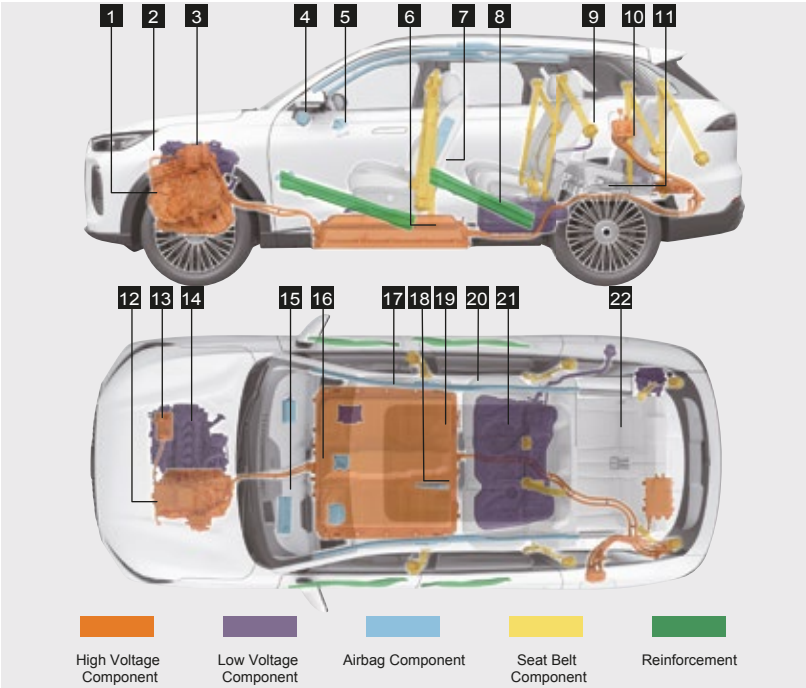
1-1. Product Information

Vehicle Basic Information



Overall Size	Length (mm)	4,810	
	Width (mm)	1,825	
	Height (mm)	1,741	
Wheel Base (mm)		2,800	
Manufacturer Maximum Total Weight (kg)		2,580	2,786
Seating Capacity (Including Driver) (Person)		7	

Plug-in Hybrid Electric Vehicle System Information



1 Hybrid Transmission
2 Front Motor Controller
3 High Voltage Heater
4 Front Passenger Airbag
5 Driver Airbag
6 Seat Belt Pretensioner (If Equipped)
7 Side Airbag (If Equipped)
8 Anti-collision Panel
9 Side Curtain (If Equipped)
10 AC/DC Charging Port
11 On-board Charger Assembly
12 High Voltage Power Distribution Unit
13 Electric Compressor
14 Engine
15 Driver Knee Airbag (If Equipped)
16 Airbag Module
17 Vehicle Control Unit
18 Center Airbag (If Equipped)
19 Power Battery
20 High Pressure Fuel Tank
21 Fuel Filler
22 Battery (12 V)
23 Rear Drive Motor (If Equipped)
24 On-board Charger Assembly

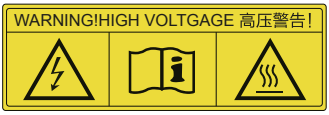
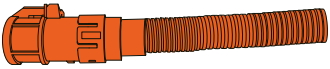
⚠ WARNING
• Personnel without high-voltage technical qualification are not allowed to tough, repair or replace high voltage components or high voltage wire harness in the illustration. • In case of traffic accident, do not touch any component and high voltage wire harness in the illustration to avoid the second personal injury. • For towing of plug-in hybrid electric vehicle, it is strongly recommended that you seek help from professional rescuer or the authorized service station. • When cutting the vehicle for rescue, avoid the components in the illustration and the rescuer must wear basic rescue protective device. Select high voltage rescue protective device or fire rescue protective device according to the site situation. Failure to follow the instructions may cause personal injury or even death.

Plug-in hybrid electric vehicle system basic information

Power Battery Assembly	Type	Power Type
	Nominal capacity (Ah)	55
Fuel Tank Capacity (L)	70	

Plug-in hybrid electric vehicle system warning signs

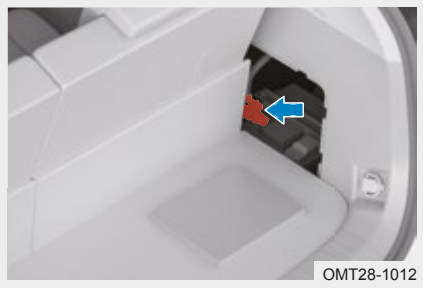
High Voltage Warning Sign 1		Never touch high voltage system components. Never depress! Danger!
High Voltage Warning Sign 2		High voltage system components, be careful, Danger! Never touch high voltage system components without wearing protection device, beware of electric shock!
High Voltage Warning Sign 3		High voltage system components, be careful, Danger! Never touch high voltage components without wearing protection device, beware of electric shock and high temperature scald!

High Voltage Warning Sign 4		High voltage system components, be careful, Danger! Never touch high voltage system components without wearing protection device, beware of electric shock and high temperature scald!
High Voltage Warning Sign 5		High voltage system components, be careful, Danger! Never touch high voltage system components without wearing protection device, beware of electric shock and high temperature scald!
High Voltage Warning Sign 6		High voltage system components, be careful, Danger! Never touch high voltage system components without wearing protection device, beware of electric shock and high temperature scald!
High Voltage Wire Harness Sign		Vehicle high voltage system components are connected by orange high voltage wire harness. Never touch high voltage components without wearing protection device!
Power Battery Pack Warning Sign		Usage precautions for power battery pack!

⚠ WARNING

- After vehicle is started, power system will be hot. Be careful of high voltage and high temperature, and always follow the instructions on the vehicle safety warning signs.
- Never touch, remove or replace components, orange cable and connectors with power system warning signs to prevent high voltage electric shock.

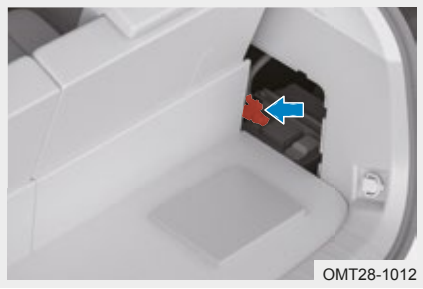
Disconnecting Battery (12 V)


OMT28-1012

Step 1: Click " ⏻OFF " button on shortcut menu, switch vehicle to power off state;

Step 2: Open the back door, remove right luggage compartment protector, and disconnect battery (12 V) negative cable.

High Voltage Power Release Method


OMT28-1012

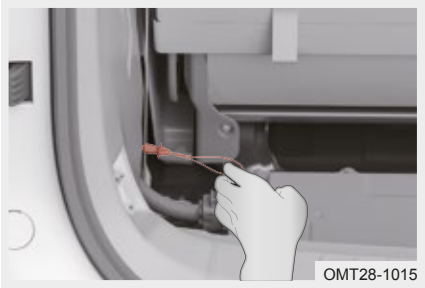
Step 1: Click " ⏻OFF " button on shortcut menu, switch vehicle to power off state;

Step 2: Open the back door, remove right luggage compartment protector, and disconnect battery (12 V) negative cable;

OMT28-1013

Step 3: Remove front compartment fuse box cover, refer to fuse box location diagram at fuse box upper cover, pull BMS fuse out by a fuse remover and disconnect the BMS module power.

Emergency Unlocking of Electronic Lock (Only for AC Charging)



When abnormal lock fault occurs in electronic lock of the charging gun or discharging gun, the charging gun and discharging gun can be manually unlocked with electronic lock cable.

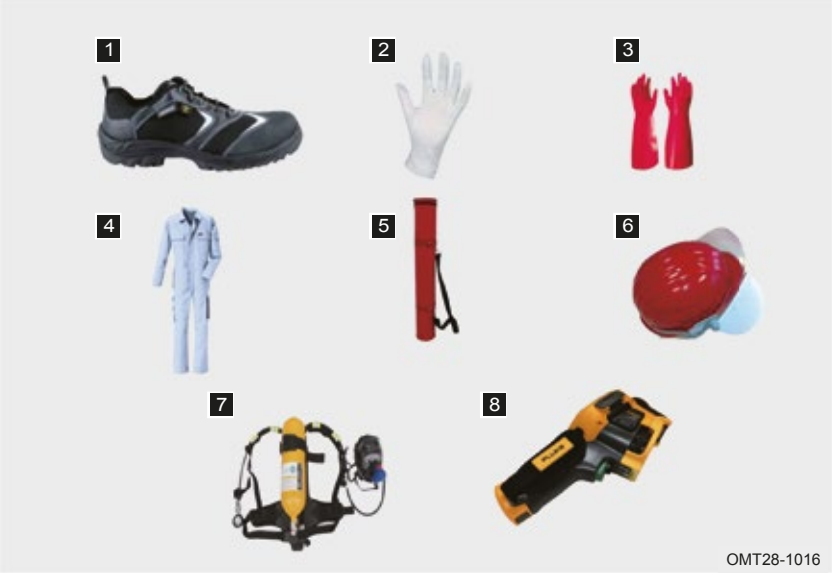
Step 1: Make sure that the vehicle is not charged/discharged at present according to charging information displayed on instrument cluster;

Step 2: Open back door, lift the luggage compartment carpet and take out storage box;

Step 3: Pull the electronic lock cable to manually unlock the charging gun and discharging gun.

1-2. Rescue Program Information

Protection Device Required for Rescuer



Basic Rescue Protection Device:

1 High Resistance Safety Work Shoes

2 Cotton Gloves

3 Protective Gloves

High Voltage Rescue Protection Device:

4 High Voltage Power Specialist Protective Clothing

5 Rubber Sheet

6 Safety Helmet with Goggles

Fire Rescue Protection Device:

7 Compressed Air Breathing Mask

8 Thermal Imaging Camera

⚠ WARNING

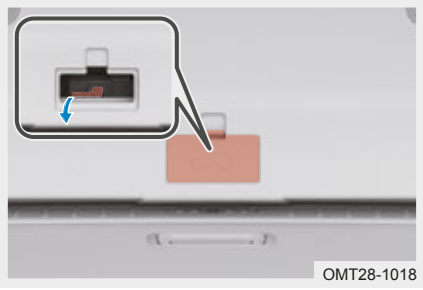
Rescuer must wear basic rescue protective device. Select high voltage rescue protective device or fire rescue protective device according to the site situation to guarantee personal safety.

Parking Operations

OMT28-1017

Fully depress the brake pedal, press the button on the right side of column shift switch, shift to P, the parking brake function can be applied automatically by EPB system.

Back Door Emergency Opening


OMT28-1018

Back door cannot be opened when battery (12 V) is depleted or under similar conditions. In this case, the back door can be opened with back door stand-by device switch (stop the vehicle as safely as possible if condition permits).

Step 1: Fold the rear seatback;

Step 2: Get in the rear of vehicle and open stand-by device cover;

Step 3: Press down the stand-by device switch with hand, release it, and then push the back door to open it.

Emergency Rescue

How to avoid water intrusion into high voltage components

1. When a vehicle is flooded, first pull the vehicle out of the water and then cut off the high voltage power supply to avoid greater electric shock hazard due to vehicle immersion.
2. When washing the vehicle, avoid washing the charging port cover switch area with a high pressure water gun, otherwise it may cause the charging port cover to open and cause water to enter the charging port end.
3. Do not charge when there are obvious water stains in the charging port to avoid damage to the vehicle or charging device; When charging the vehicle, do not wash the charging port area to avoid damage to the vehicle or charging device.
4. Do not wipe the door protective panel with wet tissue, wet cloth, detergent etc. Pay attention to protection during the use of vehicle (such as on rainy days, washing vehicle) and try to avoid water intrusion into the door protective panel, otherwise it may cause internal electrical component fault etc.
5. Try to choose a place with a shelter for charging in the severe convective weather; If the vehicle is soaked in water or wading level is above the doorsill position, it may cause water to enter into the high pressure components. It is necessary to contact the authorized service station for proper test and treatment in time; Never drive on a road when water exceeds half of the tires.
6. Try not to drive on a road with unknown depth of water to avoid leakage accidents or damage to high voltage electrical components; If wading is necessary, analyze the road condition and confirm the depth of water before driving, and the water depth should not be higher than the bottom of the body; It is recommended not to stay in deep water for a long time during wading, otherwise vehicle high voltage components may be damaged.

Driving in wade

■ When vehicle drives in wade:

1. If you cannot drive the vehicle away from the waterlogged area, please cut off power supply immediately.
2. When driving in wade, do not stop the vehicle and keep driving at low speed (vehicle speed cannot exceed 10 km/h).
3. Drive the vehicle away from the waterlogged area and park it in a safe area. Check if there is any water in the vehicle, and clean it if there is.

■ After vehicle drives in wade:

1. If the vehicle is severely flooded, all persons in the vehicle must evacuate to a safe area immediately.

2. After the vehicle drives in wade, slightly depress the brake pedal several times to remove any residual water from the brake disc and ensure that the brake system can work properly.
3. Go to the authorized service station for routine inspection as soon as possible, as water may enter into components of the drive train system and dilute the grease, causing system malfunction when vehicle drives in wade.

Fire prevention

■ In order to prevent vehicle fires effectively, pay attention to the following precautions during usage:

1. Do not leave flammable and explosive materials in the vehicle.

   In hot summer, the internal temperature of the vehicle parked in the sun can reach more than 70℃. If lighters, cleaner, perfume and other flammable and explosive materials are left in the vehicle, it is very easy to cause fire or even explosion.
2. After smoking, make sure that the cigarette butt is completely extinguished.

   Smoking is not only harmful to health, but also may cause fires. If the cigarette butt is not completely extinguished, it may cause a fire.
3. It is recommended to regularly go to the authorized service station for inspection.

   Check the engine compartment for oil leakage regularly and clean any oil stain or oil on the engine in time.

   Check regularly if vehicle circuits, electrical appliances and wire harness connectors, insulation and fixing position are normal. If any problem is found, handle it in time.
4. Do not modify vehicle circuits or add electrical components.

   a. It is strictly prohibited to use fuses or other metal wires that exceed the rated specifications of electrical appliances to replace fuses.

   b. Installation of other electrical appliances (such as high power audio and light) can cause excessive load on circuits, and wire harness is prone to heating, causing fires. Improper modification of electrical appliances and circuits can create contact resistance and abnormal heating, causing fires.
5. Precautions for driving.

   When parking the vehicle, especially in summer, it is important to check underneath for flammable substances, such as hay, dead branches and leaves, or wheat straw. If there are flammable substances under the vehicle, it is very likely to cause fires. When driving, the vehicle should also avoid roads covered with flammable materials such as dry leaves, wheat straw and weed etc. as much as possible, or stop vehicle in time to check underneath for flammable materials after passing through such roads. When parking, try to avoid areas exposed to sunlight as much as possible.

6. Always leave portable fire extinguishers in the vehicle and master the usage methods.

   To ensure vehicle safety, fire extinguishers should be equipped in the vehicle and regularly inspected and replaced; At the same time, it is important to be familiar with the usage of fire extinguishers and be prepared to avoid being helpless in case of accidents.

7. When repairing or maintaining a vehicle, it is necessary to disconnect the battery (12 V) power.

Fire treatment

■ If the vehicle is on fire, take effective measures promptly and calmly to minimize losses:

1. After the accident occurs, contact the insurance company for post-treatment in time.
2. After the fire department extinguishes the fire, ask for a police certificate and a statement of the fire cause.
3. Generally, a fire has early warning signs (such as abnormal noise or odor from body). Once abnormal conditions are found, shut down the vehicle in time, and carry out active rescue according to the actual situation.
4. If smoke is found in the front compartment, do not open the front compartment cover immediately (As doing so will intensify the combustion and spread of the fire due to a large amount of air. Because the combustion material in the front compartment is limited, closing the front compartment cover can control the slow burning of the fire, which is conducive to extinguishing it).
5. If fire occurs, leave the dangerous area immediately and call the fire telephone. Be sure to inform the rescuers that this is a hybrid vehicle, and deliver the onboard rescue information card to the rescuers.

⚠ WARNING
When fire occurs, never touch any part of vehicle directly. Keep away from the vehicle and wait for professional rescuers wearing appropriate protective device to operate it.

Power battery leakage

If power battery leaks, leave the dangerous area immediately and call the fire telephone. Be sure to inform the rescuers that this is a hybrid vehicle, and deliver the onboard rescue information card to the rescuers.

⚠ WARNING
High voltage battery liquid leakage caused by collision can only be operated by professional rescuers who wear protective mask and solvent-isolation gloves. Do not touch liquid directly.

Vehicle cutting area

Vehicle pillar uses cast aluminum alloy to protect personal safety. If it is necessary to cut during rescue, proper tools should be used. It is forbidden to cut the high temperature and high voltage areas of the vehicle.

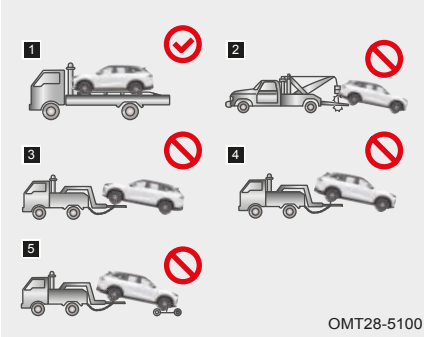
⚠ WARNING
When cutting the vehicle, professional rescuers must use appropriate tools such as hydraulic cutter etc. and wear appropriate personal protective device to avoid serious personal injuries.

Towing Vehicle

If the vehicle needs to be towed, it is recommended to contact authorized service station or professional towing services department, or ask for help from the roadside rescue service organization you have joined.

⚠ WARNING
• Damage caused by transportation is not covered by the warranty. • To transport the vehicle, follow the instructions below strictly. • Do not tow your vehicle only with ropes or chains by other vehicles.

Using platform trailer



Please use 1 platform rescue vehicle to load your vehicle.

Vehicle towing precautions are as follow:

- Tow with four wheels off ground. Do not use the rescue method 2 3 4 5 shown in the figure.
- Before towing, shift the gear position to N, turn on hazard light, and close the doors.
- During towing, nobody is allowed to seat in the accident vehicle.

⚠ CAUTION
Do not move the vehicle with forklift when vehicle is broken down.

⚠ WARNING

- No person or object is allowed behind the trailer when the vehicle is pulled onto the platform rescue vehicle, otherwise it may cause personal injury or death.
- The vehicle can only be towed away from the site if there is no safety risk. If the vehicle power battery pack has deformation, leakage, smoke, etc., the safety risk should be solved first.